

Foreword

Thank you for your purchase.

Please read the Manual carefully prior to the use of the vehicle for the first time. The Manual is applicable to BJ2021 and BJ2022 series light-weight off-road vehicles and their derived vehicles. The Manual will help you get familiar with the structure of the vehicle, various functions and modes of use as well as the relevant provisions of the company as soon as possible. The user will lose the right to claim for any losses arising from his use due to the failure to comply with the guiding opinion of the Manual or from the refit without the approval of the company, and any application for warranty will be refused by the service provider authorized by the company. The contents included in the manual will help you understand how to drive and maintain your vehicle correctly, allowing you to fully enjoy the fun of driving.

The Manual aims at providing the user with the guiding instructions relating to use and maintenance of BJ2021 and BJ2022 series light-weight off-road vehicles and their derived vehicles. For specific configuration of the vehicle you purchased, please read your purchase contract for more information. If you have any questions about this car and this manual, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC.


In view of our company continuous retrofit and improvement of vehicles, the equipment and performance of subsequent models will be changed without prior notice. Please do not compare the equipment and performance of vehicle purchased by you with those as described in the User Instructions of any other version nor make any requests for supplementary equipment based on the differences between their both. If you have any questions about this car and this manual, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC

The driver must strictly abide by all the automobile-related laws and regulations. The relevant laws and regulations currently in effect have been fully considered and complied with when the Manual is prepared. However, some clauses herein may comply with the latest revised laws and regulations when you purchase the vehicle.

When you resell the vehicle, please keep the manual in the vehicle where the manual is stored and remind the purchaser so that he/she can obtain the relevant information in the manual.

Foreword

Warnings, attentions, Tips and some special symbols frequently appear in this manual. Special attention should be paid to these. Ignoring these warnings may cause personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

 "Warning" means that if you don't follow the instructions during operation, it will probably lead to serious personal injury or even death;

 "Attention" means that dangerous or unsafe operation will cause personal injury or vehicle damage;

 "Tip" gives useful information.

* All the contents with the symbol * indicate that the equipment and its functions referred to are optional parts or functions.

As the company continues to improve all models, please understand that we reserve the right to make changes to any part of the vehicle, equipment or technical specifications at any time. The contents related to the scope of delivery, appearance, performance, size, weight, fuel consumption, specifications and data related to vehicle functions shall be subject to the contents as of the date of printing. Some of the equipment described in this manual may not be available for your vehicle (you may contact the authorized dealer of BAIC for details).

It is not allowed to reprint, copy or translate any part of this manual, copy and store this publication in the public retrieval system, or spread it in electronic, mechanical records or any other form without the written consent from BAIC.

The company solemnly declares that it is fully responsible for the revision, interpretation and explanation of this user manual, and reserves all rights and interests and the right to make changes as stipulated in the copyright law.

BAIC International Development Co., Ltd

May 2020

Table of Contents

1. Safe operation instructions	003	3. Drive Guide	149
Safe driving	004	Starting and Driving	150
Seat belt	010	Transmission system.....	165
Airbag System	021	Brake system	167
Child safety	033	Park assistance system.....	181
Safety Labels	039	Driving skills	185
2. Operating system and equipment.....	040	4. Maintenance	194
Cabin	041	Safety maintenance.....	195
Start and stop the vehicle.....	086	Fuel system.....	198
A/C system.....	110	Interior maintenance	201
Car lights and visual field.....	120	Exterior maintenance.....	204
Seats and storage facilities	132	Engine Compartment.....	211
Accessories and Modifications.....	147	Engine oil	219

Contents

Coolant	230	6. Technical Data	285
Brake fluid	234	Identification number.....	286
Power steering fluid	237	Complete vehicle parameters	291
Battery	239	7. Breakdown Call.....	298
Windshield washer fluid and wiper blades	243	Breakdown Call	299
Tire	246	8. Maintenance information.....	300
5. Accident Handling	254	Maintenance Specifications	301
Warning triangle	255		
Spare tire and in-vehicle tool	256		
Fuse replacement.....	264		
Replace the bulbs.....	279		
Emergency start	279		
Emergent traction.....	281		

1. Safe operation instructions

Safe driving.....	004
Seat belt	010
Airbag System	021
Child safety.....	033
Safety Labels	039

Safe driving

General Introduction

This section mainly introduces important information, operating instructions, recommendations and safety precautions for safe driving. Please carefully read and follow relevant regulations for the safety of you and your passenger.

Attention

- **The user shall correctly identify the name of each vehicle parts prior to driving.**
- **Know how to use each switch correctly.**
- **Know how to use accelerator pedal, brake pedal, steering wheel, transmission and ABS system correctly.**

WARNING

Please be sure to bring this Manual with your car. If you lend or resell your car to other person, please make sure that this Manual is delivered to its new owner.

Adjust front row seats correctly

Before the vehicle is running, all passenger shall make their backrest upright, adjust their backrest and wear their seat belt correctly.

Wear seat belts while driving and riding in vehicles

Seat belts provide the best protection in all types of crashes. Airbags are designed to inflate only in the event of a moderate to severe front collision (within 30 degrees to the left and right of the positive direction), although they can be used to supplement seat belts. In addition, if the safety belt is not fastened before the collision, the airbag may even cause injury to the driver and passenger. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, you must also make sure that you and all passengers wear seat belts correctly.

Properly position all child passenger

Children should be seated properly in the rear seat, not the front seat, for the safest. When children are too young to wear seat belts, they must be properly placed in the child restraint device, and the child lock should be set to the LOCK state.

Special precautions for the hazard of airbags

Airbags will also cause serious or even fatal injuries to passenger sitting too close to them or not properly protected although they can make a protective effect. It is most dangerous to infants, young children and short adults. Please be sure to follow all the instructions in this manual

Do Not Drink and Drive

You shall not drive after drinking because your response speed to environmental changes will be reduced. The more you drink, the slower your response will be. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive.

Control the driving speed

Speeding is the main cause of casualty accident from collision. The faster the speed is, the greater the risk is. Do not ignore the specified maximum speed limit and the safety conditions for speeding during driving.

Ensure the vehicle is in the safety driving state

Tire burst or mechanical failure are extremely dangerous. In order to reduce the possibility of such problems, the tire and vehicle conditions should be checked frequently, and complete the regular maintenance specified in the maintenance table.

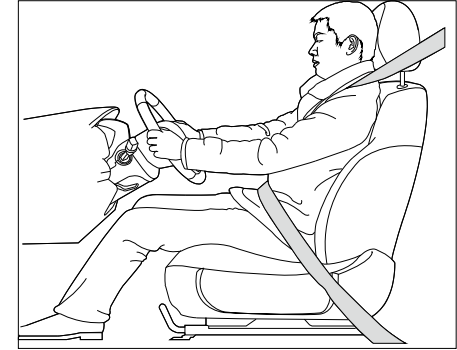
⚠ WARNING

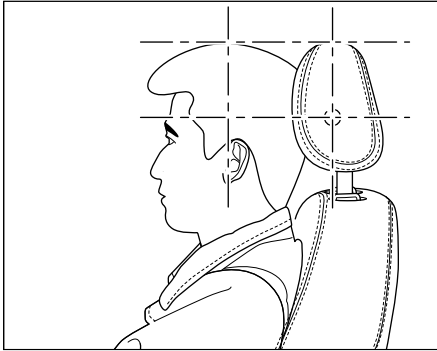
- **When driving, do not distract from external influence, for example, talk to passengers or make a telephone call;**
- **Do not drive your vehicle when your reaction capacity weakens. Medicines, alcohol, drugs and other will undermine your reaction capacity.**
- **Follow the traffic laws and speed limits strictly.**
- **You should always pay attention to reduce the speed, so that the speed is in a running state that matches the road conditions, traffic flow and weather conditions.**

Driver's correct sitting gesture

Driver's correct sitting gesture

Correct driving posture has a direct influence on driving safety and fatigue.





For your and passenger's safety and to reduce injury and death risk during accidents, we recommend driver to operate as follows:

- Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance between the chest and the steering wheel is at least 25cm.
- Move your seat back and forth to a proper position, so that you can make your knee slightly bent to fully step down the accelerator pedal, the brake pedal and clutch pedal.
- Make sure that your elbow is slightly bent to hold the highest point of the steering wheel.

- Adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge of the head restraint is as high as the top of the head, and the back of the head is as close to the head restraint as possible.
- Adjust your backrest to an appropriate angle so that your back can fit with you backrest completely.
- Buckle up correctly.

 **WARNING**

To reduce injury and death risks in accidents, do follow the following precautions strictly:

- **If your chest is too close to the steering wheel, you cannot get effective protection from airbags, and can be seriously injured by an inflating front airbag.**
- **Your hands should always hold the steering wheel outside edge (Location between 9-10 point on the left hand side and between 3-4 point on the right hand side) to ensure you can see all meters and indicators on the combination instrument.**
- **Adjusting the steering wheel until it faces your chest, and confirm that the adjustment mechanism is locked firmly, which can effectively reduce the injury caused by an inflating front airbag.**
- **While driving, do not recline the seat-back too far. Wear the seat belt correctly and keep correct sitting posture to avoid injury caused by emergency braking.**

Front passenger's correct sitting ges-

ture

To ensure front passenger safety and reduce injury and death risks in accidents, the front passengers shall operate as follows:

- The front passenger should move the seat as far back as possible, leave ample space between his/her chest and the dashboard, so as to get the most safety protection by an inflating front airbag.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge of the head restraint is as high as the top of the head, and the back of the head is as close to the head restraint as possible.
- Adjust the seat-back until he/she can sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Wear the seat belt correctly.
- Keep his/her feet in the foot room in front of the front seat.

WARNING

To reduce injury and death risks in accidents, do follow the following precautions strictly:

- **The front passenger shall not be too close to the dashboard, otherwise, the ABRs system will not provide effective protection and may even cause more serious injury to the front passenger.**
- **Do not put your feet on the dashboard, stretch your feet out the window nor sit cross-legged on the seat in the course of driving, you must always keep your feet staying in the foot space, otherwise, it is vulnerable for you to injure in case of emergency braking or an accident.**
- **While driving, do not recline the seat-back too far. Wear the seat belt correctly and keep correct sitting posture to avoid injury caused by emergency braking or an accident..**

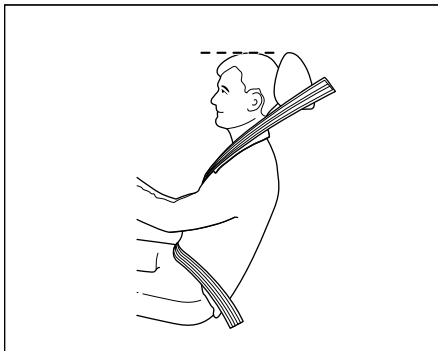
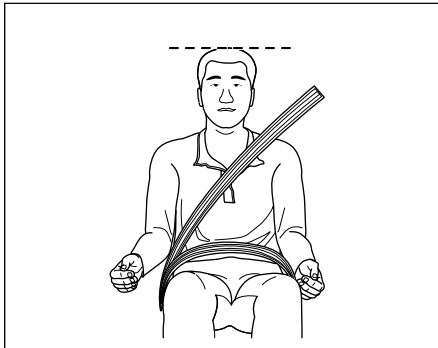
Rear row passenger's correct sitting gesture

For the safety of rear seat passengers, to reduce the risk of accidental injuries and deaths, have rear seat passengers do the following:

- Adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge of the head restraint is as high as the top of the head, and the back of the head is as close to the head restraint as possible.
- Sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Keep his/her feet in the foot room in front of the rear seat and on the floor.
- Wear the seat belt correctly.
- When carrying young passenger, related regulations must be followed to take proper protection measures.

1

Adjust head restraint correctly



Adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge of the head restraint is as high

as the top of the head, and the back of the head is as close to the head restraint as possible.

Attention

- The lowest position of headrest in BJ40L rear seat is the non-use position, and the user needs to adjust it to the effective lock position to avoid danger at the time of its use.

WARNING

In case of driving under the condition that the headrest is removed or is improperly adjusted, the occupant may be highly vulnerable to serious injury or even death in case of emergency braking or an accident. To reduce injury and death risks in accidents, do follow the following precautions strictly:

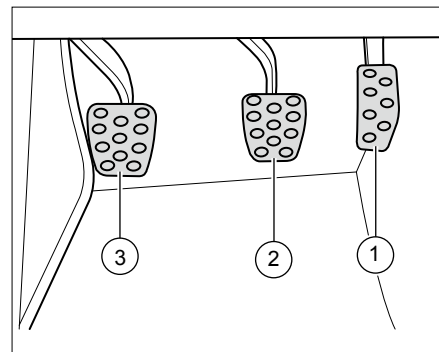
- The head restraints must always be in their mounting positions and adjusted correctly.
- All the passenger must adjust their head restraints to their correct positions according to their own body types. The upper edge of the

headrest must be as high as possible with the top of the head, and the back of the head must be as close to the headrest as possible.

- Do not adjust your headrest in the course of driving, if you feel that your headrest needs to be adjusted while driving, you shall stop driving immediately, adjust it to a correct position and then start to drive.

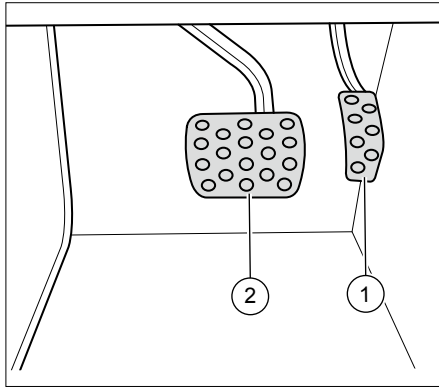
Pedal area

(manual transmission models only)



1. Throttle pedal
2. Brake pedal
3. Clutch pedal

(Only for automatic transmission models)



1. Throttle pedal
2. Brake pedal

When the vehicle is running, make sure all the pedals can be pressed all the way down to their extreme positions easily.

When the brake system has a fault, the vehicle is needed to be stopped with larger pedal stroke and pedal of the brake pedal.

WARNING

If being obstructed, the pedal is easy to cause serious accidents and even damage to personnel.

Do not store any items in the driver's side footwell as items may slip into the pedal area and obstruct pedal movement. Once the driver cannot operate the brake pedal in case of emergency braking or an emergency, it is very easy to cause an accident.

Driver's pedal mat

The foot pad should be fixed in the footwell, and cannot interfere with the pedal movement.

WARNING

- **Make sure the foot pedal pad is fixed in the footwell securely.**
- **Do not lay other mat or covering on the foot pad installed in place. Doing so can shrink the pedal travel, hindering the pedal movement.**
- **After cleaning the foot pedal pad removed from the vehicle, be sure to re-fix it during re-installation.**

Seat belt

General

Life is paramount, please wear your seat belt correctly!

The chapter has introduced that how to use the safety belt correctly can significantly reduce the risk of injury.

- Wear a seat belt in accordance with the requirements described in this manual.
- Make sure that the seat belts get ready and have no damage.

WARNING

To reduce injury and death risks in accidents, do follow the following precautions strictly:

- To wear your safety belt incorrectly or not wear your safety belt will increase the risk of serious injury.
- To wear your safety belt correctly may reduce the risk of serious injury in case of emergency braking and an accident. For the sake of safety, be sure you and your passengers wear seat belts properly as long as the vehicle is moving.

WARNING

- Be sure the pregnant women or the disabled wear seat belts properly. If not wearing seat belts properly, these passengers may also be seriously hurt. The best way to protect an unborn baby is to protect the mother throughout pregnancy.
- The protective effect of seat belt can be reached only when it is worn correctly. Failure or incorrect wearing of seat belts will increase the risk of injury and death.
- Make sure to wear your safety belt prior to every driving and so do the passenger in the front and row seats even in urban traffic, so as to keep you and your passenger safe.
- Two people (including children) should NEVER use the same seat belt. If you wear your seat belt while you hold your child on your lap, it is very dangerous.

 **WARNING**

- Do not loosen your fastened safety belt in the course of driving.
- The safety belt cannot go by any fragile objects(for example, glasses and ballpoint pens) , because doing like that may result in injury.
- The seat belt tab must be correctly inserted into the buckle and locked. Wearing the seat belt incorrectly will affect its protective effect.
- When you wear the safety belt, you shall take off your loose and heavy clothes (for example, a coat), so as to avoid affecting the fit of the safety belt with your body and its protective function.
- The safety belt must be always kept clean, since a severely dirty safety belt may affect the re-winding function of the automatic re-winder.

 **WARNING**

- Even a pregnant women shall also wear a safety belt at all times. simultaneously, the seat belt must fit down to the hip as much as possible to prevent pressure from being applied to the lower abdomen.
- Pregnant women should sit straight behind and away from the steering wheel or dashboard as far as possible, so as to reduce the injury to pregnant women and fetuses caused by accidents or airbag triggering.
- If an occupant does not wear his safety belt correctly, the safety belt will not play a corresponding protective role.
- The latch socket must not be blocked with paper or the like; otherwise, the latch cannot be inserted into the lock catch.

 **WARNING**

- Serious injury can occur in the event of an accident if the seatbelt is loose or cracked and the seatbelt connection, automatic retractors or locking element is damaged. Therefore, all seat belt parts should be inspected regularly.
- Do not repair, adjust, install and remove the explosive pre-tightening device of the seat belt or the components on the seat belt by yourself. The seat belt shall not be modified in any way. The components of safety belt can be disassembled and installed only by a BAIC franchised shop.
- The safety belt used and deformed due to stretch at the time of incident must be replaced by a BAIC franchised shop, and must be also replaced even if there is no obvious deformation in appearance. In addition, be sure to check the seat belt anchor.

1

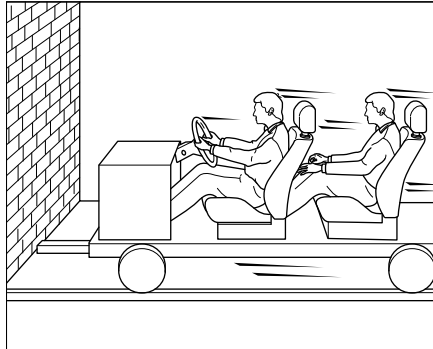
Other parts of this chapter will explain in more detail how to maximize your safety.

However, note that it is impossible to completely avoid casualties in a serious collision even if the seat belt is correctly worn and the airbag has been deployed.

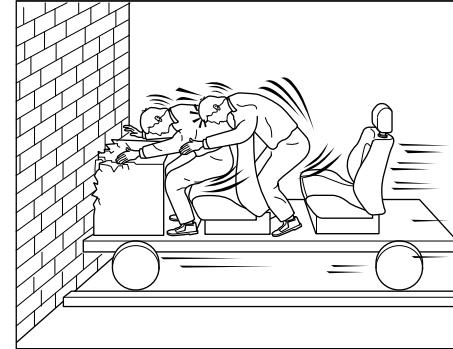
Why always wear seat belt

Seat belt can reduce impact injury of the passenger as much as possible by reducing passenger's forward movement inertia when a front collision of the car occurs.

Physical principles of frontal collision



While driving, both the vehicle and the passenger have energy (kinetic energy) which depends on the vehicle speed and the passenger's mass. The larger the vehicle speed and the mass, the more the energy upon impact. In which, the vehicle speed is decisive. For example, the released kinetic energy at 50km/h is 5 times that at 25km/h.

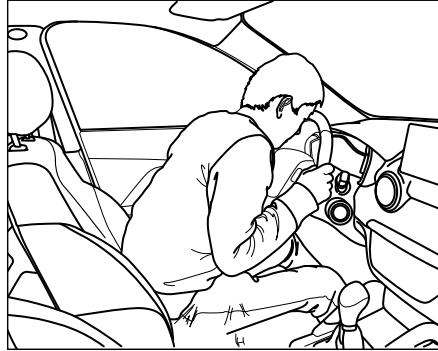


The passenger without seat belts are not "combined" with the vehicle, and still move forward at the speed before the collision during decelerating in the event of a frontal collision. The principle of collision physics described in the example not only applies to frontal collision of the vehicle but also to all the types of other vehicle collisions.

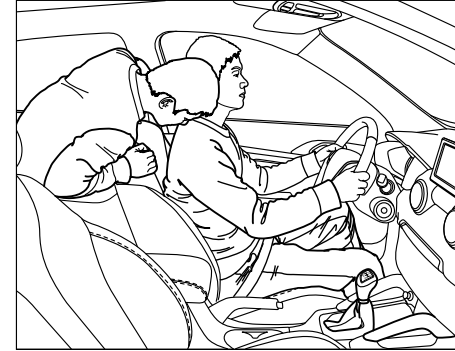
Consequences of the driver and the passenger without their safety belts worn

Many people believe that in the event of a mild collision, they can control their body with their own hands to avoid injury. This is a wrong view!

During a crash, the driver and passenger's unbelted seats still move forward at the speed before the crash due to inertia, but the vehicle does not.



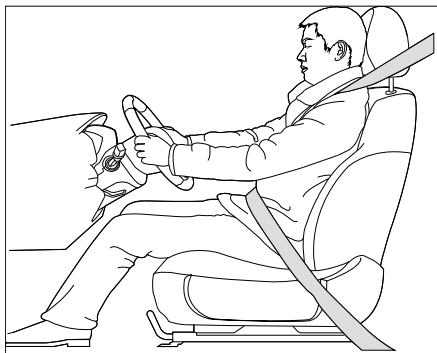
Even if the car is at low speed, the force exerted on human body, when a collision occurs, is big, and the passenger can control his own body by hands. The unrestrained passengers will be thrown forward and injured once colliding with other articles in the car.



Passengers in rear seats also must buckle up correctly, otherwise, they may be thrown forward fiercely in an accident. The passengers who do not buckle up will not only hurt themselves but also hurt the other passengers in the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not get your body under control by hand. Doing so can raise the chance of being seriously injured.
- The airbag can never replace the functions of the safety belt. Therefore, it is very necessary to wear the safety belt correctly regardless of whether the airbag is equipped or not.
- The rear seat passengers must wear the seat belts properly as well.



Wearing the seat belts properly can restrain the driver and passengers in the desired positions to avoid injury. Wearing seat belts correctly can prevent drivers and passengers from losing control and being thrown out.

The seat belts can absorb most of the kinetic energy resulting from a crash. In addition, the crush zones and other passive safety systems can absorb the energy at the same time to reduce the risk of injury further together with the seat belts.

⚠ WARNING

- Make sure seat belts are in place and positioned properly.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. Never let two children use the same seat belt.
- While driving, always keep a correct sitting position and wear a seat belt properly. Do not unfasten your seat belt until the vehicle stops to avoid unintentional injury.
- Always prevent the seat belts from being damaged or stuck or rubbing sharp edges.
- To wear your seat belt properly, try not to wear loose and bulky clothing as far as possible (if you have worn one, take off it.) to ensure the seat belt to fit your body.
- Keep the seat belt system clean and in good condition. Never get foreign matter or liquid into the buckles.
- Never remove and maintain the seat belts by yourself.

Unfastened seat belt warning light



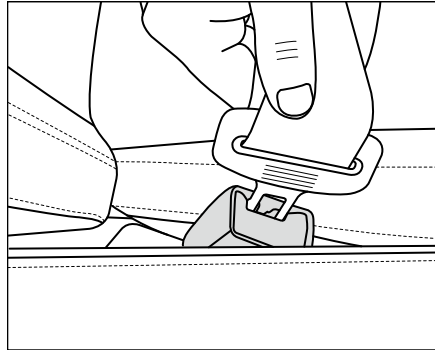
Start /Stop the button in a 'RUN 'mode and if the driver does not wear the safety belt, the safety belt indicator light will go on in the display screen of instrument information center. If the driver does not wear the safety belt in the course of driving and drives his vehicle at a velocity of more than 25km/h or at a velocity of less than 25km/h and when the driving distance is greater than 500 meters or the duration exceeds 60 seconds, the warning light will be lit and accompanied by an alarm sound.

The front passenger seat has also been equipped with a warning that the safety belt

is not fastened, reminding us of wearing the safety belt correctly at all times.

Buckle up correctly

How to wear front seat belt?



Adjust the front seats and its headrests correctly, pull the safety belt out of the retractor, insert the latch socket of the safety belt into the lock catch and fasten the safety belt, and the latch socket will give a click when locked into the lock catch.

The seat belt length will be automatically adjusted according to your body size and seat position. In case of emergency braking or collision, the tensioner will lock the safety belt. The retractor also locks up if you lean forward too quickly. You can drag out the

seat belt slowly and smoothly to fit your body.

The safety belt shall be pulled out after being fully retracted; if the safety belt cannot be pulled out of the retractor, you may first pull the safety belt with force and then loosen it; and, after that, you can pull the safety belt smoothly out of the retractor.

WARNING

If the safety belt cannot be pulled out, it is necessary to send it to a BAIC franchised shop for overhauling as soon as possible under the condition that you pay more attention to safe driving.

Wearing rear seat belts



Adjust the headrest of the rear seat according to your height and comfort requirements of the headrest, sit up straight in the rear seat and make the back fit as close as possible to the seatback. Pull out the seat belt from the retractor located on the upper side of the nearest side, insert the tongue of the seat belt into the buckle, fasten the seat belt, and the tongue will click when it is locked in the buckle.

WARNING

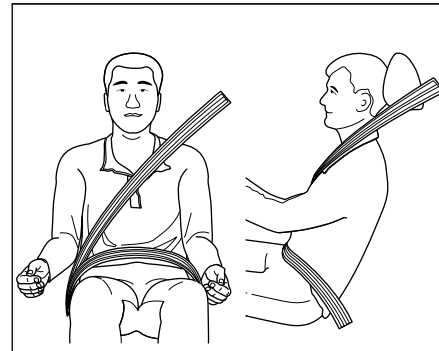
The seat belt not fastened properly cannot provide good protection during a crash, resulting in serious personal injury.

- Not only the passenger is seated correctly, but also the seat belt is worn correctly, in order to give full play to the function of the seat belt.
- Make sure to insert the latch plate into its own buckle.

Tip

Other precautions for wearing the rear seat belts are the same as those for the front seats.

Seat belt binding fixed position



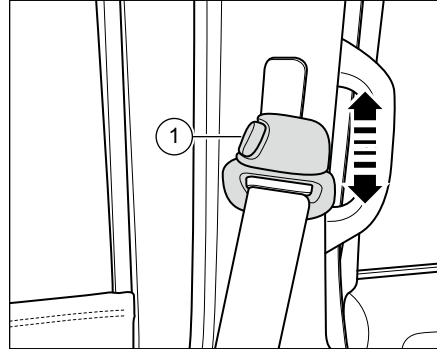
The seat belt is designed taking full account of the bone structure of the body (such as pelvis, sternum and shoulder).

Proper wear of a seat belt can let it play its protective role fully. Improper sitting posture of passengers will reduce the protective effect of safety belt and easily lead to casualties. If the airbag is triggered by an accident, the impact of the airbag may cause serious injury or even casualties to the passengers who sit improperly.

⚠ WARNING

To get the most protection from the seat belt, be sure to sit upright and well back in the seat and wear the seat belt properly. In the event of an accident, the passenger may be seriously injured if the incorrect seat belt is worn!

- The seat belt must pass through the center of the passenger's shoulder and must not be tied to the neck.
- The safety belt must be flat and close to the passenger's chest.
- The seat belt must pass over the passenger's pelvis rather than the stomach. The seat belt must be flat, close to the pelvis, and tensioned as required.
- If the safety belt is not fastened enough, it will slip to the location of your stomach or neck so that it may do a serious harm to the passenger.

Adjust the seat belt height

To adjust the device by making use of the safety device's height may move the safety belt up and down, so as to make the safety belt fit with your body well.

When adjusting the safety belt upward, you just directly move the height of safety belt upward to adjust the device till it is in the proper position. The downward adjustment method is as follows:

1. Pinch the seat belt guide part -1-.
2. Move the guiding element down to adjust the safety belt to the position that suits your body shape.
3. Loosen seat belt guide part.
4. After adjusting the height of safety belt, you need to pull the safety belt with force to check whether the guiding element is securely locked.

1

Pregnant woman wearing seat belt

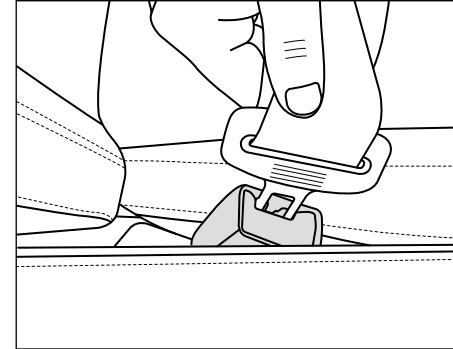


If you are pregnant, the best way to protect you and your fetus is to always wear the seat belt correctly during driving or riding, and keep the belt as low as possible over your hip.

During driving, you should maintain an upright sitting posture and move the driver's seatback to a suitable position to ensure that you can operate the vehicle freely. When sitting in the front seat, you should also move the seat backward as much as possible. This can reduce the risk of injury to the mother and fetus due to a crash or frontal airbag inflation.

At each antenatal examination, be sure to ask your doctor if you are suitable for driving.

Loosen seat belt



1. Press the red button next to the lock catch of safety belt and the latch socket of safety belt will automatically pop up.
2. Hold the latch socket of safety belt and retract it, the retractor will automatically wind back the safety belt.

⚠ WARNING

When the vehicle is running, do not unfasten the seat belt. Doing so can cause serious injury or death during a crash.

👁 Attention

- **It is forbidden to unfasten your seat belt until the car has completely stopped.**
- **When the seat belt is unfastened, after the bolts are unfastened, you need to retract seat belt by guiding with your hands, to prevent passengers from being injured by above metal bolt when the seat belt is fast retracted.**

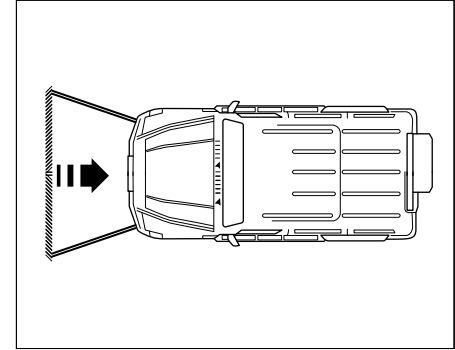
Seat belt retractor

The front seats of the vehicle have been equipped with a safety belt retractor. The sensor activates the belt retractor in serious frontal impact and rear impact. The retractor will retract the belt in the direction of rewinding to slow the forward movement of the passenger.

The explosive retractor can only be used once. In case of minor frontal collision, side or rear collision, rollover and accidents without significant frontal force, the seat belt retractor does not work.

👁 Attention

- **The seat belt retractor will produce a little smoke when triggered. And this is normal, not a vehicle fire. No need to worry.**
- **The seat belt retractor must be disposed following relevant safety regulations. And authorized dealer of BAIC is familiar with these regulations and may provide you them.**



In case of the following circumstances, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC immediately.

- An accident occurred at the front of the vehicle (The part marked in the figure), but the seat belt retractor did not work.
- Any seat belt tightener or its surrounding area is scratched, broken or otherwise damaged.

Seat belt retractor recovery processing

The seat belt retractor is a component of the seat belt system. Any work on the seat belt tensioner or the disassembly and assembly of the seat belt retractor due to the maintenance of other parts must be carried out by the authorized dealer of BAIC, otherwise the seat belt may be damaged, and the seat belt retractor may not work normally in case of an accident.

The removed seat belt retractor must be disposed following relevant regulations in order to avoid personal injury or environmental pollution. And authorized dealer of BAIC is familiar with these regulations and may provide you them.

WARNING

If the safety belt retractor is repaired by a repair shop not authorized by BAIC Motor or professional, or if the safety belt retractor is not used correctly according to the regulations, it will inevitably increase the risk of accident casualties.

- **Do not repair, remove or install seat belts or seat belt retractor components yourself.**
- **Any operations on the safety belt retractor and the safety belt, including the operations required to disassemble and assemble system components due to maintenance of other parts of the vehicle, must be carried out by a BAIC franchised shop.**
- **The seat belt retractor can only be activated once. All seat belt retractor that have been triggered must be replaced.**

Airbag System

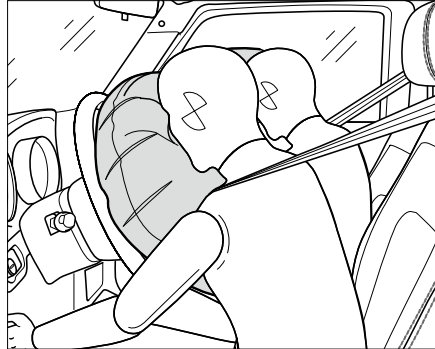
General Introduction

Wearing the seat belts properly can effectively reduce the risk of injury during a crash. To make triggered airbag system perform protective functions fully, driver and passengers shall wear seat belts correctly, adjust driver seat and steering wheel correctly, adjust headrests positions correctly and use suitable child restraint device to protect children in vehicles.

WARNING

Dust generated during airbag deployment may irritate skin or eyes, and may also aggravate asthma for some people. After the airbag is deployed in case of an accident, thoroughly wash all exposed skin with warm water and warm soap.

Functions of airbags



When the vehicle collides with an obstacle seriously, the ABRS system will quickly open an air-filled cushion to prevent the driver and the passengers from collision injuries due to inertia.

During a severe collision, the airbags will instantly inflate with considerable force. So, to reduce the possibility of injury, the passenger should always sit as far back as practical and sit well back in the seats. If the car has a sharp collision, passengers unfastened seat belt may be thrown away to airbag inflation area, the inflating airbag may cause serious injuries and deaths of passengers, especially the children.

Driver and passengers should keep a

maximum distance with the front row frontal airbags; thus, the airbag can inflate fully and protect passengers effectively.

The decisive factors of whether the ABRS system is triggered or not are the angle of collision and the magnitude of collision energy when the vehicle has an accident. If the angle of collision and the magnitude of collision energy measured by the control unit are less than the ignition requirements of control unit, the system will not trigger the ABRS system. So even if the vehicle is seriously damaged, it does not mean that the ABRS system shall be triggered.

 **WARNING**

The decisive factor regarding if airbag is triggered is the collision energy when colliding and is relevant to accident type, collision angle, barrier and speed.

 **Attention**

If the vehicle's chassis is severely impacted in the course of driving, the ABRS system may be deployed. So please be careful when driving on the ground surface that has not been manually processed or not designed for the vehicle to drive, so as to avoid any unexpected deployment of ABRS system.

Why wear seat belts and maintain correct sitting posture

In order to ensure the best protection after triggering the airbag, you must always wear the seat belt correctly and keep the correct sitting position during driving.

For the safety of you and your passengers, you should pay attention to the following items before driving:

- Always wear seat belts correctly.
- Adjust the driver's seat and steering wheel correctly.
- Correctly adjust the passenger seat position.
- Adjust headrest correctly
- Keep children in the vehicle safe by a suitable child seat to.

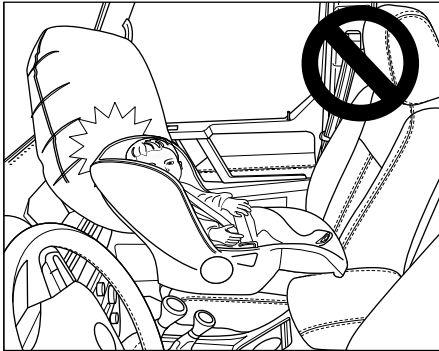
 **WARNING**

The deployment of the airbag is completed at a high speed in an instant. If you have an incorrect sitting posture at this time, it may cause fatal injury. Therefore, it is necessary to ensure that all passenger maintain a correct sitting posture during driving.

In case of emergency braking or collision accident, passenger who have not worn seat belts may be thrown forward to the deployment area of the airbag, which may cause fatal injury to passenger, especially the children.

Keep away from the front of ABRS system as far as possible so that it can provide the best protection when the frontal ABRS system is fully deployed in case of an accident.

The dangers of installing a child seat on the front passenger seat



Forbidden to install a child seat facing away from the driving direction on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, in the event of an accident, the triggered ABRs system of front passenger seat will seriously collide with the child seat, causing a fatal injury to the child.

Airbag Fault Warning light



The airbag failure warning light located in the instrument information center display will remind you of the failure of the airbag and seat belt retractor.

When the Start/Stop button is in "RUN" mode, the warning light is on for 4-6 seconds and then off, indicating that the system is working properly. When the start/stop button is in the "ACC" or "OFF" position, the airbag does not work.

If the following conditions occur, it means that the airbag system is faulty, and the airbag may not work normally in case of collision. At this time, you must go to the authorized dealer of BAIC to inspect the vehicle:

1. When the start / stop button is in the "RUN" mode, the airbag fault warning light does not light up or flashes all the time.
2. When the start / stop button is in the "RUN" mode, the airbag fault warning light lights up for several seconds, then goes out and lights up again.
3. When the vehicle is driving, the airbag failure warning light is on.

WARNING

If there is a fault in the system, the airbag will not be able to perform the protection function normally.

Repair, maintenance and scrapping of airbag

The components of the airbag system are installed in different parts of the vehicle. Any work on the airbag system or the disassembly and assembly of airbag system components due to the maintenance of other components must be carried out by the authorized dealer of BAIC, otherwise the airbag system may be damaged, and cannot normally trigger the airbag or does not trigger the airbag at all in case of an accident.

The seat belt retractor must be disposed following relevant safety regulations. And authorized dealer of BAIC is familiar with these regulations and can provide you with inquiry service.

WARNING

If the maintenance is not carried out by the professional technician of BAIC franchised shop, it will be bound to increase the potential risk of accident casualties. When an accident occurs, the airbag cannot be triggered, or when no accident occurs, the airbag is triggered, which is particularly easy to cause serious injury or even death to drivers and passengers.

- Do not paste or cover anything on the soft plastic surface of the dashboard on the front of the steering wheel and the front passenger side airbag assembly, or make any modification to the above parts.
- Do not install the cup holder or telephone rack and other appliance on the cover lid of the airbag module.
- Do not fix items such as Notepad and mobile phone holder on the windshield above the front passenger side airbag, otherwise they may hurt the personnel in the vehicle once the front airbag triggered.

WARNING

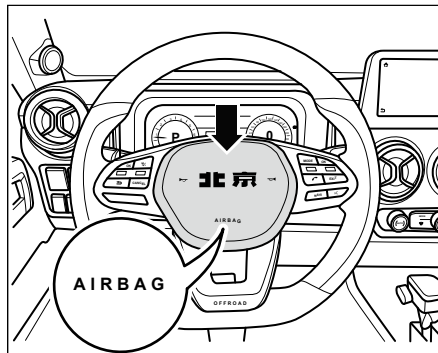
- When cleaning the steering wheel or dashboard, use only a dry cloth or a cloth wet with water, but do not use solvent-containing cleaning agents to clean the surfaces of the dashboard and the airbag assembly cover. Because the solvent will cause the surface of the above components to be loose, once the airbag is triggered, the broken plastic may cause serious injury to the passengers.
- The airbag system can only be triggered once. Any triggered airbag must be replaced.
- Please do not attempt to repair, remove or install components of the airbag system yourself.
- Any work on the airbag or the disassembly and assembly of airbag components due to the maintenance of other vehicle components (e.g. steering wheel) must be carried out by the authorized dealer of BAIC. Because the authorized dealers of BAIC have been equipped with necessary special tools, maintenance materials and qualified professional technicians.

⚠ WARNING

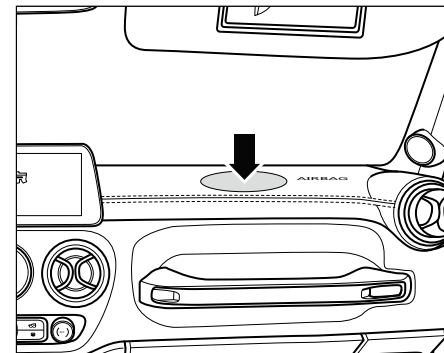
- **Be sure to check and repair the airbag system at a BAIC dealership.**
- **Please do not attempt to modify the front bumper or body structure yourself.**

If you want to resell the car, be sure to inform the new owner that the SRS system is installed on the car and the replacement date of the airbag components.

The undeployed airbag is potentially dangerous when disposing of the vehicle. Therefore, before disposing, it must be safely deployed by professionals in a certain environment.

Front row frontal airbag

The driver's airbag is located in the steering wheel and the airbag location is marked "AIRBAG".



The front passenger airbag is installed on the upper instrument panel of the glove box, and the position of the airbag is marked with the word "AIRBAG".

If the front passenger airbag sits correctly and fastens the safety belt correctly, the frontal air bag will provide additional protection for the chest and face areas in case of a serious impact on the vehicle.

1

Front row frontal airbag mainly consists of three parts:

- Electric control and monitoring device.
- Two front airbags with gas generator.
- Airbag failure warning light located in the information center of the combination instrument.

The airbag is monitored by the electronic monitoring system of the airbag control unit. When the "Start/Stop button" is in the "RUN" mode, the airbag fault warning light lights up for about a few seconds and goes out after self-test.

The front airbags supplement the protection offered by lap/shoulder seat belts and help protect the head and chest of the driver and front-row passenger during a severe frontal collision.

The airbag system cannot replace the seat belt, but is an integral part of the passive safety of the complete. Please note that the airbag system is best protected only when the properly worn seat belt and the properly adjusted headrest work together. Therefore, not only because of regulations, but also for safety reasons, seat belts must be worn at all times.

 **WARNING**

passenger will be seriously injured when the airbag is deployed if they have not worn the seat belt or worn it improperly even if the front airbag is equipped. Therefore, passenger must wear their seat belts.

 **Attention**

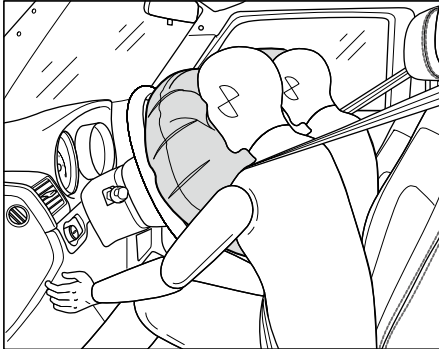
The deployment and release of the side airbag are completed in a very short time, and can not protect against the second side impact that may occur later.

In order to ensure that the frontal airbag can inflate and deploy normally, there must be no obstructions between the frontal airbag and the occupant.

 **Attention**

Do not place items near or above the in-dashboard airbag assembly above the steering wheel, dashboard and passenger-side glove box. Because when the vehicle has a serious collision enough to cause the airbag to deploy, these objects will fly out and hurt the passengers in the vehicle.

How Frontal Airbags Work



In case of collision, the airbag control unit monitors the deceleration or acceleration caused by the collision to determine whether the front airbag should be deployed.

Whether the frontal airbag works depends not on the driving speed of the vehicle, but on the colliding object, the collision direction and the speed of the vehicle deceleration. Therefore, some minor collisions may cause injury because the front airbag is not deployed. On the contrary, the damage of some relatively small structures will lead to the deployment of frontal airbag.

In the event of a severe head-on impact, two frontal ABRS systems and the safety belt will work and provide protection.

Attention

The frontal airbag does not target rear impact, slight frontal impact, or side-impact, nor does it target vehicle capsizing, and it does not work when the vehicle brakes urgently or when driving on bumpy roads or passing through depressions.

WARNING

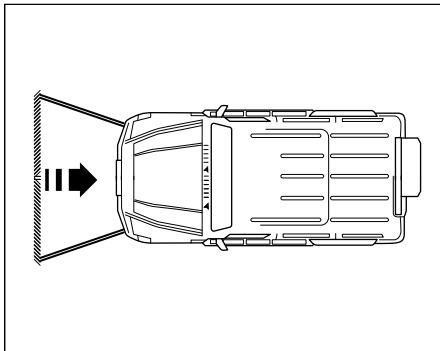
Not wearing a seat belt properly or wrong sitting position can cause serious injury or even death during a crash.

- Before starting driving, make sure you and your passengers wear seat belts properly and sit in correct posture.
- During driving, Please do not let other passengers (children), pets and objects occupy the space between front passenger and airbag. It is forbidden to stick any object on the steering wheel and dashboard surface.
- After the airbag completely inflates, it immediately starts deflating so it won't interfere with your visibility.
- Do not repair, adjust or modify any component of the front airbags without authorization.
- The airbag can only be triggered once. If the airbag is triggered due to an accident, it must be replaced at the authorized dealer of BAIC.

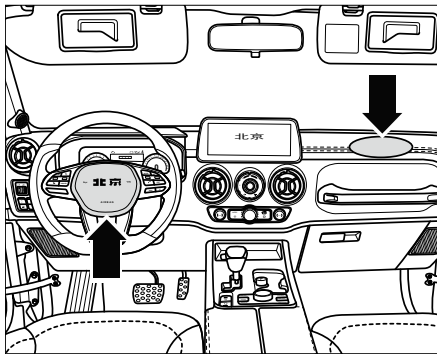
1

In case of the following circumstances, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC immediately.

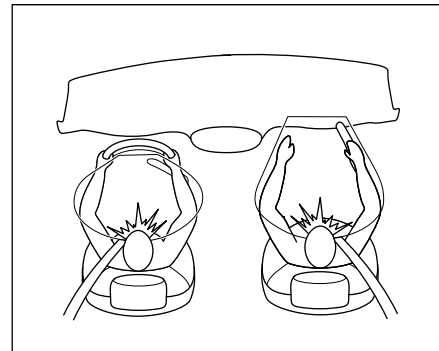
- The front airbag has been inflated.
- When an accident occurs at the front of the vehicle (the area indicated by the arrow in the picture), but the frontal ABRs system has not been inflated yet.



- The padding of the steering wheel or the front passenger airbag cover (the area indicated by the arrow in the illustration) is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



Airbag Deployment



The deployment of frontal airbag is instantaneous, with great force and great sound. The deployed frontal air bag and seat belt restraint system work together to limit the movement range of the front passenger, thereby reducing the degree of injury to the head and trunk.

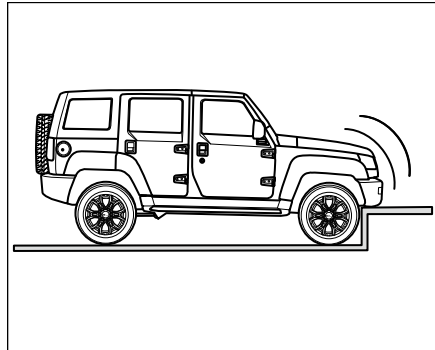
Attention

Some parts are hot after the frontal airbag is deployed. Do not touch them before cooling.

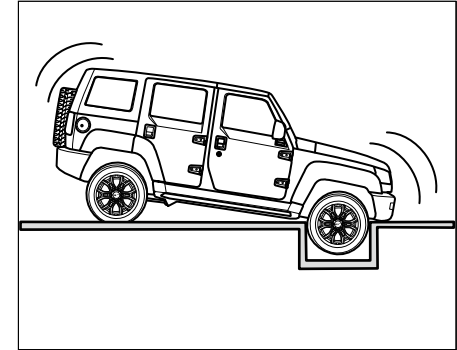
The air bag is specially designed to discharge gas under the passenger's inertia forward compression, and gently support passenger's head and upper body. After the accident, the airbag will continue to exhaust and restore a good front view.

In order to provide timely protection in the event of an accident, the airbag expands at a high speed in an instant. Small smoke and dust will be generated when the airbag is deployed, which is completely normal. Don't think there is a fire in the car.

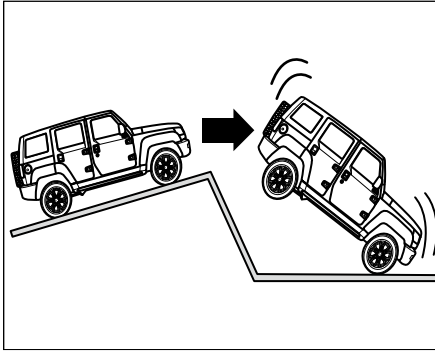
If the vehicle is subject to a severe impact from the bottom, such as flying over a step, hitting a road shoulder or a hard object, striding over a deep pit or scraping the chassis, even if the vehicle has any slight deformation, but when the deceleration measured exceeds the set threshold due to the impact on the greater rigid vehicle components, the ABS system may also deploy.



Impact on shoulder or hard object



Drive a vehicle across a deep pit



Vehicle falling or jumping over steps

Seating position

In order to ensure the best protection function in case of severe impact, the frontal airbag must be deployed within a certain period of time.

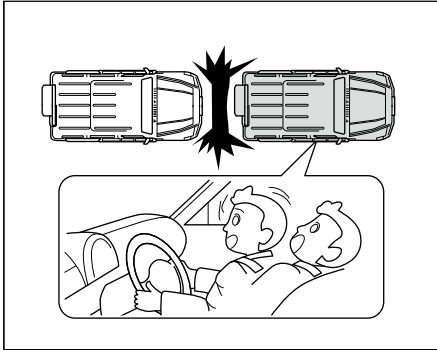
If the occupant is too close to the front air bag, the inflating front air bag can cause facial chafing or other injuries.

WARNING

In order to reduce the damage caused by inflating and deploying the front airbag, you must always wear your seat belt. In addition, the driver and front passengers must adjust their seat positions to leave enough distance between the personnel and the front airbag.

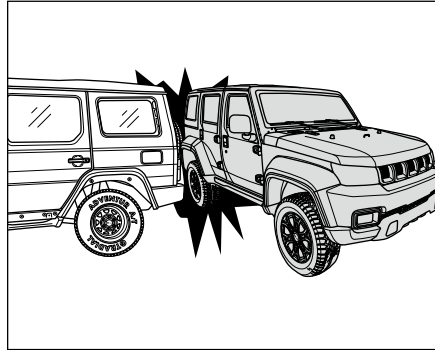
Airbag non-deployment conditions

In many types of accidents, for example, the rear of the vehicle is impacted or the secondary and tertiary collision in the serial collision accident, or the low-speed collision, etc. even if the airbag is deployed, it cannot provide additional protection.



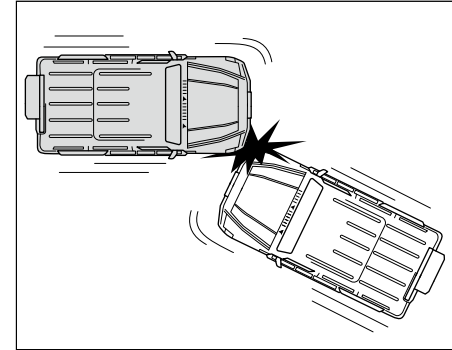
Rear-end collision or collision

When working, the front airbag ejects and deploys from the front of the driver's side or the passenger's side. The frontal airbags may not work in case of rear end collision or collision, in which the passengers move towards the backrest under the action of inertial force, and the airbags play no protective effect on the passengers.



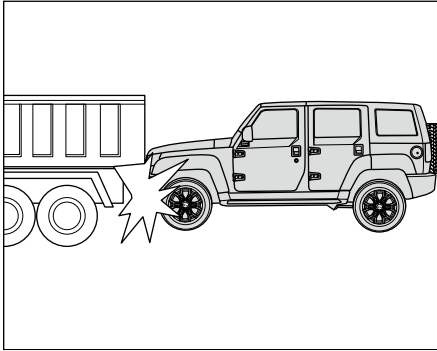
Side collision

When a side impact occurs, the passengers move towards the impacted direction, so the airbag deployed from the front cannot protect the passengers, and the frontal airbag may not work at this time.



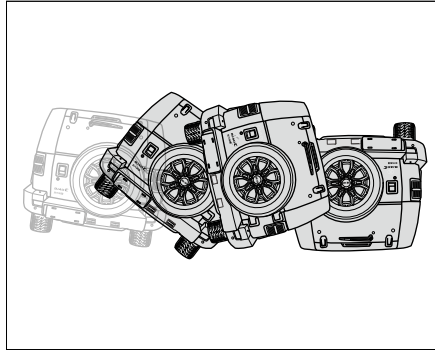
Oblique collision (angular collision)

In the event of an inclined plane collision, the collision force will bring the passenger in a direction where the frontal ABS system cannot provide any additional protection, and the frontal ABS system will not work at that time.



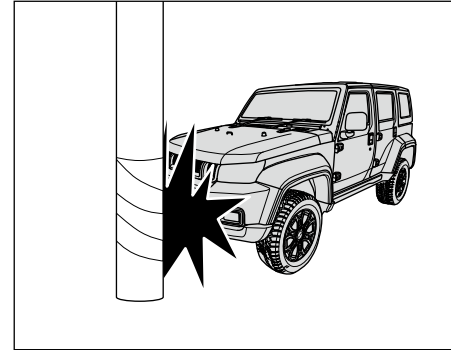
Rear-end collision

In case of collision accident, the driver instinctively makes emergency braking, and then the diving phenomenon of sinking in front of the vehicle body occurs. The front airbags may not work in case of subduction collision or rear end collision, in which the front of the vehicle inserts under the other vehicle, and the impact energy received by the collision sensor is not large.



Rollover accident

The frontal ABRS system does not deploy in a rollover accident, because the passenger cannot be properly protected even if the ABRS system deploys.



Special Collision

The front airbags may not work if the vehicle collides with some object, such as a pole or tree, in which the collision point is at one place and not all of the collision energy is transferred to the sensors.

Child safety

General Introduction

According to accident statistics, children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in the rear seat rather than the front seat.

We recommend that any child who is younger than 12 years old or under 1.5 meters tall shall be seated in the rear seat. Based on the age, height and weight, use the child seat or the existing seat belt to ensure safety of the child seated in the rear seat. For the sake of safety, the child seat should be installed in the rear seat just behind the front passenger's seat.

For the installation and use of child seats, follow the regulations and the seat manufacturer's instructions.

We recommend that you put the instruction manual of the child seat together with this manual and carry it with your car.

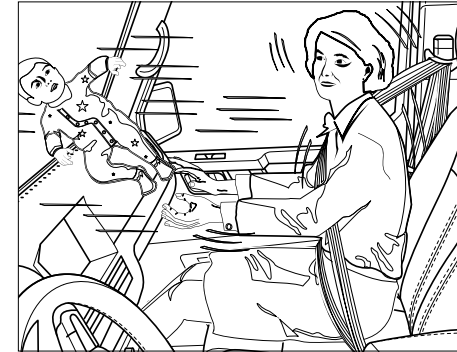
When more than one child crew must be carried,

There are three seats in the rear row of your vehicle, that can be properly used to place the child passenger.

When there are more than three child passengers in your vehicle:

- If a child has grown up to wear a safety belt, the oldest child may be placed in the front seat (please make a safe ride according to the relevant national traffic rules).
- Move the vehicle seat as backward as possible.
- Let the child sit straight against the back of the chair.
- Check whether it is worn correctly and fasten the seat belt.

Safety instructions for child seats



Do not hold infants in your arms when driving, otherwise, infants may die.

Proper use of a child seat can reduce risk of injury significantly. As the driver, you should be responsible for the safety of children in your vehicle:

- Select an appropriate child seat and use it properly.
- Pay attention to the child seat manufacturer's regulations and ensure that the seat belt is worn correctly.

1

- Do not distract your attention due to the children in your vehicle when driving.
- Take a rest halfway after driving for a long time, once every two hours at least.

**WARNING**

- **Proper wear of a seat belt can let it play its protective role fully.**
- **Do not hold children or infants during driving, otherwise they may be injured or killed in the event of an accident.**
- **Only a child seat of right size can provide effective protection to the child.**
- **Do not leave children alone in a vehicle. Because of big climate difference from place to place, the in-vehicle temperature may become extremely low or high. A child left alone in a vehicle could be hurt fatally.**

- **Without a child restraint system, do not let a child with a height below 1.5m use the conventional seat belt in the vehicle. Doing so can cause the child's stomach or neck to be injured during emergency braking or in a crash.**
- **Never let two children use the same child seat.**
- **Be sure to read and follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions and precautions.**
- **Follow the relevant laws and regulations to install and use a child seat. The national laws and regulations shall prevail.**

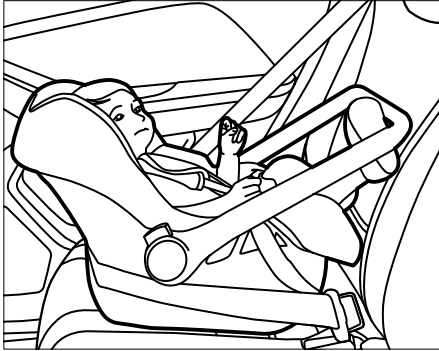


Do not place the rearward facing child protective device on the front seat, otherwise the back of device will be subject to the great impact energy from the deployment of the airbag, resulting in serious injury or even death.

Children Seat

Child Seat Classification (for reference only) :

Class 0/0+ child seat



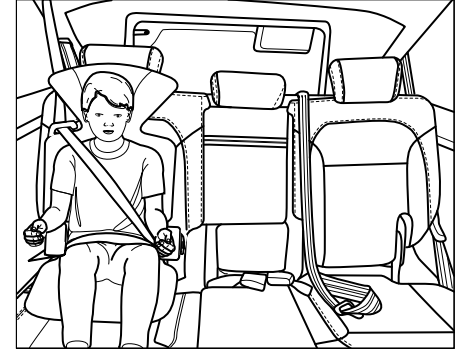
For restraining an infant under 9 months and 10 kg, as well as under 18 months and 13kg, it is better to use the 0/0+ child restraint seat which can be adjusted to the lie-down position.

Class 1 child seat



For infants or toddlers under the age of 4 who weigh between 9-18 kg, a class 1 child seat with a seat belt is best.

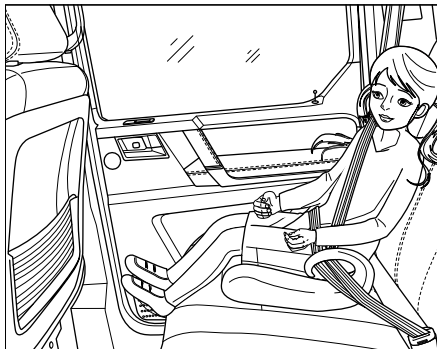
Class 2 child seat



For children under the age of 7 weighing between 15-25 kg, it is best to use a three-point seat belt with a class 1 child seat.

⚠ WARNING

- The upper part of the seat belt must pass through the middle of the shoulder, not through the neck under any circumstances, and firmly fit on the body.
- Lap belt must cross the hip instead of the belly; it shall be fitted stably and be adjusted when necessary.

Class 3 child seat

For restraining a child over 7 years of age and between 22 kg and 36 kg, with a height below 1.5 m, it is better to use the three-point seat belt together with the class 3 child seat.

⚠ WARNING

- The upper part of the seat belt must pass through the middle of the shoulder, not through the neck under any circumstances, and firmly fit on the body.
- Lap belt must cross the hip instead of the belly; it shall be fitted stably and be adjusted when necessary.

i Tip

For a child with a height more than 1.5 m, he/she can use the existing seat belt. No child seat is needed.

Install the child seat correctly

Before installing child seat in the rear row seat, adjust the front row seat to proper position according to child seat size and child body size; in case of a collision or emergency braking, the child who sits in the rear row seat will not be injured by the hard objects in the vehicle. In addition, when child sits in the rear row seat, the child will be injured by the inflated airbags. Never hold an infant or child on your lap.



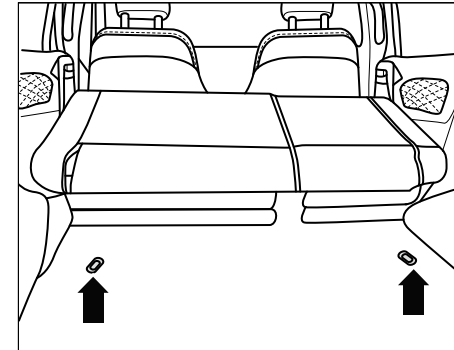
A warning sign is posted on the sun visor on the front passenger side of the vehicle to remind the danger of airbags. Read these labels carefully and follow their instructions.

WARNING

The seat belt of this car does not provide a child seat binding function. Do not use the seat belt to bind the child seat.

Install child seat with ISOFIX system and top fastening cord

Be sure to remove and install the child seats in accordance with the manufacturer's Instructions.



1

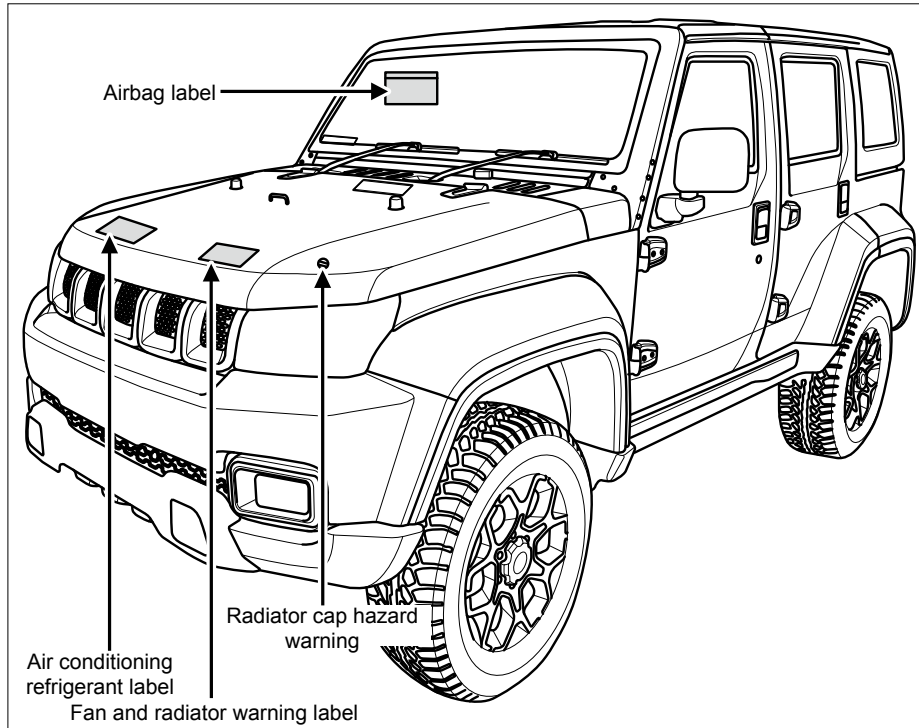
Installation

1. Push the head restraint behind the child seat slightly upward.
2. Pass the top tether through the head restraint, or place the top tether on both sides of the head restraint according to the structure of the child seat, and then pull the top tether rearward to the rear seat back.
3. Press the ISOFIX child seat onto the retaining ring at the front of the seat until the child seat engages audibly.
4. Draw two sides of child seat to check whether the child seat is installed firmly.
5. Fasten top fastening rope ISOFIX retaining ring (The position of the arrow shown in the figure) and top fastening rope hook on rear seat back.
6. Tighten the top fastening rope so that the child seat is close to the rear-row seat back.

 **WARNING**

- **The ISOFIX retaining ring on the rear seat back can only be used for ISOFIX systems.**
- **Do not connect the fastening belt, object or child seat other than ISOFIX one or any other to the retaining rings.**
- **Any other ropes (for example, the fastening rope for luggage) shall not occupy the retaining loop, except that only one top fastening rope may be connected to the rear retaining loop of the back of the rear seat.**

Safety Labels



The position of safety signboard is shown in the figure. The ABRS system signboard shall be stuck to the external side of the front passenger sun visor under a shut-off condition, while the air-conditioner refrigerant signboard, fan and radiator warning signboard and radiator cover hazard warning signboard shall be seen only when the engine hood is opened.

These safety labels are used to alert you to the potential danger of causing serious injury. Please read these labels carefully. If the label falls off or is blurred, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC in time for replacement.

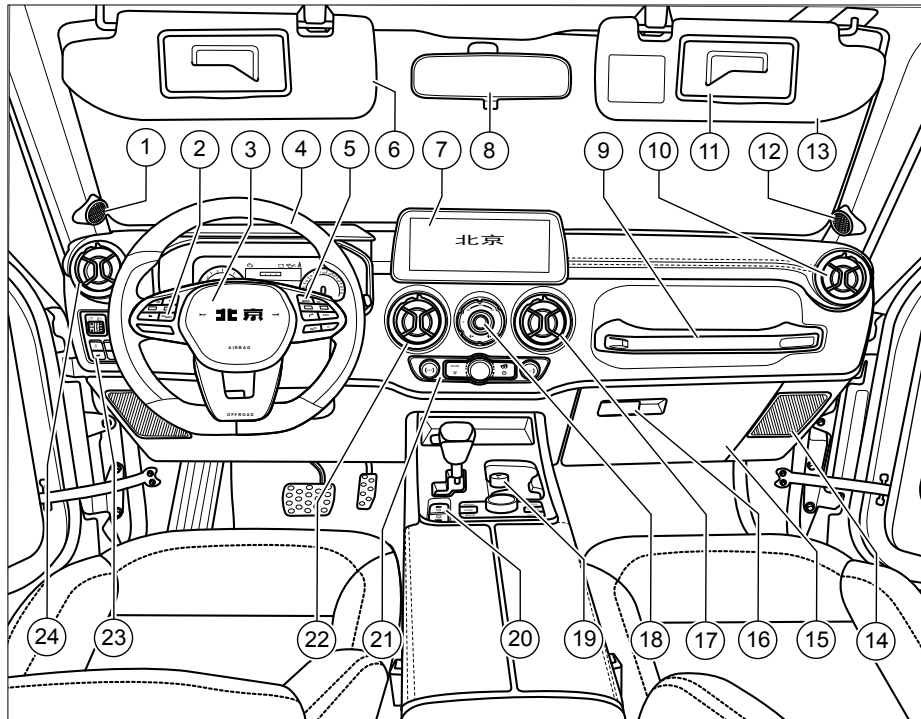
2. Operating system and equipment

Cabin	041
Start and stop the vehicle.....	086
A/C system.....	110
Car lights and visual field.....	120
Seats and storage facilities	132
Accessories and Modifications.....	147

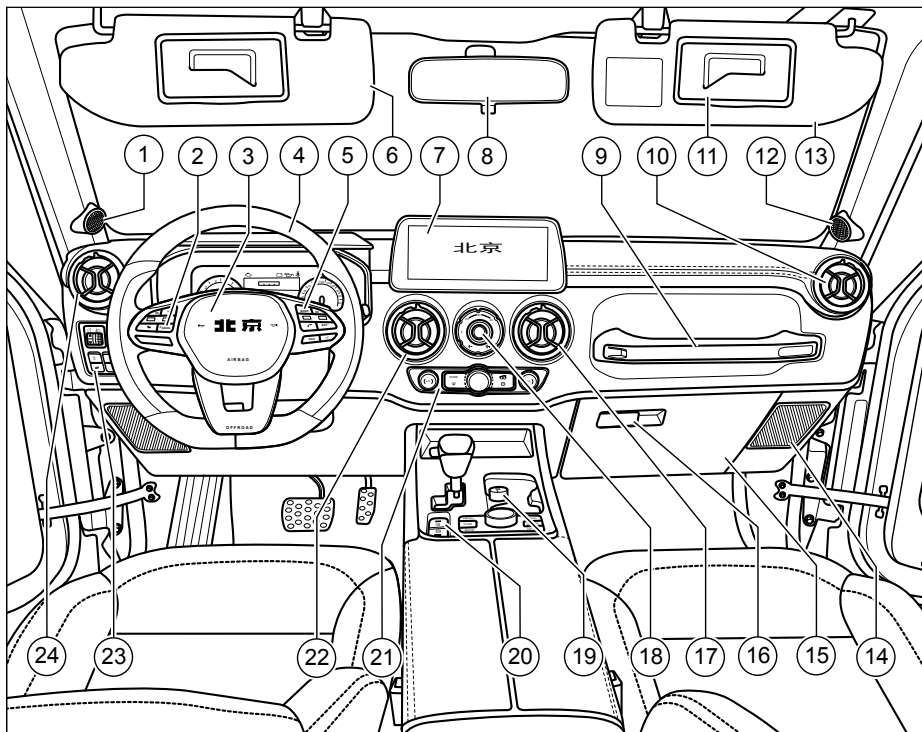
Note: The numerical values shown in the pictures of this chapter are examples but not represent the actual conditions of the vehicle

Cabin

General arrangement of instrument and operating mechanism (6AT gasoline model)

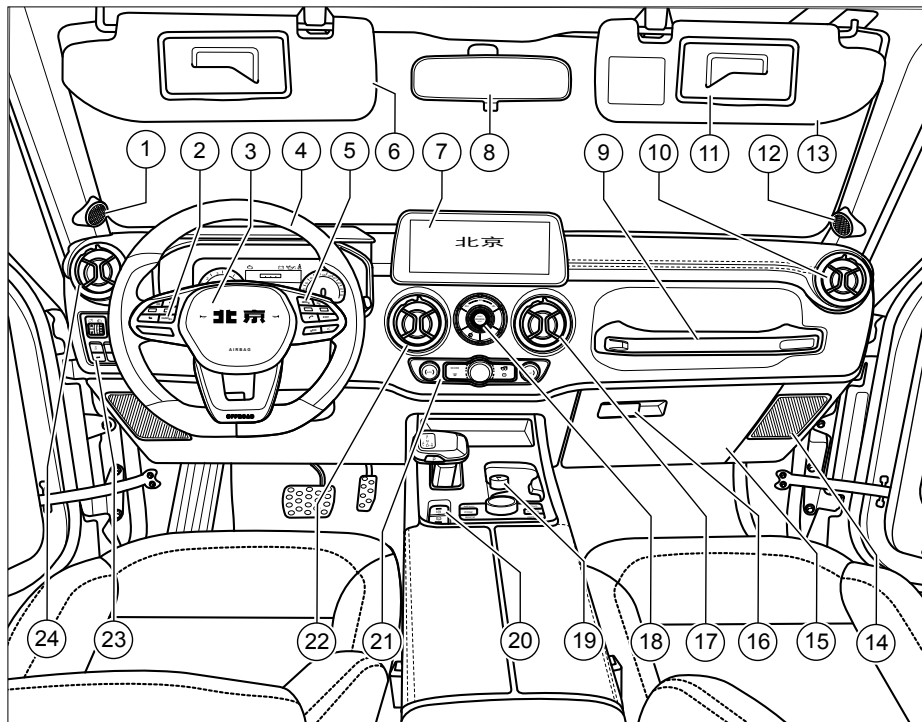


1. Left speaker
2. Left button of steering wheel
3. Horn
4. Right button of steering wheel
5. Right button of steering wheel
6. Driver's sunvisor
7. Central display
8. Interior rear-view mirror
9. front passenger handle
10. Right A/C air outlet
11. Sunvisor vanity mirror (front passenger side)
12. Right speaker (front passenger side)
13. Sunvisor,
14. Loudspeaker
15. Glove box

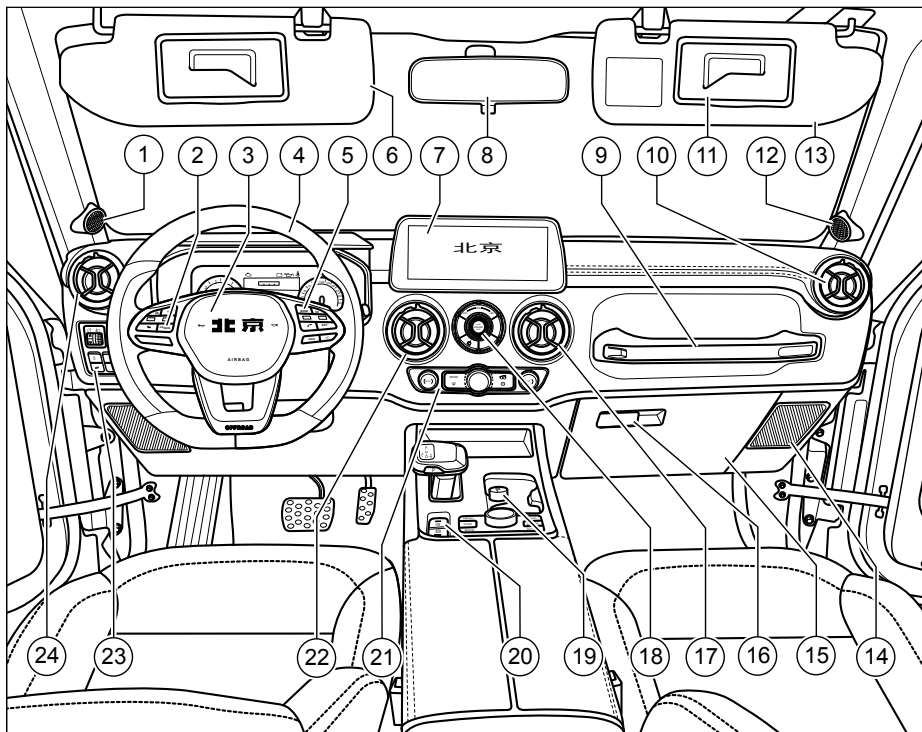


16. Glove box handle
17. Right A/C central air outlet
18. Start/stop button, transfer case switch
19. Cigar lighter
20. Electrical switch
21. A/C control panel
22. Left A/C central air outlet
23. Multi-function Switch group
24. Left A/C air outlet

General arrangement of instrument and operating mechanism (8AT gasoline model)

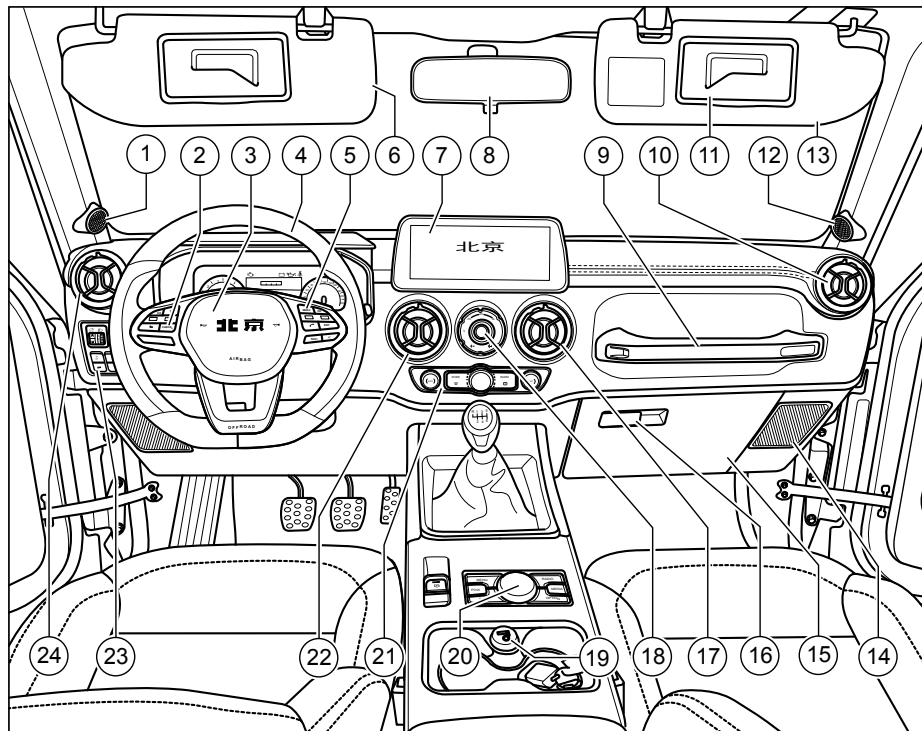


1. Left speaker
2. Left button of steering wheel
3. Horn
4. Right button of steering wheel
5. Driver's sunvisor
6. Central display
7. Interior rear-view mirror
8. front passenger handle
9. Right A/C air outlet
10. Sunvisor vanity mirror (front passenger side)
11. Right speaker
12. Sunvisor (front passenger side)
13. Speaker
14. Glove box
15. Left speaker
16. Left button of steering wheel
17. Horn
18. Right button of steering wheel
19. Driver's sunvisor
20. Central display
21. Interior rear-view mirror
22. front passenger handle
23. Right A/C air outlet
24. Sunvisor vanity mirror (front passenger side)

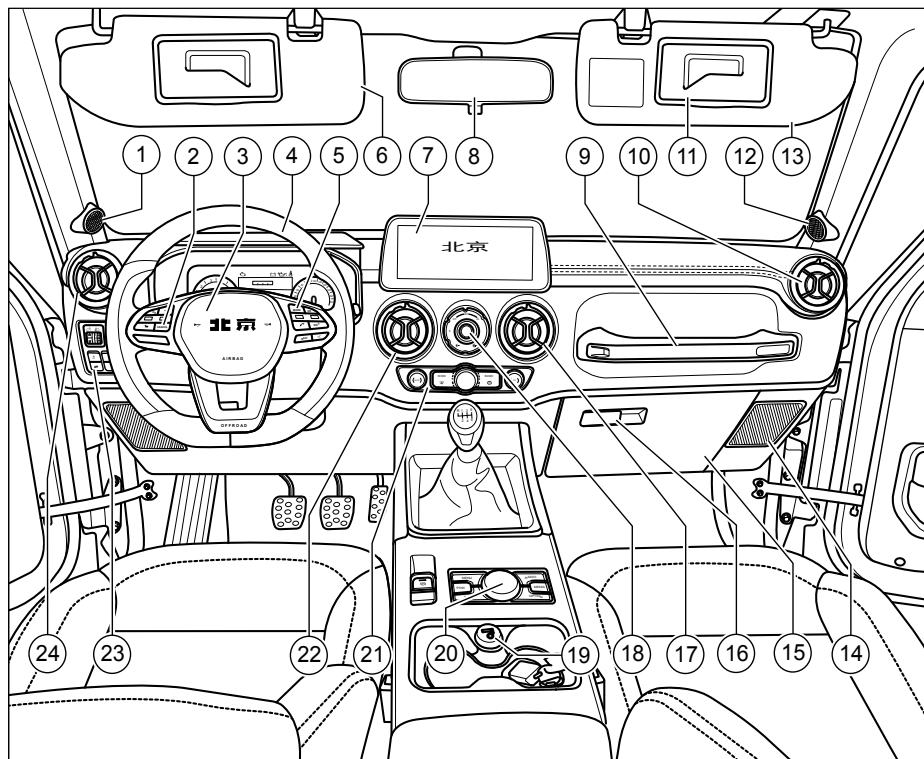


- 16. Glove box handle
- 17. Right A/C central air outlet
- 18. Start/stop button, transfer case switch
- 19. Cigar lighter
- 20. Electrical switch
- 21. A/C control panel
- 22. Left A/C central air outlet
- 23. Multi-function Switch group
- 24. Left A/C air outlet

General arrangement of instrument and operating mechanism (6MT diesel model)

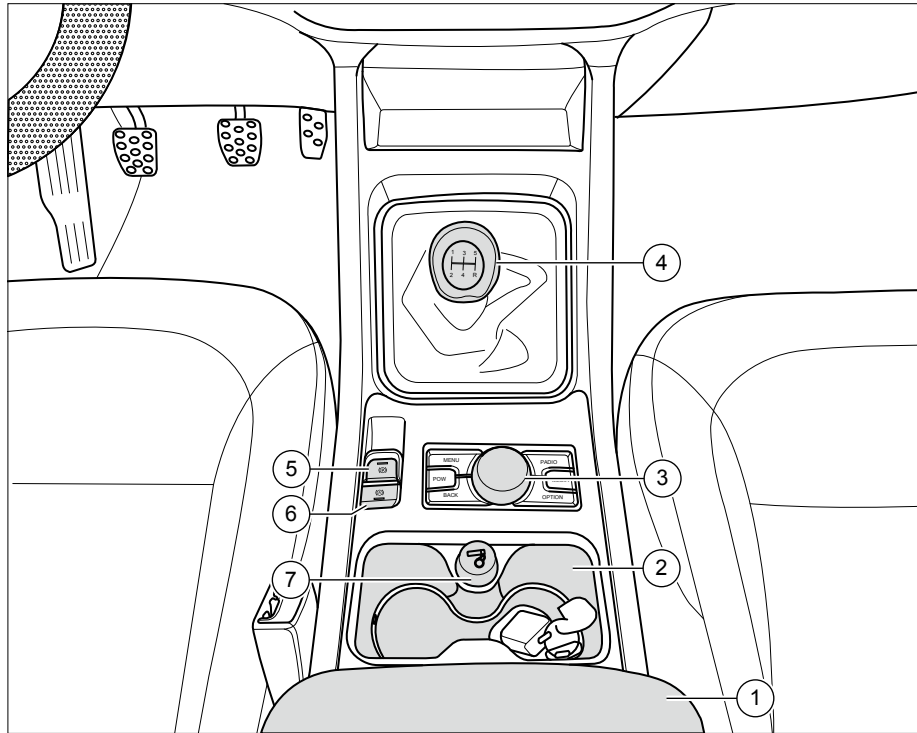


1. Left speaker
2. Left button of steering wheel
3. Horn
2. Left button of steering wheel
5. Right button of steering wheel
6. Driver's sunvisor
7. Central display
8. Interior rear-view mirror
9. front passenger handle
10. Right A/C air outlet
11. Sunvisor vanity mirror (front passenger side)
12. Right speaker
13. Sunvisor,
14. Loudspeaker
15. Glove box



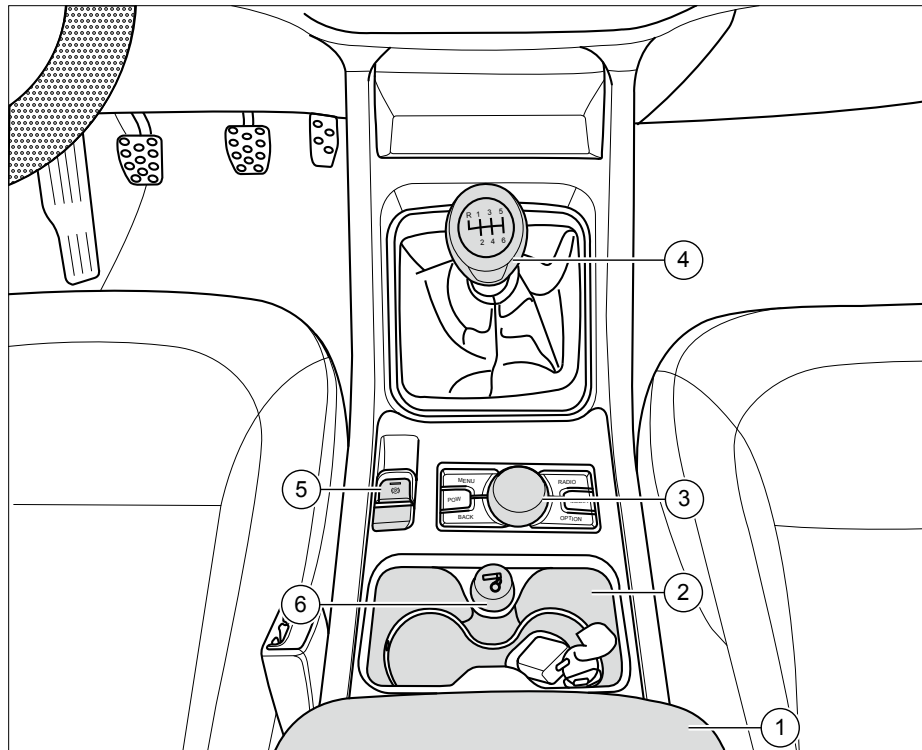
- 16. Glove box handle
- 17. Right A/C central air outlet
- 18. Start/stop button, transfer case switch
- 19. Cigar lighter
- 20. Electrical switch
- 21. A/C control panel
- 22. Left A/C central air outlet
- 23. Multi-function Switch group
- 24. Left A/C air outlet

Central channel layout (5MT gasoline vehicle)



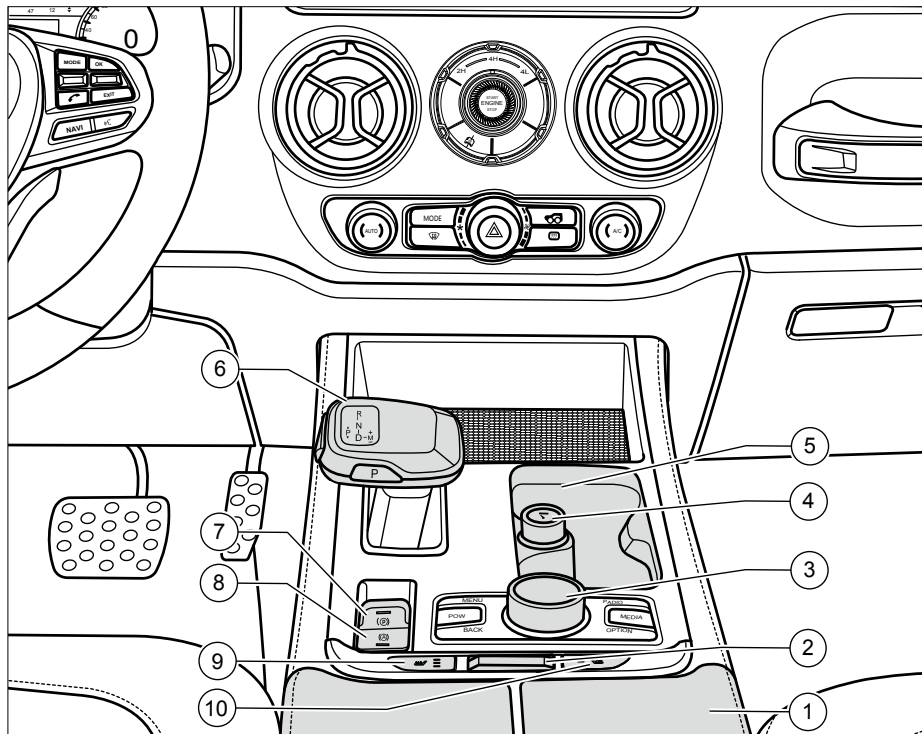
1. Front central armrest
2. Cup holder
3. Multi-function button
4. Transmission shift handle
5. Electronic parking brake button
6. AUTOHOLD Button*
7. Cigar lighter

Central channel layout (6MT diesel model)



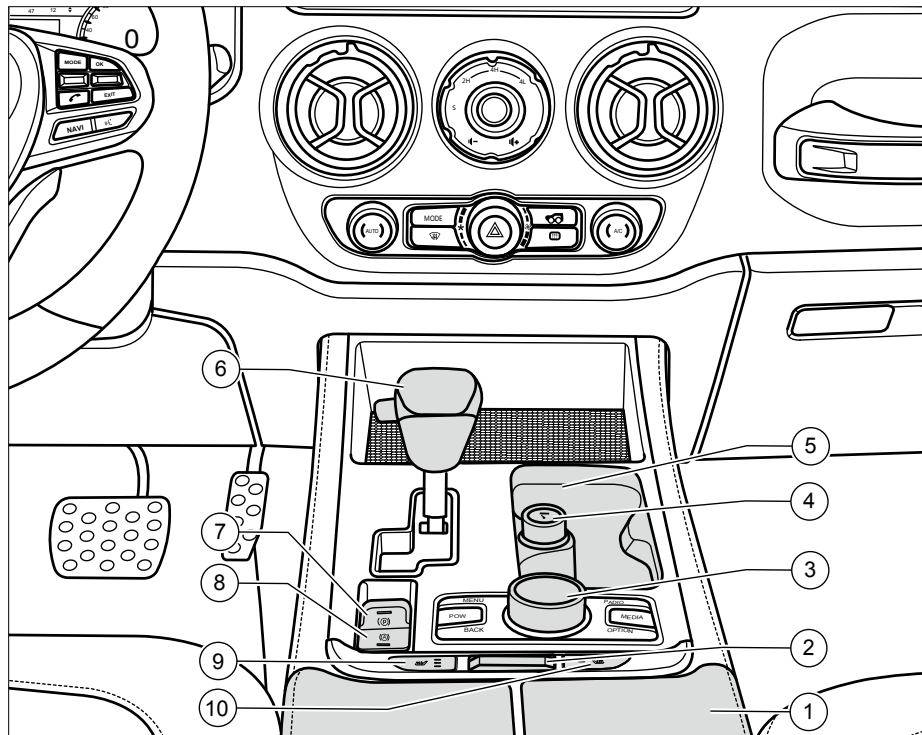
1. Front central armrest
2. Cup holder
3. Multi-function button
4. Transmission shift handle
5. Electronic parking brake button
6. Cigar lighter

Central channel layout (8AT gasoline vehicle)



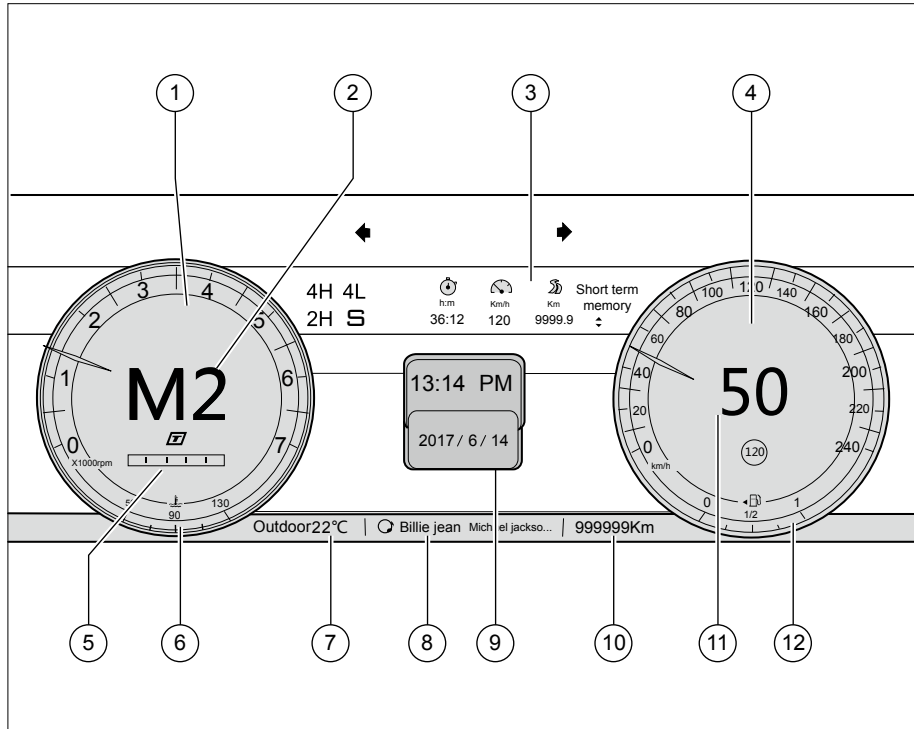
1. Front center armrest/storage box
2. Central storage box switch
3. Multi-function button
4. Cigar lighter
5. Cup holder
6. Transmission shift handle
7. Electronic parking brake button
8. AUTOHOLD Button
9. Driver's seat heating button
10. Front passenger's seat heating button

Central channel layout (6AT gasoline vehicle)



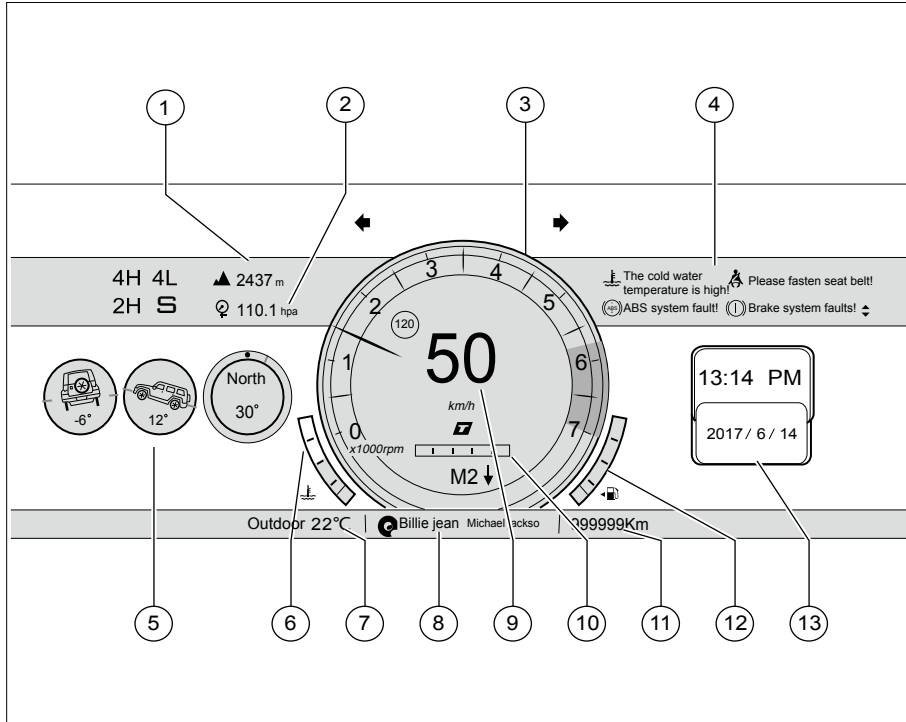
1. Front center armrest/storage box
2. Central storage box switch
3. Multi-function button
4. Cigar lighter
5. Cup holder
6. Transmission shift handle
7. Electronic parking brake button
8. AUTOHOLD Button
9. Driver's seat heating button
10. Front passenger's seat heating button

Combination instrument (gasoline model I)



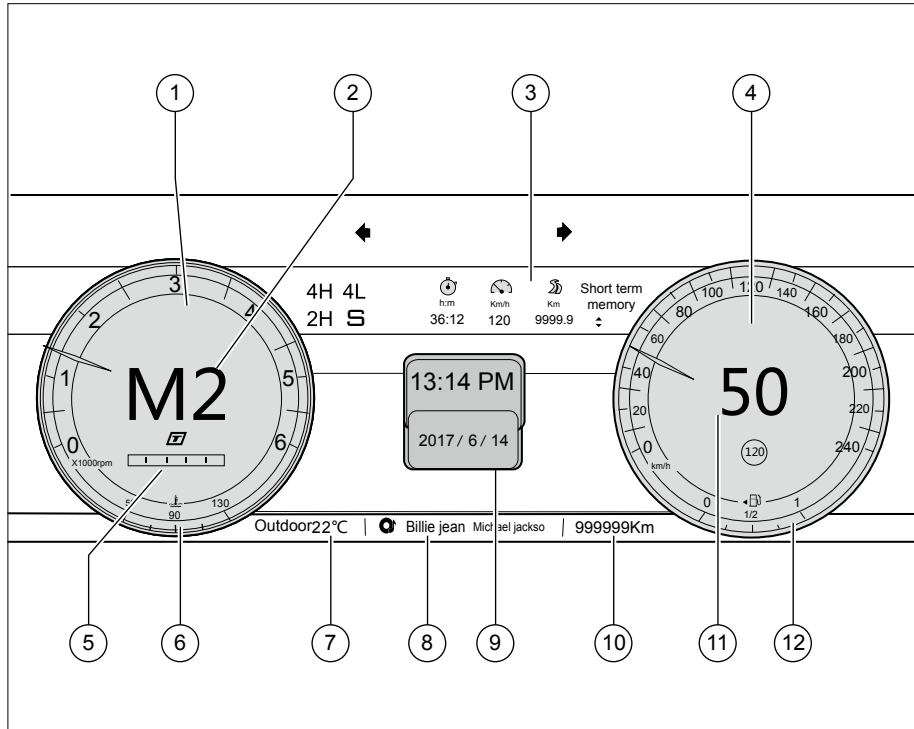
1. Tachometer
2. Shift position display
3. Trip computer: short-term memory, long-term memory, fuel consumption information, other information and system failure information
4. Speedometer
5. Turbine pressure
6. Engine coolant temperature gauge
7. outdoor temperature
8. Multimedia information
9. Information display center: calendar/ time, navigation (if any), tire pressure system (if any), front wheel steering (if any), off-road information, system settings, alarm and prompt information
10. Total mileage
11. Digital speed
12. Fuel gauge

Combination instrument (gasoline model II)



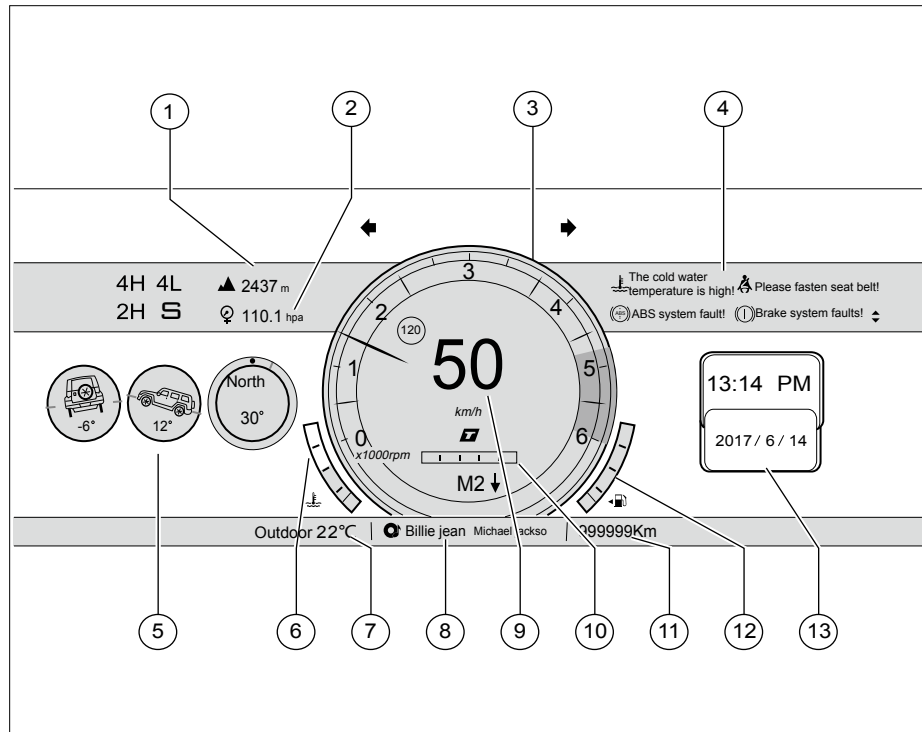
1. Relative height
2. Atmospheric pressure
3. Tachometer
4. Trip computer: short-term memory, long-term memory, fuel consumption information, other information and system failure information
5. Off-Road Information
6. Engine coolant temperature gauge
7. outdoor temperature
8. Multimedia information
9. Digital speed
10. Turbine pressure
11. Total mileage
12. Fuel gauge
13. Information display center: navigation (if any), tire pressure system (if any), front wheel steering (if any), system settings, alarm and prompt information

Combination instrument (diesel model mode I)



1. Tachometer
2. Shift position display
3. Trip computer: short-term memory, long-term memory, fuel consumption information, other information and system failure information
4. Speedometer
5. Turbine pressure
6. Engine coolant temperature gauge
7. outdoor temperature
8. Multimedia information
9. Information display center: calendar/time, navigation (if any), tire pressure system (if any), front wheel steering (if any), off-road information, system settings, alarm and prompt information
10. Total mileage
11. Digital speed
12. Fuel gauge

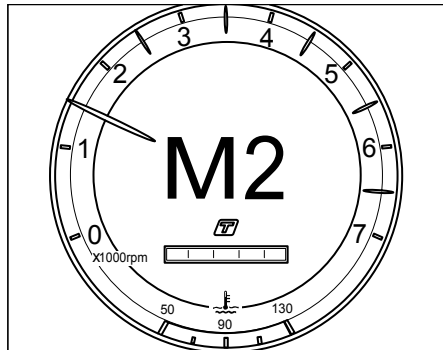
Combination instrument (diesel model mode II)



1. Relative height
2. Atmospheric pressure
3. Tachometer
4. Trip computer: short-term memory, long-term memory, fuel consumption information, other information and system failure information
5. Off-Road Information
6. Engine coolant temperature gauge
7. outdoor temperature
8. Multimedia information
9. Digital speed
10. Turbine pressure
11. Total mileage
12. Fuel gauge
13. Information display center: navigation (if any), tire pressure system (if any), front wheel steering (if any), system settings, alarm and prompt information

Engine tachometer (gasoline models)

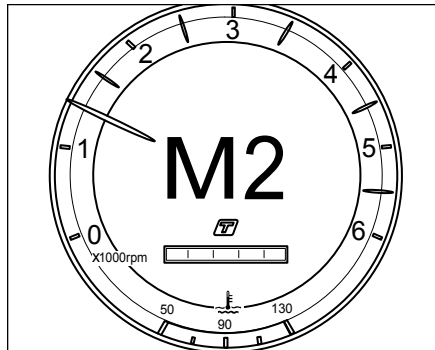
The engine tachometer indicates the revolutions per minute (rpm) of the engine.



The starting point of the red area on the dial indicates the maximum allowable speed of the engine. The engine must be run in normally and reach the normal operating temperature before it can run at this maximum speed for a short time.

Engine tachometer (diesel models)

The engine tachometer indicates the revolutions per minute (rpm) of the engine.



The starting point of the red area on the dial indicates the maximum allowable speed of the engine. The engine must be run in normally and reach the normal operating temperature before it can run at this maximum speed for a short time.

Attention

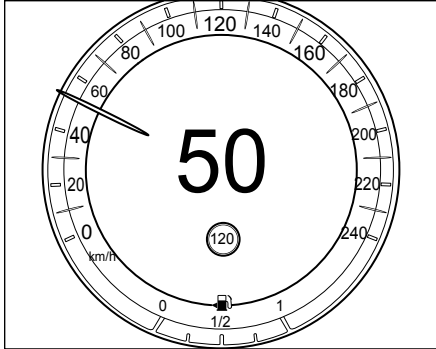
The engine can be severely damaged if the tachometer stays on the red zone.

Tip

Shifting into a higher gear timely helps save fuel and reduce the engine running noise.

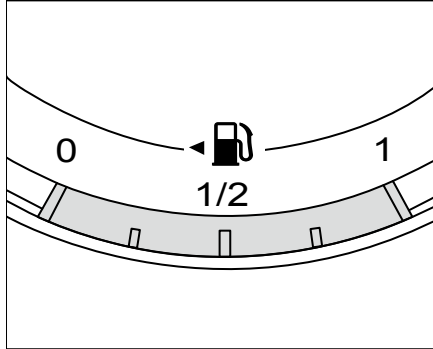
The recommended common working speed for manual transmission models is 1900-2500rpm.

Speedometer



The speedometer indicates the real-time speed of the vehicle in km/h.

Fuel gauge

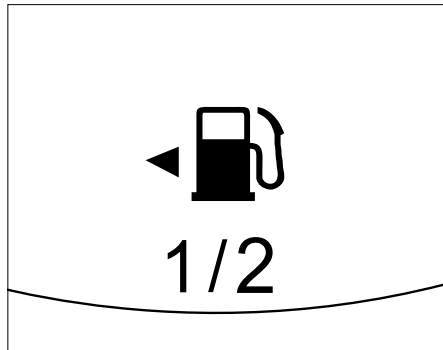


The fuel gauge is located under the speedometer. When button Start / Stop is in the 'RUN' position, the fuel gauge will indicate the amount of remaining fuel in the fuel tank, from '0' to '1' indicating that the fuel tank is empty to full. When the start/stop button is in the "OFF" position, the current remaining fuel level cannot be displayed.

When braking, accelerating, swerving or driving on a slope, the fuel in the fuel tank will shake, which will affect the accuracy of the fuel gauge displayed, and you shall stop your vehicle on a flat road to check the amount of fuel.

After filling the fuel, the fuel gauge can reflect the real fuel quantity only after the fuel level is stabilized for a period of time.

Fuel alarm light



The fuel warning light is located in the speedometer. When the remaining fuel in the fuel tank is too low, the warning light will illuminate, prompting the driver to add fuel immediately. In addition, an alarm message will appear in the information center display.

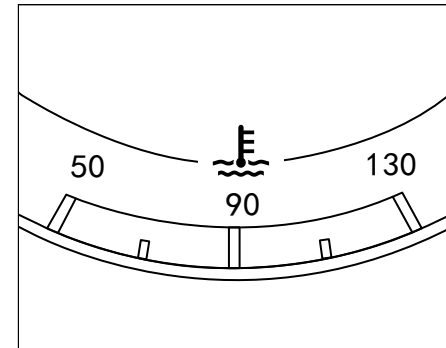
Tip

When driving on upward and downward slopes or on bumpy roads, the fuel level will be unstable, which may cause the fuel warning light to alarm. Please refer to the fuel level displayed in the stable state.

In case of any of the following conditions, please immediately send the car to the authorized dealer of BAIC for testing:

- The fuel warning light keeps flashing.
- When the vehicle is full of fuel, the fuel gauge shows insufficient fuel, and the fuel warning light lights and flashes.

Engine coolant thermometer



The gauge is located under the engine tachometer. When button Start / Stop is in the 'RUN' position, the engine coolant thermometer will display the temperature of coolant.

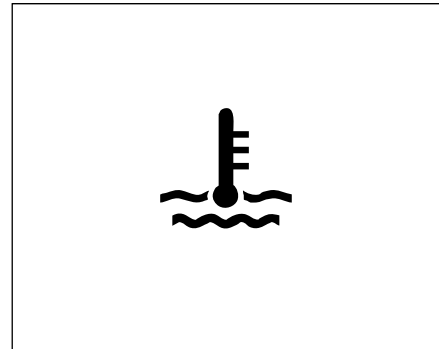
When driving under normal conditions, the scale bar of the thermometer will indicate that the temperature is generally somewhere in the middle position.

If the scale bar is inclined to the direction of '130' high temperature, it means that the temperature of coolant is too high, which may cause serious damage to the engine. If safety conditions permit, stop the vehicle immediately for inspection or seek help.

If the scale bar is deflected many times or stays in the high temperature range of water temperature gauge for a long time, the coolant warning light in the tachometer will be lit, you shall stop your vehicle at a proper place and turn off the engine as soon as possible to check the level of coolant and the coolant pipeline for leakage.

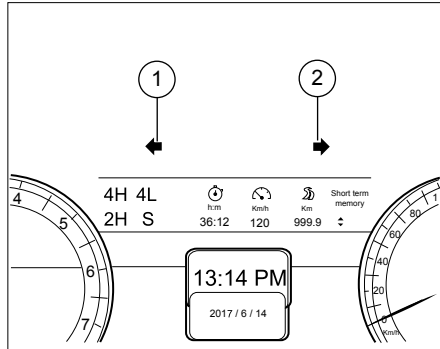
⚠ WARNING

Strictly forbidden to open the cap of coolant expansion tank when the engine is running. Since the high-pressure hot coolant and the steam will spray out, thus leading to a scald incident. Make sure that the engine is completely cooled before the coolant expansion tank is opened; wrap the cover of coolant expansion tank with a large thick cloth during operation to prevent the operator from being scalded by steam; and do not spill any fuel on engine parts or exhaust system when filling with fuel and coolant since a fire may take place and the glycol in engine coolant may be also ignited under certain conditions.

Engine coolant warning light

The engine coolant alarm light (red) is located in the engine tachometer. When the engine coolant temperature is too high, this alarm light lights up, the alarm interface pops up, and at the same time, it beeps 5 times. At this time, stop and extinguish the engine at a suitable position as soon as possible, and check the coolant level and whether there is leakage in the coolant pipeline.

Turn indicator-lh/rh

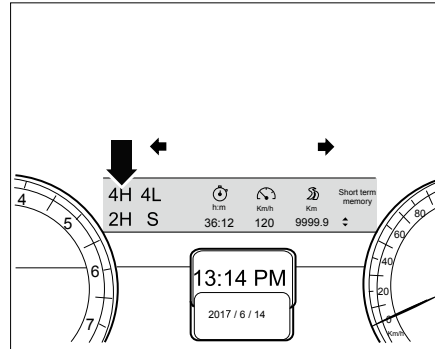


When the turn signal light is turned on by the light control lever, the indicator light-1-or-2-on the corresponding side of the instrument will flash and give a rhythmic prompt tone.

i Tip

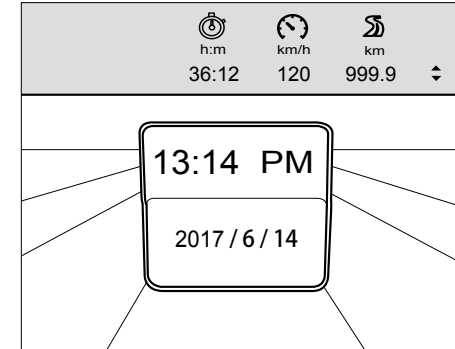
If the indicator light flashes faster than normal or stays on without flickering, check the relevant side turn signal bulb or its wiring for a fault.

Four-wheel drive status indicator



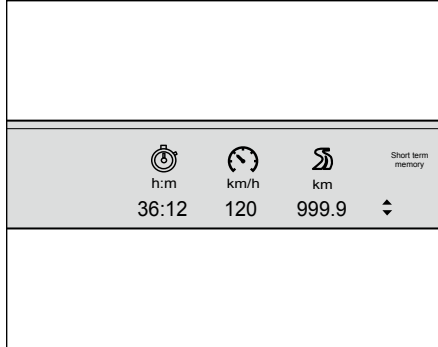
1. Four-wheel drive high-grade status indicator "4H": When this light is on, it means that the vehicle is in four-wheel drive high-grade use state.
2. Four-wheel drive low gear status indicator "4L": When this light is on, it means the vehicle is in four-wheel drive low gear.

Trip-computer



The information center is displayed on the trip computer, and short-term memory, long-term memory, other information, and fuel consumption display can be selected by short pressing the "UP"/"DOWN" button.

Information Center Display



Short-term memory and long-term memory information from left to right are driving time, average speed, and subtotal mileage. Short-term memory automatically resets to zero after the vehicle is turned off for more than 2 hours.

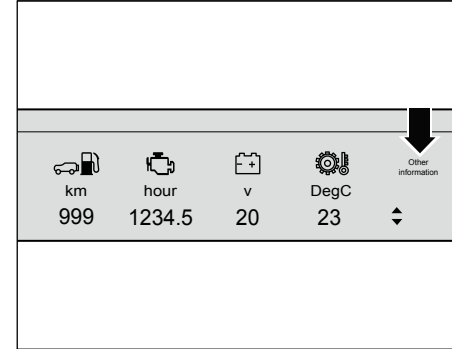
After the last short-term/long-term memory reset, the travel time starts to accumulate after the vehicle is powered on;

The average speed is calculated since the last short-term/long-term memory reset;

Subtotal driving kilometers accumulated since the last short-term / long-term memory is set to zero;

Short-term memory/long-term memory can be manually cleared by long pressing the BACK button.

Other information



Other information from left to right are driving mileage, engine working time display, transmission oil temperature display (if any) and vehicle voltage display.

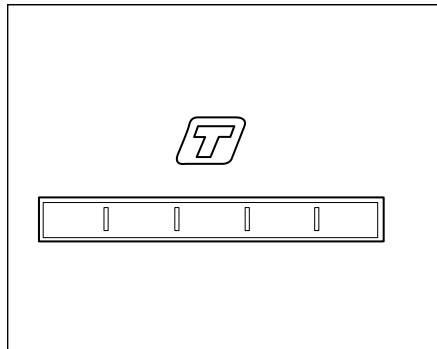
Cruising mileage: Displays the mileage (unit: km) that the vehicle can travel with the current fuel consumption. The data is updated in real time according to the average fuel consumption. During driving, if the average fuel consumption decreases, the remaining mileage will increase;

Engine working time: The accumulated time starts after the car engine is started, and can be reset in the following two ways: reset by long pressing the BACK button in the engine working time interface; disconnect the battery;

Transmission oil temperature (if any): Display the transmission oil temperature, Celsius display range: $-40^{\circ}\text{C}\sim 214^{\circ}\text{C}$;

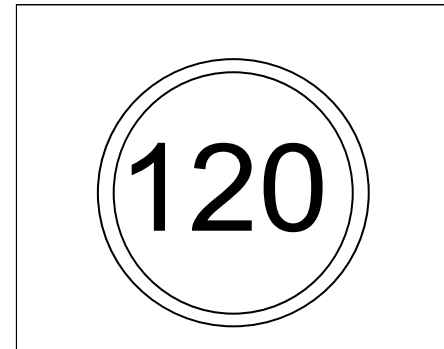
Vehicle voltage: Display the vehicle voltage, the display range is $0\sim 20\text{V}$ (for reference only).

Turbo pressure display



The working degree of the turbocharger is indicated by a progress bar, and the driver can know the current working pressure of the turbocharger under this interface.

Over-speed alarm



The user sets the alarming speed in the menu and displays the alarm when the speed exceeds the set alarm speed.

Fuel consumption display

Fuel consumption information includes instantaneous fuel consumption and average fuel consumption. Instantaneous fuel consumption is divided into idle instantaneous fuel consumption and driving instantaneous fuel consumption. When the engine does not start (RUN gear) and there is no fuel injection output, the instantaneous fuel consumption displays "-.L/h".

Instantaneous fuel consumption at idle speed:

The display range of instantaneous fuel consumption during idle speed is: 0.0 ~ 99.9 L/h;

Instantaneous fuel consumption:

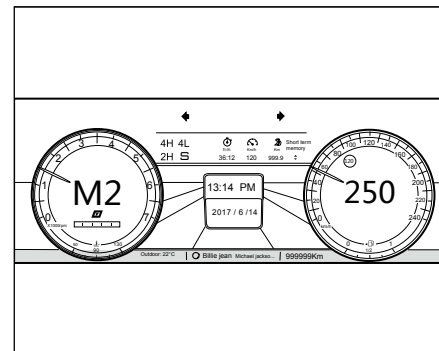
The display range of instantaneous fuel consumption during driving is 0 ~ 30.0 l/100km.

Average fuel consumption:

Displays the average fuel consumption of the vehicle during driving, ranging from 0 to 30.0 l/100km.

Instantaneous fuel consumption: 10.3L/100km	Fuel consumption information Driving ▼
Average fuel consumption: 12.5L/100km	

Trip computer information below



From left to right are the outdoor temperature display, multimedia information, and accumulated mileage.

Outdoor temperature display:

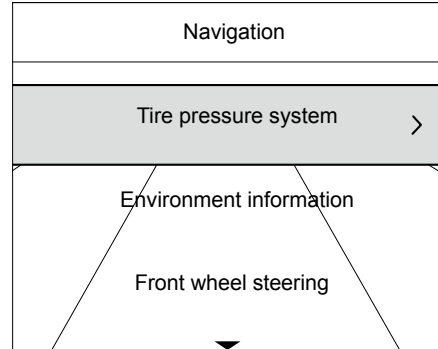
When the vehicle is normal, the current temperature outside the vehicle is displayed in this area. The data comes from the temperature sensor outside the vehicle. The displayed temperature is the ambient temperature around the temperature sensor, not the human body temperature;

Multimedia information:

Including music song name display, AM/FM band display and phone information display.

Accumulated mileage display:

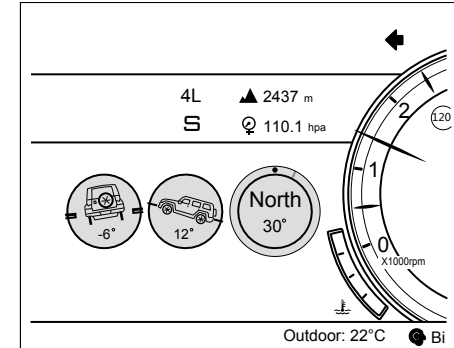
Record and display the accumulated mileage of the complete vehicle. This mileage cannot be reset.

Information Display Center

The information display center interface displays the time and calendar after ignition, enters the "menu bar" by pressing the "OK" button briefly, selects by pressing the "UP"/"DOWN" button briefly, enters the corresponding driving computer interface by pressing the "OK" button briefly, and calls up the "menu bar" by pressing the "OK" button again, the details are as follows:

- Navigation interface * (if equipped)
- Tire pressure system interface * (if equipped)
- Environment information interface

- Front wheel steering interface * (if equipped)
- System setting interface

Information Display Center**1. Gradiometer**

The display range is: pitch angle 40°, tilt angle 60°.

i Tip

The slope display is based on the acceleration sensor signal conversion. The deviation is large during the movement. Please refer to the displayed value when the vehicle is stationary. It is for reference only.

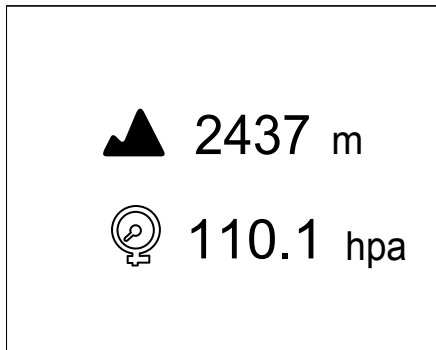
i Tip

The geomagnetic principle compass is greatly affected by a magnetic field. If it passes through areas with complex magnetic fields or considerable electromagnetic interference, the direction indicated by the compass will be inaccurate. After the magnetic field is stable, it is necessary to re-calibrate the compass.

2. Compass

Display the direction of the front. The electronic compass used in this vehicle is based on the principle of geomagnetic positioning and can vaguely indicate eight directions. The display directions include: North, northeast, East, Southeast, South, southwest, West and northwest, and the bearing range is 0-359 °.

Environment information interface



1. Atmospheric pressure

The environment information interface displays the atmospheric pressure of the current vehicle position.

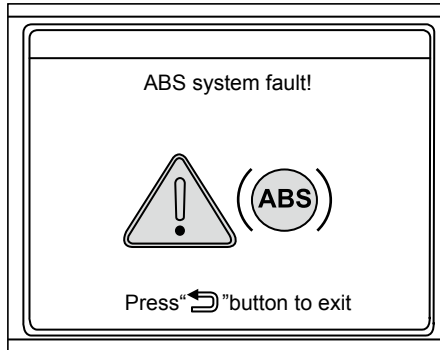
2. Relative height

The altitude reference value converted from the difference between the atmospheric pressure detected in real time at the position of the vehicle instrument and the standard atmospheric pressure.

i Tip

Since the real-time atmospheric pressure is strongly related to the changes of environmental factors such as air temperature and wind speed, the relative altitude value is not recommended for altitude measurement. It is only used to display the real-time relative height change during vehicle driving.

Vehicle alarm information interface

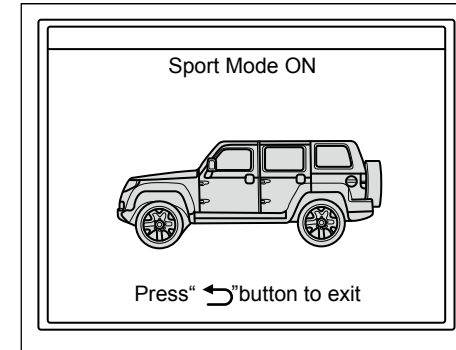


The figure shows an example of the ABS system fault alarm interface. In addition to this interface, the following faults will be alarmed:

- Left turning signal light failure
- Right turning light fault
- Left low beam light fault
- Right low beam light fault
- Fuel sensor fault
- Airbag fault
- Brake fluid level low (-)
- Low oil pressure
- The water temperature of the engine is too high.
- Engine knock caused by oil problem*
- Transmission fault *
- Limited transmission function*
- ABS system fault
- Brake system fault
- ESP system fault *
- Downhill assist system fault*
- Automatic parking system fault
- Please fasten the driver's seat belt to release the electronic handbrake
- Please step on the brake pedal to release the electronic handbrake
- EPB system fault
- Driving recorder failure *
- Driving recorder SD is not inserted, please insert SD card *
- SD card failure, please replace SD card *
- SD card is not formatted, please format SD card *
- Please view parking surveillance video *
- The photo storage folder is full, please delete the photo *
- The emergency video recording space of driving recorder is full, please clean it up! *
- Rapid tire leakage *
- High tire temperature *
- Tire high pressure *
- Low tire pressure *
- Tire pressure sensor missing*
- Tire pressure sensor failure*
- Tire pressure system failure*
- One-button startup system failure
- No smart remote key found
- Please press the brake to start
- Please switch to P/N gear to start
- Please step on the clutch to start
- Please switch to P gear and stop

- The key is forgotten in the car
- The key in the car leaves
- Low key power
- Engine immobilizer authentication failed
- Electric steering column not unlocked
- Steering failure, please stop
- Steering column failure, please repair
- Please turn the steering wheel
- Parking assist system failure
- Please pay attention to the throttle and clutch coordination under hill-start condition *
- Engine system failure, please go to the repair shop immediately *
- A lot of carbon is accumulated in the GPF, 80-100 km/h high-speed driving is required to help the GPF regenerate*
- Too much carbon is accumulated in GPF, please go to the repair shop immediately*
- The current slope is large, parking is dangerous! *
- Transmission fluid temperature too high *
- The transmission parking lock has failed! *
- When the transmission is in D gear, the vehicle limps! *
- When the transmission is in P gear, the vehicle limps! *
- The transmission is in N, please shift to P! *
- When in gear, please step on the brakes! *
- Shifter fault! *
- Powertrain failure! *
- Please stop and shift to P again! *
- When the driver leaves, please turn the control lever from the engaged position to the neutral position first! *
- The vehicle speed is too high to shift! *
- Please move the shift lever back to the left! *

Prompt information interface



The above figure is an example of the prompt interface for opening the sports mode. In addition to this interface, the following contents will be prompted:

Door opening status display (left front door, right front door, left rear door, right rear door, tailgate)

Seat belt status (primary driver, front passenger)

Backlight brightness adjustment Tips

Please fill fuel

Distance to next maintenance (500 / 200 / 100km)

Please maintain it immediately

Please turn off the small light

The speed has exceeded xxxkm/h

The speed has exceeded 120km/h*

Vehicle Stability System OFF/Vehicle Stability and Traction Torque Control System OFF/Vehicle Stability and Traction Control System OFF. *

4H/4L interface

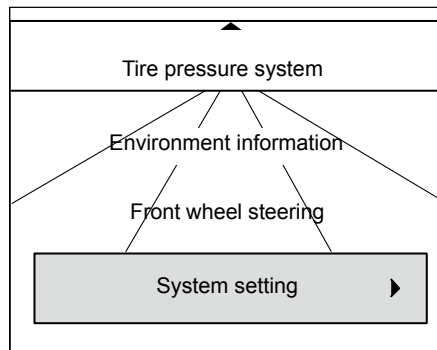
Snow Mode/Sport Mode/ECO Mode/Comfort Mode*



After the fault prompt interface appears, it is recommended to go to the nearest authorized dealer of BAIC for inspection and maintenance immediately.

Information Center System Settings

System setting interface

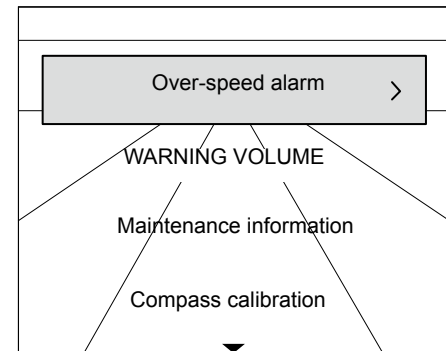


Through the menu, enter the system settings page.

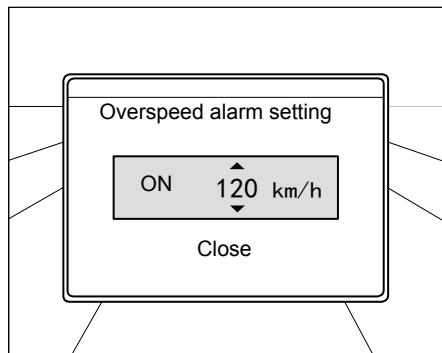
Short press the "OK" button to enter the system setting interface, short press the "UP"/"DOWN" to select the corresponding setting item up and down, and short press the "OK" button to enter the corresponding setting item.

System settings include the following settings:

Over-speed alarm

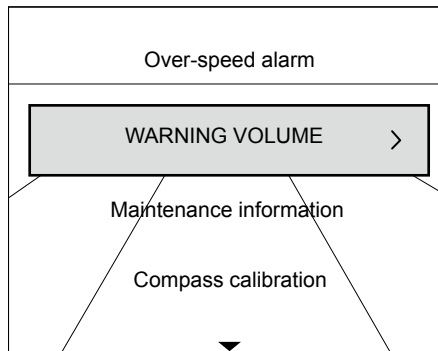


1. Enter the Overspeed alarm setting interface through the menu, short press the "OK" button to enter the vehicle speed value setting, and short press the "OK" or "BACK" button to return to the previous menu, if you want to disable this function, after entering the Overspeed alarm setting interface, short press "UP"/"DOWN" button, select "Close" item, press "OK" button, then the interface will return to the previous menu;

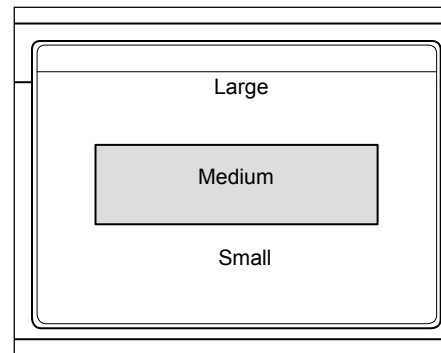


2. The default value of overspeed alarm is 30km/h, and the setting range is 30-200km/h;
3. The speed of pressing "UP" and "DOWN" buttons for a short time increases or decreases according to the step value of 5.

WARNING VOLUME

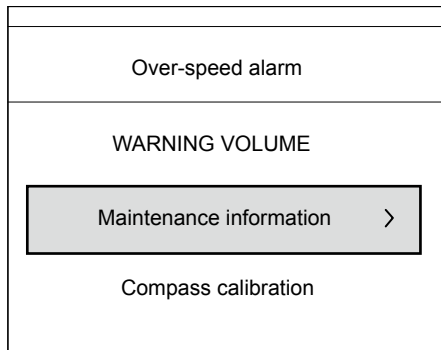


Enter the alarm volume setting page by the menu.

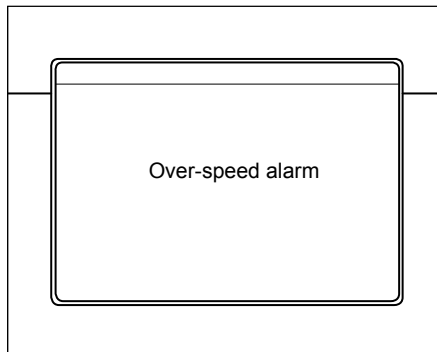


Enter the alarm volume setting interface through the menu, select up and down by pressing the "UP"/"DOWN" button, and confirm by pressing the "OK" button.

Maintenance information



Enter the maintenance information inquiry page by the menu.

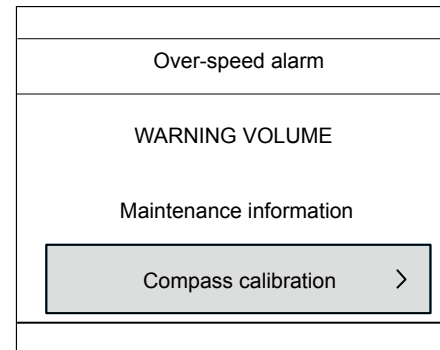


After entering the maintenance information inquiry interface by the menu, return to the previous menu by short pressing the "OK/BACK" button.

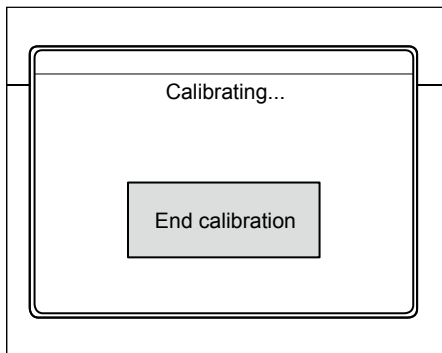
i Tip

The maintenance mileage of the complete vehicle can be reset by the after-sales diagnostic instrument.

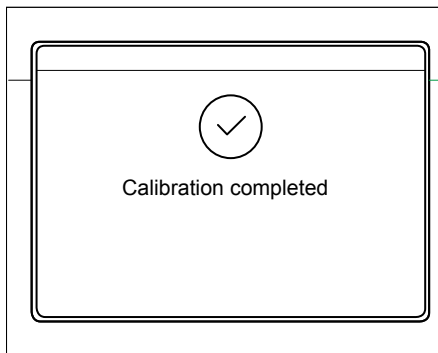
Compass calibration



Enter the compass calibration page by the menu.

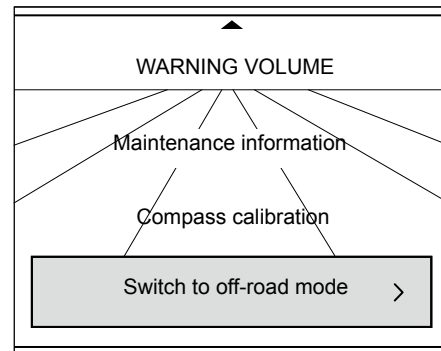


1. After entering the compass calibration page through the menu, start the calibration immediately. If the user needs to cancel the compass calibration or has not completed the compass calibration, who can actively end the compass calibration by short pressing the "ok/back" button.



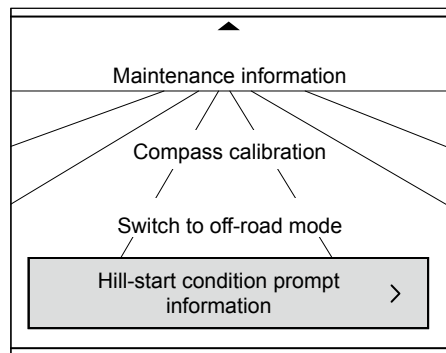
2. The driver shall drive the car slowly on the flat ground to drive the "circle" route clockwise or anticlockwise. When the compass calibration is completed, the instrument will display the "calibration completed" interface.

Mode switch

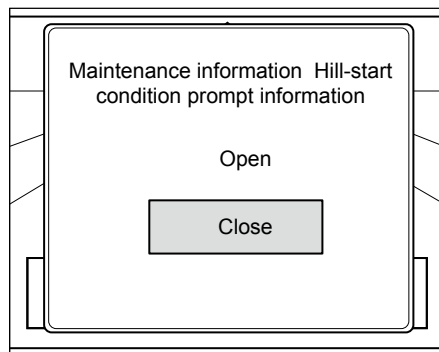


Short press "OK" to switch between "city mode" and "off-road mode", and short press "back" to return to the previous menu.

Setting of prompt information for hill-start conditions *

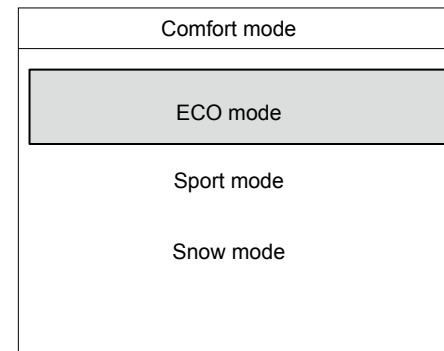


Enter the setting page of the prompt information of the hill-start condition by the menu.



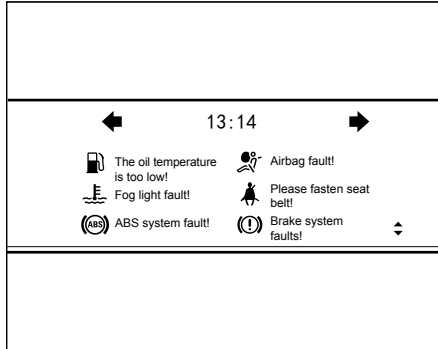
Enter the prompt information setting interface for hill-start conditions by the menu, select up and down by short pressing the "UP"/"DOWN" button, and confirm by pressing the "OK" button to turn on/off the setting prompt information.

Drive mode setting*

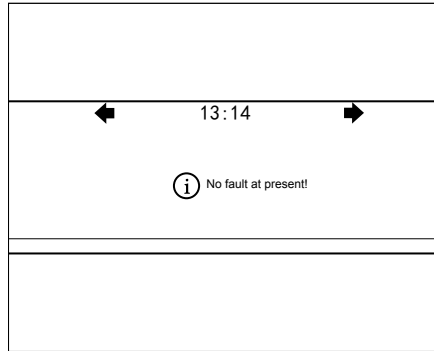


Press the driving mode setting button to enter the driving mode setting interface, short press the "driving mode setting" button to select clockwise, and stay on the currently selected driving mode for 2 seconds, the setting is successful and exit the setting interface.

Current fault query

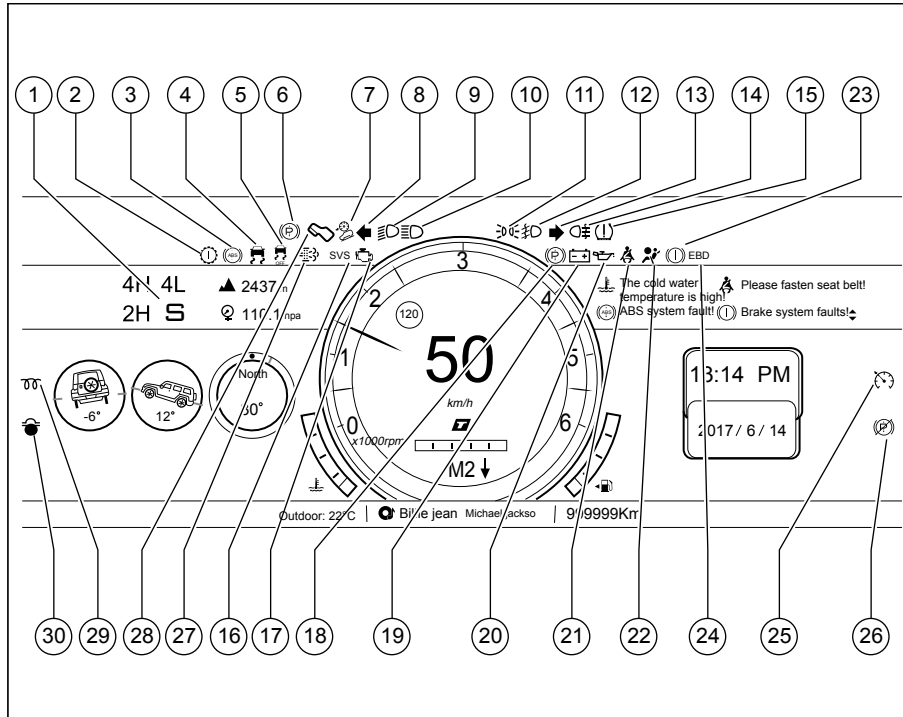


Press and hold the "DOWN" button on the first-level interface to pull down the "current fault query interface".



1. After entering the current fault query interface, the current faults of the complete vehicle will be displayed in the form of a list. Press and hold the "UP" button to return to the "current fault query interface";
2. When there are many faults, you can switch between the upper and lower pages by short pressing the "UP"/"DOWN" button;
3. When there is no fault in the complete vehicle, the message "No fault at present" will be displayed.

Warning indicator



1. 4H (four-wheel drive high gear)/4L (four-wheel low gear), snow mode/sport mode/ECO mode indicator*
2. Transmission fault indicator light*
3. ABS system fault indicator light
4. ESP working indicator light *
5. ESP OFF indicator light *
6. Autohold system working indicator light*
7. Downhill assist work/fault indicator light*
8. Left turn signal indicator light
9. Low beam light indicator light
10. High-beam light indicator light
11. Position light indicator light
12. Front fog light indicator
13. Right turn signal indicator light
14. Rear fog light indicator light.
15. Tire pressure alarm indicator light
16. Engine electronic fault indicator light


17. Engine emission fault indicator light
18. EPB parking brake indicator light
19. Battery charging indicator light
20. Low oil pressure indicator light
21. Seat belt reminder indicator light
22. Airbag fault indicator light
23. Low brake fluid level indicator light
24. Brake system fault indicator light
25. Cruise control indicator light*
26. EPB system fault indicator light
27. DPF (diesel particulate filter) indicator light*
28. Press the brake pedal to release the EPB indicator light
29. Preheating indicator light *
30. Oil-water separation indicator light

1. 4H (four-wheel drive high gear)/4L (four-wheel low gear), snow mode/sport mode indicator light*


When the 4WD high gear status indicator light 4H is on, it indicates that the vehicle is in the four-wheel drive high gear driving status.

When the 4WD low gear status indicator light 4L is on, it indicates that the vehicle is in the 4WD low gear driving status.

When the sport mode indicator light is on, the vehicle is in sport mode.

When the snow mode indicator light  is on, it indicates that the vehicle is in snow mode.

When the ECO mode indicator light is on, it indicates that the vehicle is in ECO mode.

2. Automatic transmission fault indicator light  (yellow)*

When the automatic transmission fault indicator light is on, it indicates that there is a fault in the automatic transmission system. Please park your car in a safe place immediately and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC.


3. ABS system warning light  (yellow)

When the ABS system fails, the light is on; When the start / stop button is in the "run" position (the engine is not started), the light will be on for a few seconds and then off during the vehicle self-test.

Make sure that the light is off before the vehicle is driven.


WARNING

- **If the warning light is on during driving, under the condition of ensuring safety, you can drive to the destination, but the vehicle shall be sent to the special dealer of BAIC for inspection as soon as possible.**
- **If the brake fault indicator lights up simultaneously, stop immediately while ensuring safety, and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC.**

4. ESP working indicator light  (yellow)


When the ESP working indicator light flashes rapidly, it indicates that the vehicle ESP system is in working state. When the start / stop button is in the "run" position (the engine is not started), the light will be on for a few seconds and then off during the vehicle self-test. When the ESP indicator light is on continuously, it indicates that

there is a fault in the system. You must go to the nearest authorized dealer of BAIC for maintenance as soon as possible.


5. ESP OFF indicator light OFF  (yellow)
*

When the start / stop button is in the "run" position (the engine is not started) , the Indicator light will be on for a few seconds and then off during the vehicle self-test.

When the transfer case is 2H: when the ESP function is turned off, the indicator light is on; Transfer case 4h/4l: The indicator light lights up by itself;

6. Autohold system working indicator light  (Green) *

When the automatic parking function is turned on, stop while driving (for example, when encountering a red light), after the driver steps on the brake to stop, AUTOHOLD will automatically brake the car, and the brake state will be automatically released by tapping the accelerator when starting.

7. Downhill assist work/fault indicator light  (green)*


When the start/stop button is in the "RUN" position (the engine is not started), the light will come on for a few seconds and then go off; When the HDC switch is pressed, the HDC light will be on continuously; When the HDC indicator light flashes, it indicates that the HDC function of the vehicle is in working state; When the HDC switch is pressed, the HDC light is not on, indicating that there is a fault in this system. Please go to the nearest authorized dealer of BAIC for maintenance as soon as possible.

8. Left turn signal indicator light  (green)


When the left turn signal light is turned on by the light control lever, the indicator light on the corresponding side of the instrument will flash and a rhythmic beep will sound.

9. Low beam indicator light  (green)


After the low beam light of headlight is on, the indicator light is on.

10. High-beam status indicator light  (Blue)


When the high beam of the headlights is turned on, the indicator lights up.

11. Position light indicator light  (green)


When the light knob is turned to the width light, the indicator light will be on.

12. front fog light status indicator light  (green)


When the front fog light is turned on, the indicator light is on.

13. Right turn signal indicator light  (green)

When the left turn signal light is turned on by the light control lever, the indicator light on the corresponding side of the instrument will flash and a rhythmic beep will sound.

14. Rear fog light status indicator light  (yellow)

When the rear fog light is turned on, the indicator light is on.

15. tire pressure alarm indicator light  (yellow)*

When the tire pressure warning indicator light is on, it indicates that there is a fault in the tire pressure system of the vehicle. When the start / stop button is in the "run" position (the engine is not started), the light will be on for a few seconds and then off during the vehicle self-test. If the warning light stays on or turns on when the vehicle is driving, please park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC.

16. Engine electronic fault warning light (yellow)

When the engine is started or the light remains on for several seconds during driving, it indicates that there is a fault in the system, but the vehicle can still drive normally. Please go to the authorized dealer of BAIC for detection and troubleshooting as soon as possible.

WARNING

- **In case of engine related problems, please stop as soon as possible and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC under the condition of ensuring safety.**
- **If no measures are taken, serious driving performance problems will occur.**

17. Engine emission fault indicator light (yellow)

This light lights up when the engine emission control system is unstable and the start/stop button is in the "RUN" position (the engine is not started). The light should go out after the engine is started. If the warning light still lights up after starting the engine, or lights up or flashes during driving, it indicates that the relevant parts of

the engine control system are faulty. At this time, the vehicle can still be driven, but you must go to the nearest authorized dealer of BAIC for maintenance as soon as possible.

WARNING

- **In case of engine related problems, please stop as soon as possible and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC under the condition of ensuring safety.**
- **If no measures are taken, serious driving performance problems will occur.**

18. EPB parking brake Indicator light (Red)

When the electronic parking brake button is pressed, the indicator light lights up.

If the indicator light is still on after the electronic parking brake button is pressed, it may be a brake system failure, you must go to the nearest authorized dealer of BAIC for maintenance as soon as possible.

19. Battery charging warning light (red)

When there is a problem with the battery system and the start/stop button is in the "RUN" position (the engine is not started), the battery charge warning light lights up and should go out after the engine starts. If the warning light does not go out, please go to the nearest authorized dealer of BAIC for maintenance as soon as possible.

20. Low oil pressure indicator (red)


When the engine oil pressure is lower than the normal value and the start / stop button is in the "RUN" position, the warning light will be on. The engine should turn off after starting. If the warning light stays on or turns on when the vehicle is driving, please park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC, and turn off the engine. Do not start the engine until the engine oil pressure is restored.

 Attention

When the engine oil pressure indicator light of 4G20T13 gasoline engine is in the "RUN" position, the warning light does not light up. If the engine speed is > 1500rpm and the warning light is on after the engine is started or while the vehicle is running, please stop the vehicle in a safe place and stop the engine immediately. Do not start the engine until the engine oil pressure is restored.

 WARNING


- If the warning light is on during driving, stop the vehicle immediately and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC under the condition of ensuring safety.
- If no measures are taken, serious driving performance problems will occur.

21. Seat belt unbelt warning light  (red)

When the start/stop button is located in the "RUN" position, if the driver and front passengers are not wearing seat belts, the warning light will light up, and after driving for some time, an alarm sound will be triggered. The driver and front passengers wear safety belts, that is, after the safety belt locking bolt is buckled into the safety belt locking buckle, the warning light will go out.

 Tip

If the driver has correctly worn the safety belt, but the warning light is on during driving, he/she should contact the authorized dealer of BAIC Motor under the condition of ensuring safety.

22. Airbag fault indicator light  (Red)

When the start / stop button is in the "RUN" position (the engine is not started), the warning light flashes for several seconds and then goes out. If it flashes continuously or stays on for several seconds, it indicates that there is a fault in the airbag system. At this time, please go to the special dealer of BAIC for inspection as soon as possible.

 WARNING

- If the fault **WARNING** light is on, the airbag system cannot be guaranteed to be in normal state.
- It should be immediately sent to the authorized dealer of BAIC for inspection and maintenance.

23. low brake fluid level indicator light (🚫) (red)

When the brake fluid level of the vehicle is lower than the specified level, the light is on. The parking brake shall be fully released before the vehicle is driven, and the brake system status and fault warning light shall be OFF.

If the light is on when the vehicle is driving, it means that the braking efficiency is reduced. At this time, park the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible and contact the special dealer.

WARNING

- **If the warning light is on during driving, stop the vehicle immediately and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC under the condition of ensuring safety.**
- **If no measures are taken, serious driving performance problems will occur, and even the risk of accidents.**

Tip

If the brake system status and fault warning light are on during driving, please park the vehicle in a safe place according to the following steps:

- **If the braking effect is not obvious when pressing the brake pedal, apply more force to continue.**
- **If the braking effect is still not obvious, lower the transmission gear, release the parking brake and press the brake pedal at the same time.**

24. Brake system fault indicator light ^{EBD} (red)

At this time, park the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible and contact the special dealer of BAIC. At this time, the vehicle can still be braked by the conventional braking method,

but the ABS and EBD systems do not work. Please contact the special dealer of BAIC for maintenance as soon as possible.

25. Cruise control indicator (🚦) (green)*

When the indicator is on, it indicates that the vehicle is in constant speed cruise.


26. EPB fault indicator light (🚫)(yellow)

When the "start / stop button" is in the "run" mode, the light is on for about 3 seconds for self-test, and then goes out.

This indicator light indicates the status of the EPB system. When the EPB system fails, this light will be on. The alarm pop-up window displays "EPB system fault" accompanied by five prompt tones. If the warning light lights up during driving, please contact the dealer of BAIC for maintenance.

⚠ WARNING

- **If the warning light is on during driving, stop the vehicle immediately and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC under the condition of ensuring safety.**
- **If no measures are taken, serious driving performance problems will occur.**

27. DPF/GPF (diesel particulate filter/gasoline particulate filter) indicator light  (yellow)*

When the engine is in the regeneration state, the indicator light comes on.

Automatic regeneration:

During driving, when the particulate matter captured in PDF reaches certain conditions, the vehicle will automatically start the regeneration program to fully burn the particulate matter, so that PDF can continue to capture particulate matter. When the vehicle starts the regeneration procedure and enters regeneration, the instrument will light up the DPF regeneration indicator. In order to facilitate the regeneration process, it is recommended that the customer operate as follows until the indicator goes out:

- ① On the road with good road conditions, try to drive at a higher gear, and keep the engine speed at about 2000 rpm to keep the speed stable.
- ② Try to avoid idling the engine.
- ③ Try to avoid short distance driving and engine stalling.

👁 Attention

During this procedure, you must comply with all relevant speed limits and laws and regulations, take full account of traffic and weather conditions, and take care of road users when driving.

Manual regeneration:

In some special cases, the DPF regeneration process is insufficient or frequently interrupted, which will trigger the alarm message. When the DPF indicator light is on and flashing (sometimes accompanied by the engine control system warning light and the engine fault warning light is always on or flashing), it indicates that the DPF needs to perform the manual regeneration procedure immediately. The manual regeneration procedure is as follows:

- ① Select a flat and safe position for parking, shift the gear to neutral, turn off the engine and apply the parking brake;
- ② After turning off the engine for 10 minutes, check the oil level. If the oil level is higher than the upper limit, please stop using it and immediately go to BAIC after-sales service station for treatment;
- ③ If the liquid level is normal, start the engine and make the engine water temperature reach above 40°C;
- ④ Wait for more than 1 minute for the engine to be turned off, and press the start/stop button once to power on the vehicle;
- ⑤ Press the start/stop button twice in succession to power down the vehicle. The above vehicle power on and power off operations are repeated twice in 15 seconds. Step down the clutch pedal for the third time, press the start / stop button to start the engine, and release the clutch pedal after starting to restore the pedal to the natural state;

 Attention

The complete vehicle must be kept parked and the engine is running; Manual gearbox must be placed in neutral; If it is a manual gearbox, do not press the clutch pedal, and the clutch pedal remains in a natural state; Do not press the brake pedal; Don't press the accelerator pedal.

⑥ Start the engine. After about 20 seconds, the DPF can enter the regeneration process. At this time, the engine speed will automatically rise to about 2000 rpm;


⑦ Wait for 10 to 20 minutes. After the regeneration process is completed, the engine speed will automatically reduce to the idle state, and the DPF regeneration indicator light will go out, indicating that the regeneration is successful. After another 3 driving cycles, the fault is cleared, and the vehicle can be used normally.

 Attention

This process is called a driving cycle, from pressing the start/stop button once to powering up for more than 20 seconds to pressing the start/stop button twice to powering down for more than 10 seconds. When the regeneration process is in progress, please do not carry out any operation, otherwise the regeneration process may exit automatically; If you need to use the vehicle in an emergency, you can exit the program by stepping on the clutch pedal, brake pedal, accelerator, etc., but the fault information will not be eliminated, and it still needs to be dealt with in time; If the engine warning light still does not clear after the regeneration procedure is completed and 3 driving cycles, please go to BAIC after sales service station for treatment.

Gasoline engines are equipped with GPF models. When the particulate filter indicator light is flashing, please go to the nearest BAIC after-sales service station as soon as possible to carry out inspection and operations related to particulate filter regeneration.


28. Press the brake pedal to release the

EPB indicator light  (green)

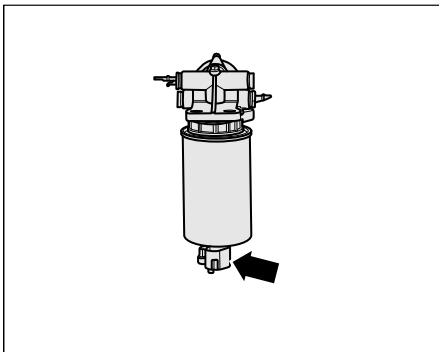
When the indicator light is on, it indicates that the driver needs to step on the brake pedal to release the electronic hand brake. When this indicator light is on, the alarm pop-up window displays "please step on the brake pedal to release the electronic hand brake".

29. Preheating indicator light  (yellow)*

When the start/stop button is in the "RUN" position (the engine is not started), the vehicle performs the inspection by itself, and the indicator light goes out soon after being lit. If the vehicle starts the intake air preheating function (when the ambient temperature is below 20°C or the altitude is above 500 meters), make sure the light is off before starting the vehicle.

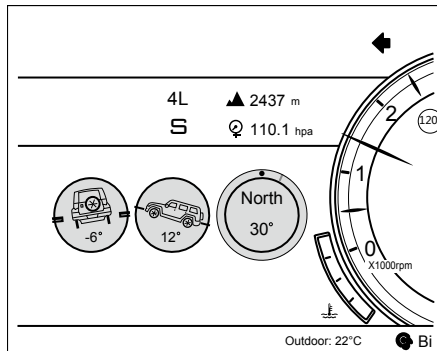
30. Oil-water separation indicator light  (red)*

This indicator light is always on when the water level in the diesel filter (water in the filtered fuel) exceeds the rated volume. The diesel filter needs to be drained immediately. The diesel filter is arranged on the front panel of the engine compartment.



As shown in the figure, loosen the water level sensor to drain water, and then tighten it after the water runs out.

Off-Road Information

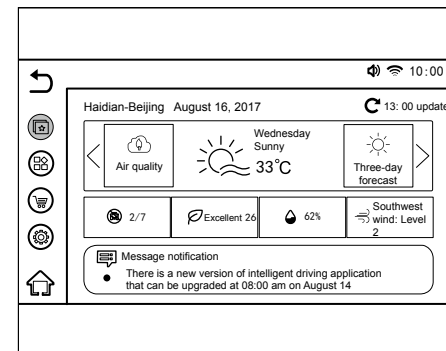


The horizontal angles of the vehicle in longitudinal and transverse directions can be read from the instrument, so that you can know the current position of the vehicle relative to the horizontal plane.

Intelligent Vehicle-Machine Cloud Services*

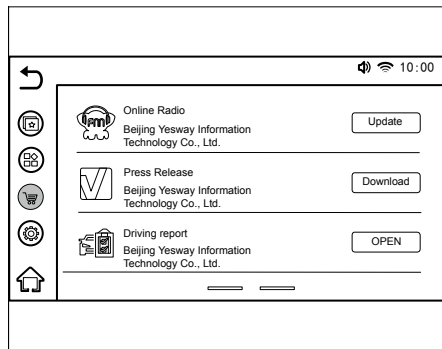
The system hardware adopts a 4G communication module to realize online voice recognition, online navigation, online music, driving behavior analysis, news information, and other functions;

Intelligent vehicle-machine interconnection function interface



This interface is the homepage of the IntelliDrive application, which includes the following functions:

Weather and air quality, limited number query, message reminder.



The picture above shows the App store interface.

Take the above picture as an example, there are four first-level functions on the leftmost side of the intelligent vehicle-machine interconnection function interface from top to bottom: home page, application management, application store, and settings. Each of the first-level functions includes several second-level functions.

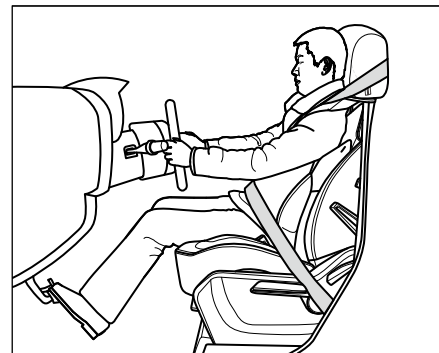
The application management interface includes: application deletion.

The App store interface includes: downloading apps and updating apps.

The setting interface includes: service status query, service renewal, order query, delete order information, SIM card status query, SIM card replacement, user agreement query, user information modification, user logout, OTA upgrade and update.

Steering wheel

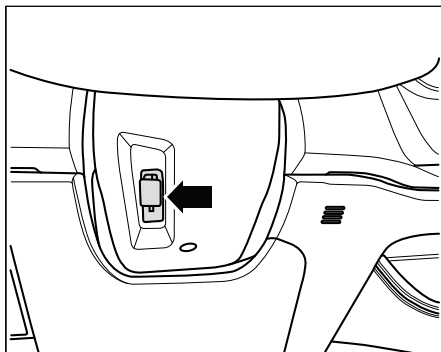
Adjust steering wheel position



The driver can adjust the height of the steering wheel according to his/ her body shape.

WARNING

Do not let the steering wheel point toward your face. Otherwise, you cannot get effective protection from your front airbag during a crash. After adjusting, make sure the steering wheel points toward your chest.

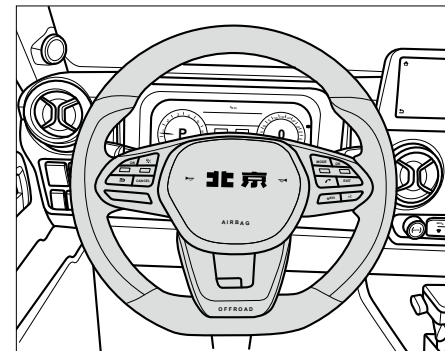


1. Adjust the driver's seat to the correct position, then push the locking handle down to unlock the steering wheel.
2. Adjust the steering wheel up and down to the proper position, so it points toward your chest. Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Then push the locking handle up to lock it.
4. Move the steering wheel in up, down, front and rear directions, to confirm whether the steering wheel is locked.

⚠ WARNING

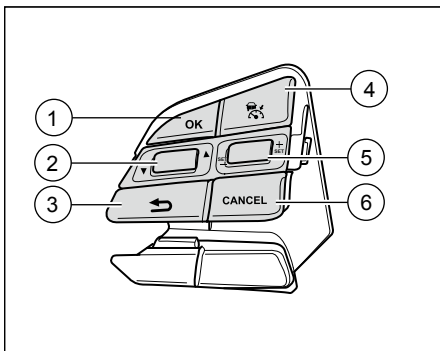
- **Failure to use the steering wheel position adjustment device according to the operating regulations and incorrect sitting posture can cause serious injuries.**
- **To avoid dangerous driving conditions and accidents, only adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is stopped.**
- **When adjusting the driver's seat or the steering wheel, make sure that the distance between the steering wheel and the driver's chest is not less than 25 cm. If less than 25 cm, the airbag system could not play a better role in protection.**
- **The locking handle must be pressed firmly to prevent the position of the steering column from changing during vehicle driving.**

Multifunction steering wheel



The vehicle is equipped with a multifunction steering wheel, which is equipped with operation, switch, adjustment and other function buttons. The details are as follows:

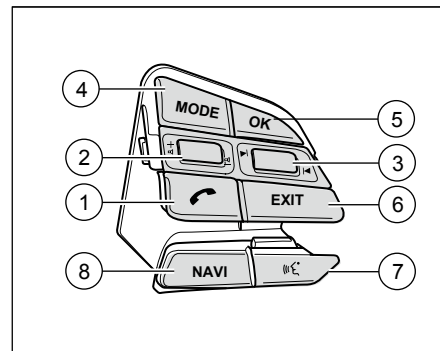
Left button group *



1. Press the OK button -1- on the left side of the steering wheel to enter the instrument information function setting and confirmation.
2. Move the left toggle -2- on the left side of the steering wheel up and down to realize the up and down selection of instrument information.
3. Press the return button -3- on the left side of the steering wheel to exit the instrument information function setting.
4. Press the cruise button -4- on the left side of the steering wheel to turn the cruise function on/off.

5. Toggle up and down the toggle -5- on the right side of the steering wheel near the right position, cruise resume / speed increase (RES +), cruise set / speed decrease (SET -).
6. Press the "CANCEL" button -6- on the left side of the steering wheel to cancel cruise control.

Right button group *

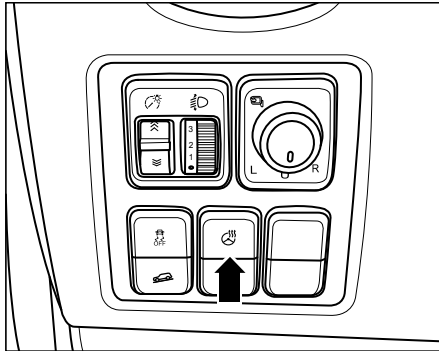


1. Enter the phone interface, answer/hang up the call.
2. Move the left toggle -2- on the left side of the steering wheel up and down to realize the up and down selection of instrument information.
3. Toggle the knob -2- on the right side of the steering wheel close to the left up and down to increase or decrease the audio volume.
4. Press the mode button -4- on the right side of the steering wheel to switch the mode interface in the large audio screen.
5. Press the OK button -5- on the right side of the steering wheel to confirm the

host function.

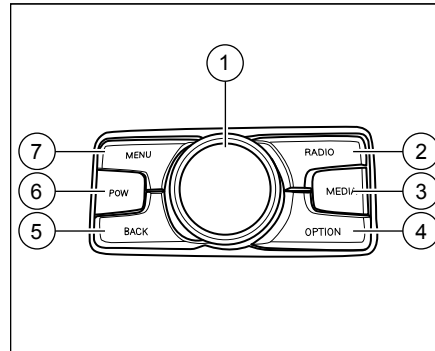
6. Press the EXIT button -6- on the right side of the steering wheel to exit the host function.
7. Press the language control button -7- on the right side of the steering wheel to realize voice control.
8. Press the NAVI button -8- on the right side of the steering wheel to enter the navigation function.

Steering wheel heating switch*



As shown in the figure, after pressing the steering wheel heating switch, the steering wheel heating work indicator lights up and the steering wheel starts to heat. Press again to close.

Center-channel multi-function button



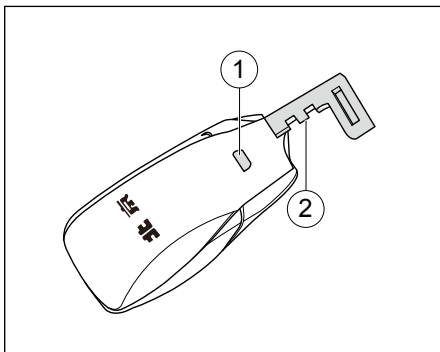
1. Middle knob: it can be rotated to select the current items of the host, moved up, down, left, and right to select the upper and lower menus of the host and switch the operation areas, and can be pressed to confirm the selection;
2. RADIO button: radio selection button;
3. MEDIA button: Multimedia selection button;
4. OPTION button: menu shortcut options;
5. BACK button: return to the previous button;
6. POW button: short press to mute in the power-on state, long-press to power off, and short-press to power on in the power-off state;
7. MENU button: Homeage button.

Start and stop the vehicle

Smart remote key*

2

The vehicle is equipped with 2 smart remote keys. The smart remote key contains a mechanical key, which can be used in an emergency. If the smart remote key does not work, the mechanical key can be used to open the door.



1. Press the release button -1-.
2. Pull out the mechanical key -2-.

Smart remote key: it can use the wireless remote control function to lock or unlock all doors, open the trunk and realize the vehicle search function.

Mechanical key: under the normal power supply of the vehicle, the mechanical key can lock and unlock all doors.

When taking the aircraft with the smart remote key, make sure not to press any button on the smart remote key in the cabin. Pressing the button may cause the smart remote key to emit radio waves, which may interfere with the flight of the aircraft.

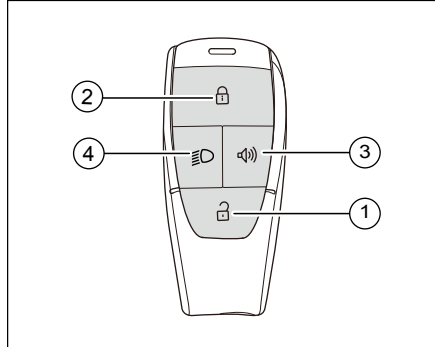
Attention

When using the smart remote key with the transceiver chip, please follow the following instructions:

- **Do not attach any object which may block the transmission of electromagnetic wave, such as a metal cover, to the smart remote key.**
- **Do not knock at other objects with the smart remote key.**
- **Do not expose the smart remote key to high temperature for a long time, such as on the dashboard or engine hood in direct sunlight.**
- **Do not immerse the smart remote key in water or clean it in an ultrasonic scrubber.**
- **Do not put the smart remote key with a device that emits electromagnetic waves, such as a mobile phone.**

i Tip

After using the mechanical key, please put it back.

Smart remote key

The smart remote key has four buttons, which are:

1. Unlock button: unlock the door lock;
2. Locking button: lock the door lock
3. Vehicle search button: Press this button in the fortified state, and the vehicle will send out lights and sound reminders.
4. Light button: turn on the small light and low beam (long press)

The effective range of the remote control key is about 25 meters, but in some special cases, such as when there is electromagnetic interference nearby or in a signal blind spot, the range will be reduced. For details, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC immediately. If the key does not operate the doors or does not operate within the normal distance:|

- Check for radio transmitters nearby that interfere with the normal operation of the key and the surrounding environment, such as radio stations or airports.
- Battery power might have run off. Check the battery inside the key. To replace the battery, please refer to “Replace Battery”.

If the key is lost, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC as soon as possible to avoid vehicle theft.

 Attention

After pressing the unlock/lock continuously, the door lock protection function will be triggered, and the unlock function will be temporarily disabled.

 Attention

When you operate the remote key, you do not need to aim the remote key at the vehicle, but the key must be within a certain range to function when you press the key.

Please note that the operating range of the remote control key will be affected by the battery charge in the key, and sometimes it will also be affected by physical and geographical factors. For safety reasons, please operate remotely when approaching the door.

Replace Battery

When the power of the remote key is insufficient, the trip computer display will display "low power of the smart remote key" to remind you to replace the battery.

When replacing the battery, it is necessary to open the battery cover on the key. If it is not operated properly, it is easy to damage the key. Therefore, it is recommended to entrust authorized dealer of BAI to replace it.

 **WARNING**

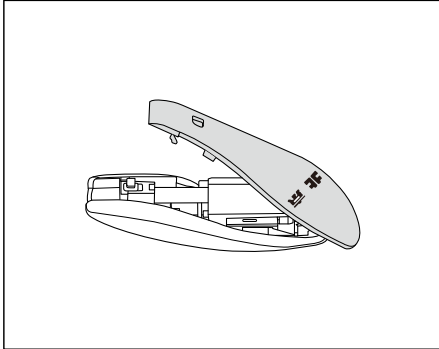
- **Please do not touch the circuit board, otherwise static electricity may be generated, thus damaging the remote key.**
- **Don't lose any parts when replacing the battery of the key.**
- **Replace only with the same or equivalent type of battery recommended by BAIC.**
- **Waste batteries must be disposed of according to local laws.**

 Attention

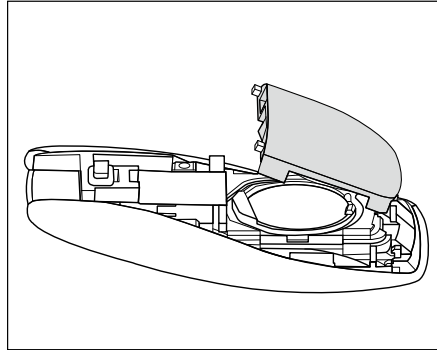
- **Make sure that the positive and negative poles of the remote control key battery are installed correctly.**
- **Do not replace the remote key battery with wet hands to avoid the battery from being rusted.**
- **Do not touch or move any parts in the remote key, otherwise it will affect the function of the key.**
- **Be careful not to bend the electrodes when inserting the remote key battery, and do not stick dust or oil in the battery box.**

Please replace the key battery according to the following steps:

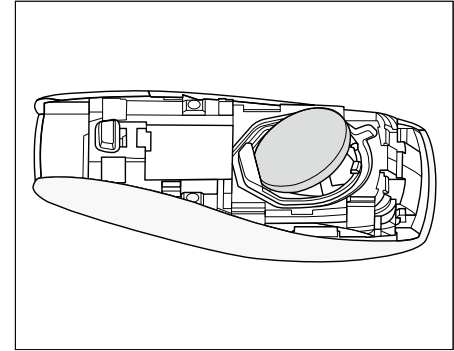
1. Press the back mechanical key switch to take out the mechanical key;



2. After forcibly opening the key along the mechanical key card slot,

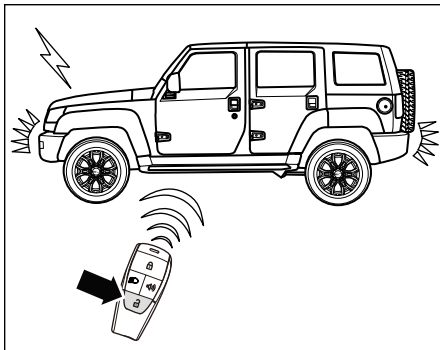


3. Open the battery cover with a sharp tool;



4. Remove the battery and avoid touching the circuit board and battery clamp;
5. Do not touch the battery surface when installing the battery and wipe the battery clean before installation;
6. Ensure that the battery cover is well engaged during installing to avoid the intrusion of dust and water vapor;
7. After the battery is replaced, it is necessary to test whether the function of the smart remote key is normal. If the smart remote key still doesn't work normally, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC.

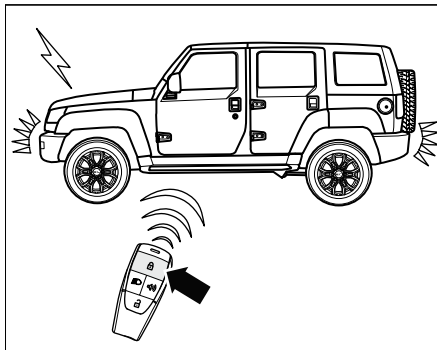
Unlock the door



When the unlock button is pressed, all doors are unlocked at the same time. Now, the turn signal light flashes twice.

After using the wireless remote control unlocking function, please open any door within about 30s, otherwise all doors will automatically lock again.

Lock the door



The smart remote key is outside the vehicle, the start/stop button is in "OFF" mode, the hood, four doors and tailgate are closed, press the lock button to lock the doors.

Remote key matching

If you need to match the key again due to the loss of the remote control key, please go to the authorized dealer of BAIC in time, where professionals will carry out relevant operations with special equipment.

Attention

After the remote control key is re-matched, the remote control key matched with the vehicle before this will no longer be used. Therefore, all the keys that need to be used should be matched when re-matching.

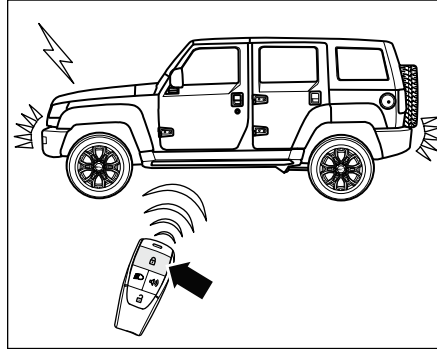
Each vehicle can match up to 2 remote control keys at the same time.

Guard against theft and alarm system

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronic anti-theft alarm system and in order to ensure maximum safety and convenience, we strongly recommend you to fully understand its characteristics and usage by carefully reading the contents of this chapter.



Remote control key setting anti-theft



Press the lock button. If each door and tailgate is closed, the turn signal flashes once, and the door and tailgate are locked at the same time. The anti-theft status indicator in the instrument information center starts to flash, indicating that the system has entered the anti-theft alert state. In this state, the anti-theft system will monitor the state that each door, tailgate, one-button start switch and start/stop button are in the "RUN" position. If the lock button is pressed again at this time, the turn signal light flashes once, and the system executes the lock action again.

If the vehicle does not meet the locking conditions, that is, any door in each door and tailgate is not closed or the start/stop button is in the "RUN" position, the vehicle will not respond by pressing the locking button, and the vehicle cannot be locked and fortified at this time.

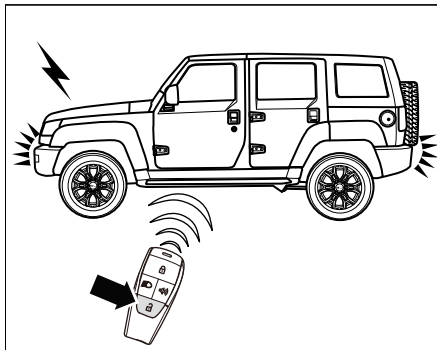
Vehicle locking conditions:

- When all door locks and tailgate locks are normal, all doors and tailgate are closed normally;
- The one-button start switch is closed and the start/stop button is in the "OFF" position.

Attention

After setting the anti-theft state, the engine also enters the anti-theft state. At this time, if you use the matching mechanical key of the vehicle to enter the vehicle and start the engine within 15 seconds, the anti-theft can be released.

Remote key disarming anti-theft



In the state of being fortified and not triggering alarm, all doors are unlocked at the same time after pressing the unlock button. Now, the turn signal light flashes twice.

After using the remote control unlocking function, the doors are not opened, and after some time, all doors will be automatically locked again and re-enter the anti-theft alert state.

Alarm Triggered

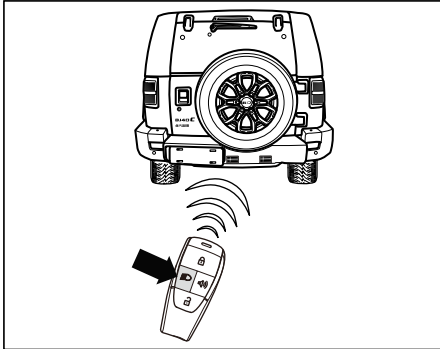
When the anti-theft system is triggered, the turn signal starts to flash, and the horn makes an alarm sound at the same time. No matter whether the trigger signal is removed or not, the system stops alarming after one cycle, and when there is a new trigger, it will give an alarm again.

When the alarm is triggered, the anti-theft status indicator light in the information center flashes at a certain frequency.

Attention

This system only monitors each door status signal, tailgate status signal and ignition switch signal. Only make an alarm when the above signals are illegally triggered.

Turn on the lights with the remote key



Press the light button for a long time, turn on the small light and low beam light, and turn it off automatically after some time.

Secondary fortification

The system is in an anti-theft alert state. After pressing the unlock button, the anti-theft alert state will be released. If the key and door state has not changed within a certain period, the system will automatically re-enter the anti-theft alert state. If the unlock button is pressed again within this specified time, the timing will restart.

Central door locking system

Central door lock system operation instructions

The central door lock system can lock and unlock all doors:

1. Operate the central door lock system with the remote transmitter.
2. Operate the central locking system with a mechanical key;
3. The central locking system is operated with the central locking switch on the driver's door.

Operating the central door and lock with the remote control key

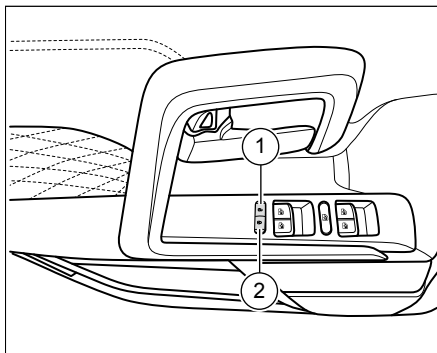
Press the lock button of the remote key. If the vehicle meets the lock condition, the central door lock system will lock, that is, both the door and the tailgate will lock.

Press the unlock button of the remote key, and the central door lock system is unlocked, that is, all doors are unlocked at the same time.

Operate the central door lock with mechanical key

When the vehicle meets the locking condition, insert the key into the driver's side door lock hole and rotate in the rear direction (clockwise), and the central door lock system will be unlocked; Turn the mechanical key in front of the car (counterclockwise) to lock it.

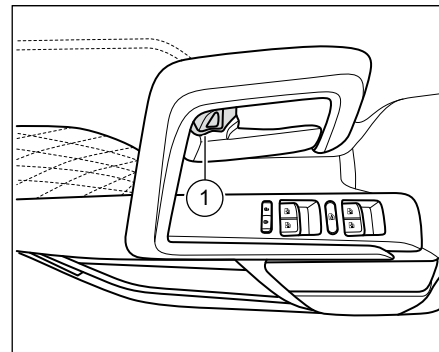
However, the unlocking (counterclockwise rotating key)/locking (clockwise rotating key) of other doors by mechanical key is only applicable to the corresponding door lock unlocking/locking, and all doors cannot be unlocked/locked at the same time.



The central door lock button is shown in the figure, which is located on the driver's side door. Press the button-1-to unlock the central door lock system, and press the button-2-to lock it.

The central locking is operated with the central locking switch on the driver's door

(Equipped vehicles only)



The switch is located on the driver's side door. Outward pull the central door lock switch -1-, the central door lock system is unlocked, inward press back to lock.

⚠ WARNING

Do not leave the child or disabled in the vehicle alone. Because once the locking part is manipulated, the door will be locked immediately, and it is difficult for children or disabled people to leave the car in an emergency, and the locked door in the event of an accident will also increase the difficulty of their rescue.

Auto-unlock function

1. In the process of driving, if a collision occurs and the airbags have been deployed, the door locks of the whole vehicle will be automatically unlocked.
2. When the vehicle is locked, the central door locking system will be automatically unlocked when the vehicle is turned from the driving state to the stopped state, after the engine is turned off and the start/stop button is placed in the "OFF"/"ACC" position.
3. When the vehicle is locked, the central door lock system will automatically unlock when the vehicle is in the running state to the stop state, and the vehicle gear is switched from other gears to the P gear.

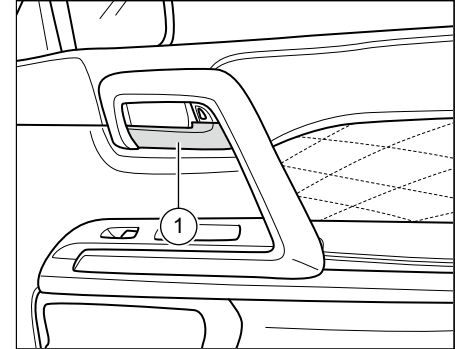
Automatic lock function

When the vehicle is in driving state and the vehicle speed is greater than 20km/h, the central door locking system will automatically lock.

When the vehicle speed is between 5km/h--20km/h for about 30 seconds, the central door locking system will automatically lock.

Thermal protection function of door lock motor

The door lock motor has a thermal protection function. If the door lock is opened and closed many times in a short period of time, the thermal protection function of the door lock motor may be triggered, resulting in the failure of the door lock function in a short time.

Doors

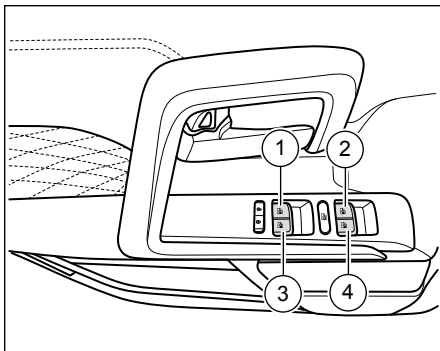
When the door is unlocked, pull the interior opening handle -1- to open the door.

Window

Power Window

The vehicle is equipped with power windows on the left and right doors, which can be controlled by the power window buttons in the driver's door switch group.

Operate the windows by the power window buttons



As shown in the figure, the power window button is located on the driver's door.

1. Control the left rear door window lift
2. Control the driver's door window lift
3. Control the right rear door window lift
4. Control the Control the window lift of the passenger side door

Press or pull up the control switch continuously, release the switch, and the window will stop lifting;

WARNING

The lifter of this model is not equipped with anti pinch function. Please ensure that no part of your body is above the glass running track during the glass rising process to avoid pinch injury.

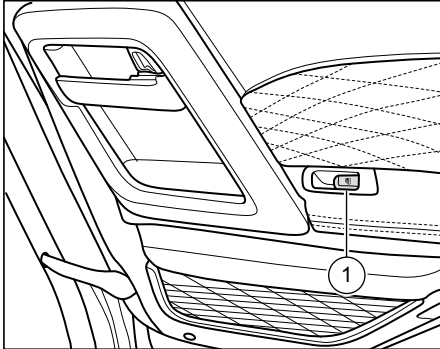
Attention

In order to avoid damaging the motor of the power window, after opening and closing the window several times, the protective device will be activated and the power window will not operate. After waiting for a period of time, the power windows can return to normal operation.

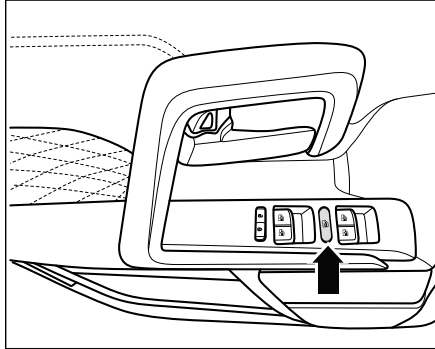
Front passenger and rear window

(this vehicle is equipped with power windows on the rear door side.)

The steps are as follows:



Press the window lifting switch -1-, and the window can be controlled to rise and fall.

Safety lock switch

As shown in the picture: located on the driver's side door, press the arrow to press the switch, it will lock the lift function of the rear window.

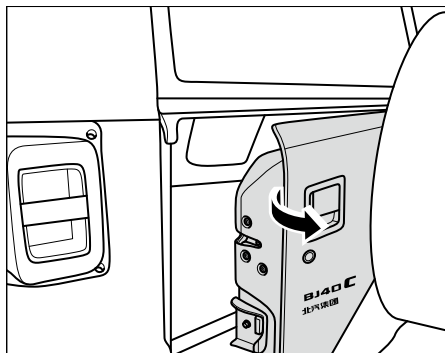
 **WARNING**

Be careful when using electric doors and windows. Improper use may cause accidents or injuries!

- When opening or closing doors and windows, make sure that no one is in the lifting range of doors and windows.
- When locking the vehicle, do not leave children or disabled persons alone in the vehicle, because the doors and windows cannot be opened in case of emergency.
- Be sure to take your vehicle keys with you when you leave the car, because you will not be able to lift doors and Windows after turning off the one-button start switch.
- If children are sitting on the rear seats when the vehicle is running, the rear window lifting function must be turned off with the safety locking switch to prevent it from being opened or closed.

Tailgate

With the tailgate unlocked, pull the tailgate exterior handle to open the tailgate.

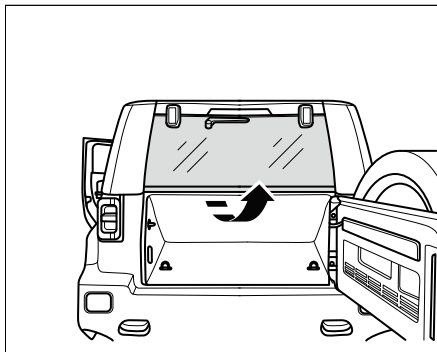


⚠ WARNING

Do not allow a child to open or close the tailgate, or the child's hands, head or neck may be pinched by the closing tailgate.

Rear windscreen

Before opening the rear windshield, open the tailgate to the maximum position, then hold the middle part of the lower side of the rear windshield by hand and rotate upward with force. The rear windshield will stop at the maximum position by relying on the air spring support. The closing procedure is the reverse of the opening procedure. When closing the rear windshield, the tailgate must also be opened to the maximum position.

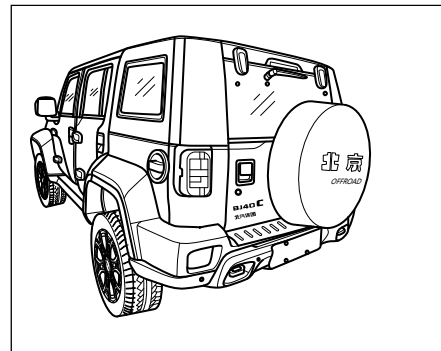


i Tip

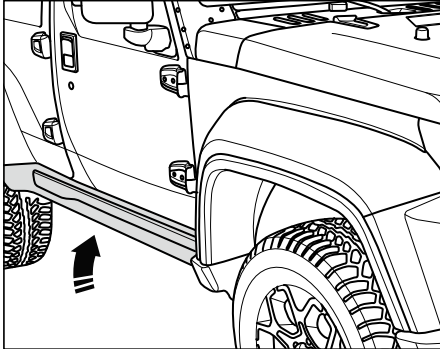
Keep the rear windshield closed during driving.

Precautions

When closing the tailgate and the rear windshield, take special care to avoid pinching fingers and other parts.

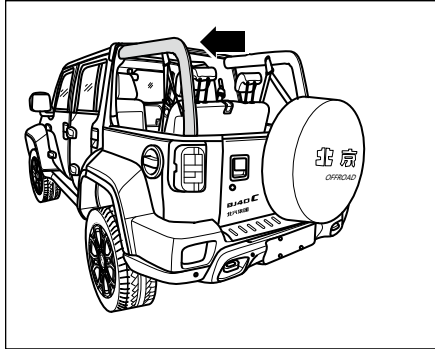


Side pedal lever *



When the passenger and the driver get into the vehicle, they can step on the side pedals to get on the vehicle.

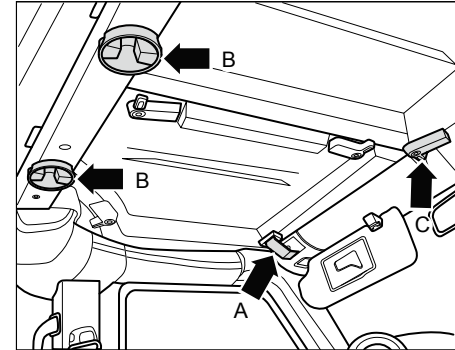
Anti-roll bar*



When the vehicle is accidentally overturned, the anti-roll bar can support the vehicle body, and when the driver and occupant wear the seat belt correctly, their head will not be squeezed, thus effectively protecting the driver and passenger.

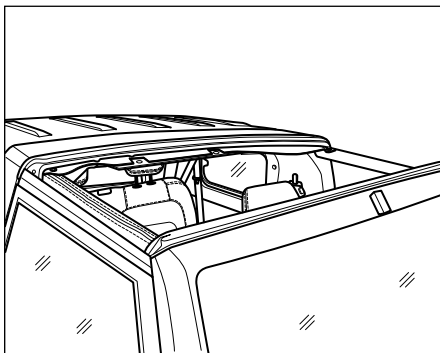
Front roof

The front roof of this vehicle can be removed, the specific steps are as follows:



1. Rotate the fixing handle - arrow C- (total 5 places), pull back the -A- buckle (total two places) by hand, turn counterclockwise to remove the two installation knobs -B- in the middle of the body, and keep it in a safe place to prevent loss or injury.

2

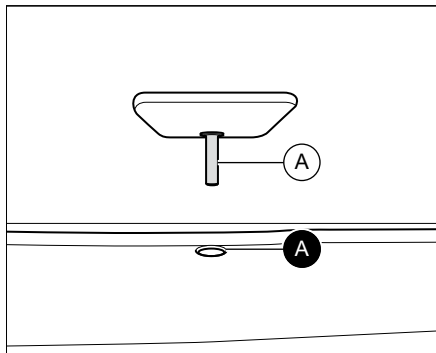


2. Push up and remove the front roof (one piece on the left and one on the right, first remove the left roof and then the right roof). Please place the removed front roof on a softer object to prevent damage.

⚠ WARNING

The installation position of the front roof must be correct, and the relevant accessories must be installed reliably to ensure the sealing performance and avoid water leakage, air leakage, duct leakage, and other problems caused by improper installation.

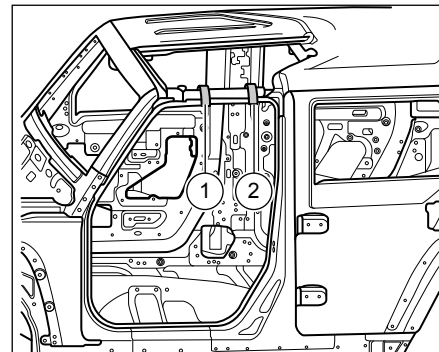
Installation procedure is reverse to removal procedure.



However, it should be noted that when placing the front roof, as shown in the figure, the locating pins-A on both sides of the roof should be aligned with the locating holes-A on the anti-roll bars on both sides of the body.

In addition, before re-tightening the bolts, make sure that the outer surface of the roof is flush with the body.

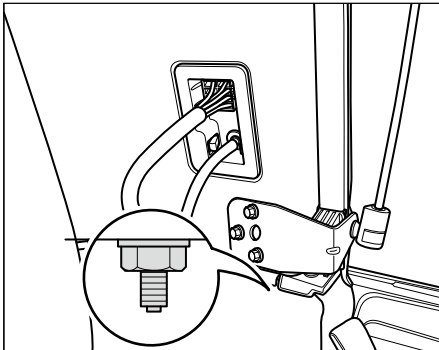
Front door opening sealing strip banded binding



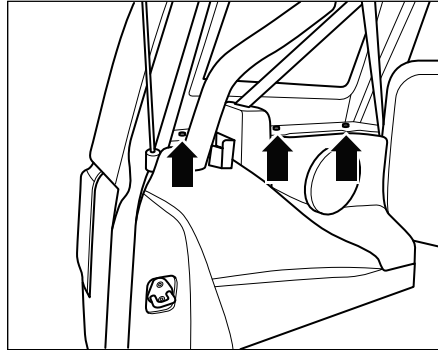
After removing the front top cover, the upper part of the door opening sealing strip is suspended in the air. It is necessary to remove the door opening sealing strip strap (with adhesive buckle) from the toolbox and fix the sealing strip -1-, -2- on the front anti-roll bar as shown in the figure.

Rear roof

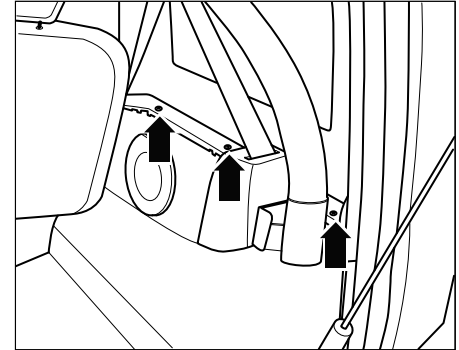
The rear roof of this vehicle can also be removed, but it needs tools to achieve it. If you encounter problems during operation, it is recommended that you consult the professionals of the authorized dealer of BAIC.



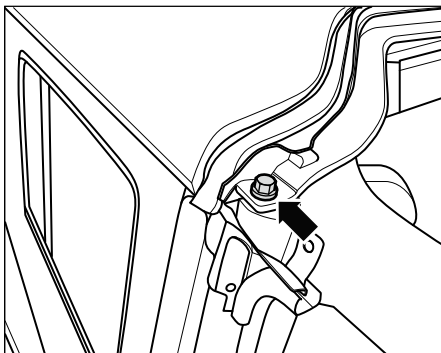
1. Open the interior trim of the rear area of the vehicle and unscrew the nut as shown in the picture (There are 1 on each side).



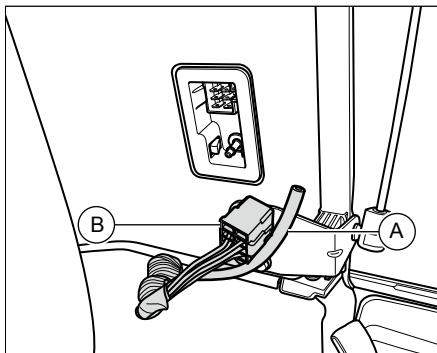
2. Remove the bolts (3 in total) on the left rear wall as shown by the arrow in the figure.



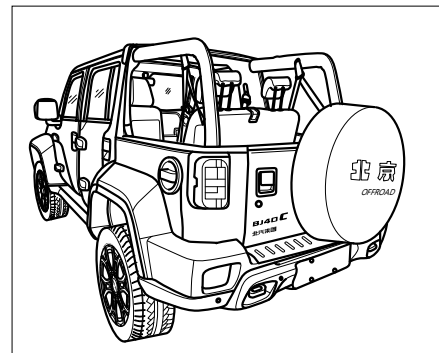
3. Remove the bolts (3 in total) on the right rear wall as shown by the arrow in the figure.



4. Remove the bolts (There are 1 on each side) on the B-pillar as shown by the arrow in the figure.



5. Unplug the connector -B- and the rubber tube -A- on the right side of the inner rear wall (Position shown in the figure).



6. Lift the roof up slightly and move it behind the vehicle.

i Tip

This operation may require the assistance of more than one person. After removal, place the rear roof on a level ground or on a soft object to prevent damage.

Install in the order opposite to that of dismantling. During installation, the rear roof shall be flush with the vehicle body (or slightly lower than 1mm).

 **WARNING**

The disassembly and assembly of the rear top cover shall be carried out with the help of professional tools. However, improper operation may cause damage to vehicle components. Or unpredictable problems occur due to unreasonable assembly. In severe cases, it will also lead to personal injury, so we strongly recommend that you carry out relevant operations after consulting the authorized dealer of BAIC.

Front windshield overturned

In addition to the removable top cover, the front windshield can also be turned forward on the engine hood, allowing you to enjoy real outdoor driving fun.

 **Attention**

The front windshield can prevent the intrusion of flying stones, branches, and other objects on the road, especially in some traffic accidents. Therefore, please do not drive on the road when the front windshield is folded forward and overturned on the engine hood.

If you want to feel the driving feeling with the front windshield tipped forward, securely fasten the windshield to the engine hood after the windshield has tipped forward on the engine hood. Fasten your seat belt before driving. It is recommended that the speed should not exceed 16km/h and keep driving in a low gear. Before returning to normal driving, please restore the front windshield to its original position and install all parts.

 **WARNING**

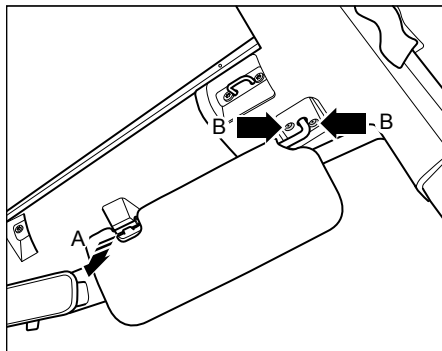
If the front windshield is folded, a series of disassembly and assembly operations are required. During disassembly and disassembly, many specialized tools and parts are used and the operator is required to have some relevant experience. Improper operation can easily cause damage to vehicle components, and even cause personal injury in severe cases. Therefore, we strongly recommend that you conduct relevant operations after consulting a Beijing Auto dealership.

 **WARNING**

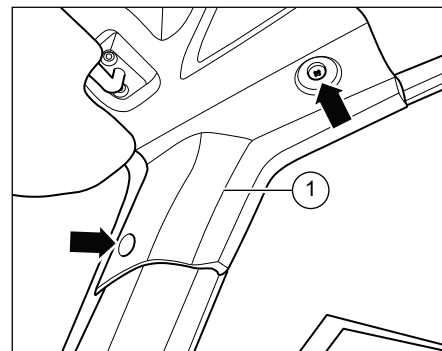
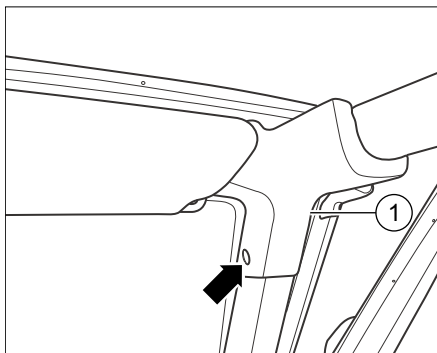
During the disassembly process, the dismantled parts must be properly placed in a safe place to prevent loss or damage to the parts, or danger to personnel.

The specific disassembly steps are as follows:

1. Remove the front roof as described in the "Front Roof" section and place the front roof and its securing bolts in a safe place to prevent damage or danger.



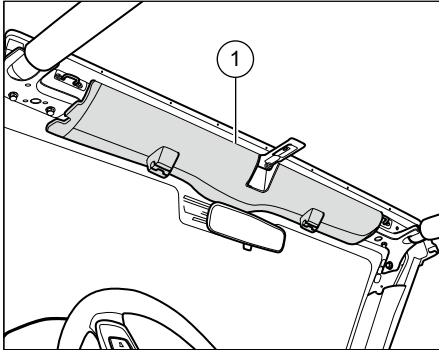
2. First, pull out the sunvisor rotating shafts on both sides in the direction of - arrow A-, remove the 2 locking screws - arrow B-, and finally remove the two front sun visors (the picture here takes the right side of the vehicle as an example).



3. Remove the locking screws on both sides -arrow -, and then remove the windshield corner trim panels -1- on both sides. (the picture here takes the right side of the vehicle as an example)

Attention

The tree-shaped buckle on the interior panel is a disposable part and needs to be replaced with a new one after disassembly.

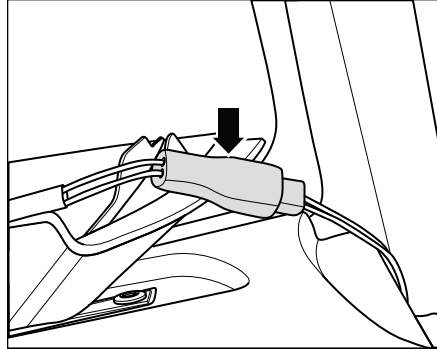


4. Remove the upper cross beam trim panel of the wind window-1-shown in the figure.

Attention

The upper crossbeam trim panel of the windshield is fixed by 10 fasteners, which are disposable parts and need to be replaced after disassembly.

5. Loosen the A-pillar audio plug.

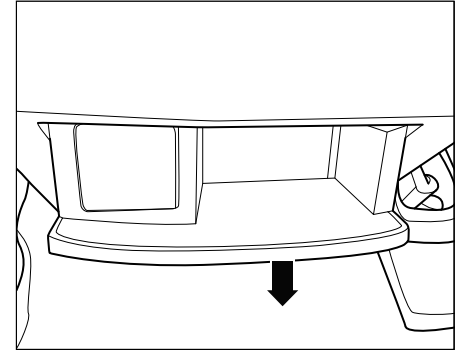


First remove the A-pillar trim panels on both sides, and then release the plug shown in the figure (the picture here is on the right side of the vehicle as an example).

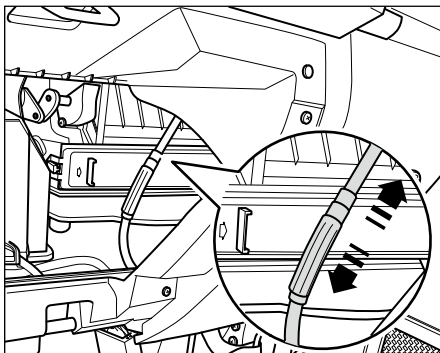
Attention

The A-pillar trim panel is connected by a disposable fastener and needs to be replaced with a new one after disassembly.

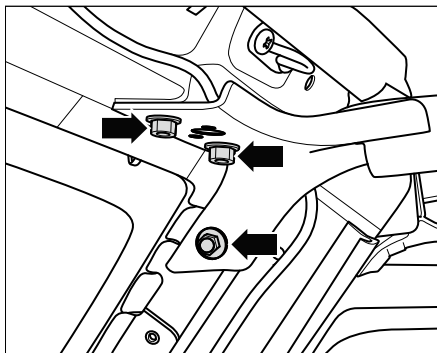
6. Release the front windshield antenna plug, which is located in the dashboard on the front passenger's side.



First remove the glove box on the passenger side: open the glove box and slowly pull out the glove box in the direction of the arrow shown in the figure.



Locate the windshield antenna plug and loosen it as shown in the figure (the plug is not fixed inside the glove box).

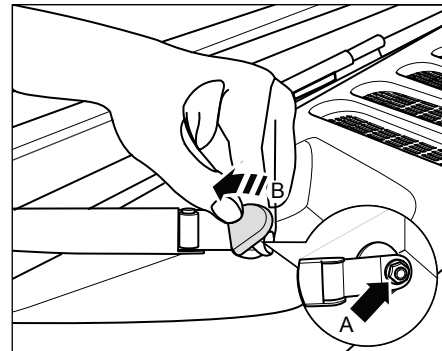


7. Remove the fastening bolts connecting the front windshield and the left and right anti-roll bars in the illustration, there are 3 fastening bolts on each side, a total of 6 (the picture here takes the right side of the vehicle as an example).

 Attention

These bolts have a torque requirement of $24\pm 2\text{N}\cdot\text{m}$ when installed.

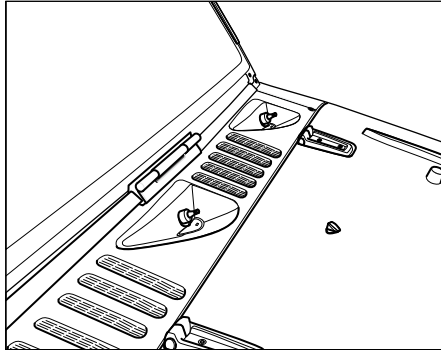
8. Remove the wiper arm.



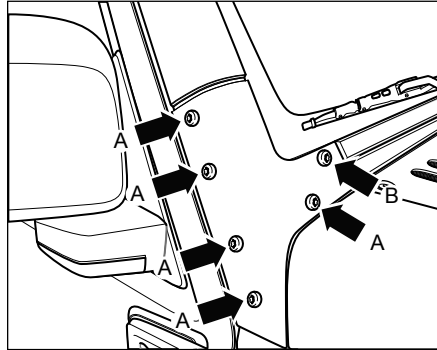
Open the wiper arm nut protective cover in the direction of arrow B as shown in the figure, and remove the fixing nut - arrow A-. Both wiper arm fixing nuts should be removed (the right wiper arm is taken as an example in the figure).

 Attention

The wiper arm fixing nut has a torque requirement of $19\pm 1\text{N}\cdot\text{m}$ during installation.



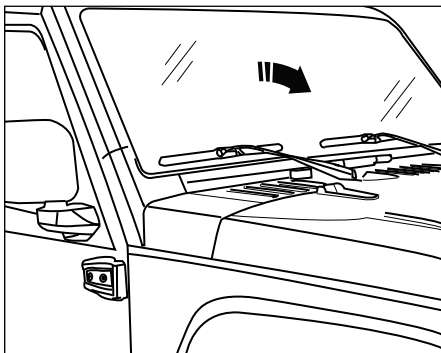
Pull out the wiper arm from the wiper motor shaft by the puller (pay attention to the installation position when removing, so that it can be used normally when it is restored).



9. Remove the round head screws that fix the lower windshield triangular plates on the left and right sides of the front windshield, 6 on each side, 12 in total, and remove the windshield triangular plates (the picture here takes the right side of the vehicle as an example).

Attention

The lengths of these screws are not exactly the same, the screws in the -A- position shown in the figure are slightly shorter than the screws in the -B- position shown in the figure, so be careful not to confuse them when installing. In addition, these screws have a torque requirement of $20\pm 2\text{N}\cdot\text{m}$ during installation.



10. Slowly lower the front windshield according to the direction of the arrow shown in the figure, and fasten the windshield firmly to the engine hood.

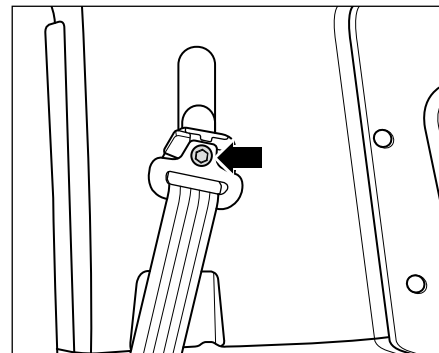
i Tip

The front windshield can be firmly fixed on the engine hood with the windshield fixing strap in the on-board vehicle.

11. Remove the B-pillar trim panel.



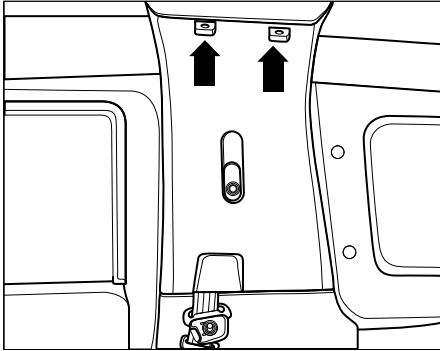
To do this, you need to remove the seat belt height adjusters on both sides (the picture here takes the right side of the vehicle as an example) Pry off the seat belt height adjuster housing as shown in the figure.



Loosen the fastening bolt of the seat belt height adjuster, and then remove the seat belt height adjuster (the picture here takes the right side of the vehicle as an example).

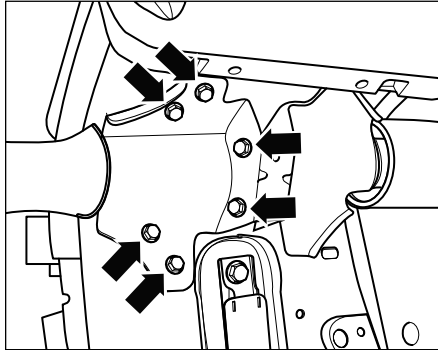
⚠ WARNING

The bolt has a torque requirement of $45 \pm 10\text{N}\cdot\text{m}$ during installation.



Loosen the expansion screws (2 on each side, 4 in total) as shown in the figure and remove the B-pillar trim panel (the picture here takes the right side of the vehicle as an example).

Attention
 The expansion part of the expansion screw and the fastener for fixing the B-pillar trim panel are disposable parts, which need to be replaced after disassembly.



12. Remove the fastening bolts connecting the B-pillar to the left and right anti-roll bars. There are 6 fastening bolts on each side for a total of 12. (the picture here takes the right side of the vehicle as an example) Then remove the anti-roll bars on both sides and place them in a safe place.

Attention
 These bolts have a torque requirement of $24\pm 2\text{N}\cdot\text{m}$ when installed.

13. Before driving the vehicle, the seat belts on both sides must be reset, and the seat belts can be reset by operating in the reverse sequence as in Step 11. This is the end of the windshield overturning operation.

A/C system

General

2

The A/C can adjust the air temperature and air humidity in the vehicle.

The A/C is only available when the engine is running and the windows should be kept closed.

The operation of the A/C system places additional load on the engine. In extremely hot conditions, or when the engine needs to run at full capacity (such as climbing a long mountain road or driving in heavy traffic), this will result in higher engine temperatures. If the needle approaches the red area of the thermometer, turn off the A/C until the engine temperature returns to normal.

To cool the engine, the radiator cooling fan may run continuously after the engine is turned off. During this period, if the A/C and air volume adjustment knobs are turned on, the A/C switch indicator light will continue to work.

If the humidity is high, slight fogging may appear on the window when the air conditioning system is turned on, which is a normal phenomenon in most vehicles equipped with electric air conditioning system, not a fault, and the fogging phenomenon will disappear after the air conditioning system runs for about a few seconds.

Attention

When the air volume adjustment knob is closed or the temperature is close to zero, the A/C will not be able to cool.

The A/C filters can remove the pollen and dust brought-in by the air warm and air cooling system from the outside.

Be sure to replace the A/C filters at scheduled maintenance.

If your vehicle is frequently driven in areas with poor air quality, the replacement cycle of the air conditioner filter shall be shortened. If the airflow from the air outlet is not as smooth as usual, replace the air conditioner air filter as soon as possible. When the start/stop button is located at the "RUN" position or "ACC" position, the A/C controller line is powered on, and the A/C controller will automatically call up the working state of the controller stored

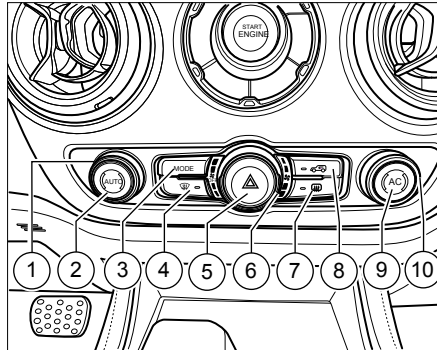
after the previous power failure, and automatically set the initial setting of the A/C system in this state.

WARNING

- **Blurred windows easily raise the risk of accidents and casualties. For the sake of safety, all the windows must be free of ice, snow and fog to ensure clear vision.**
- **Turbid air in the vehicle will cause the driver to be fatigued, depressed and distracted, resulting in accidents and casualties.**
- **The expertise and special tools are essential to the diagnosis and repair of air conditioning systems. Therefore, when the air-conditioning system fails, be sure to go to the authorized dealer of BAIC for inspection and repair**

i Tip

- When the outside temperature and humidity are high, moisture in the air will condense on the evaporator of the refrigeration system, resulting in water droplets dripping from the evaporator which form water under the vehicle. This is normal, and there is no need to fear.
- The air inlet in the front of the windshield should be unblocked, and make sure it is not clogged by snow, ice and leaves. Make sure the heating and cooling are normal. Prevent the front windshield from fogging up.
- The windows must be closed for the air conditioning system to play a maximum effect. If the vehicle has been exposed to the burning sun and it is very hot in the vehicle, you should briefly open the windows to dissipate the heat and accelerate cooling.
- When the outside temperature and humidity are high, do not use the full cooling mode to blow the cold wind on the windshield for a long time, as this will cause condensation on the outside of the windshield.

A/C control panel

1. Left temperature knob
2. AUTO mode switch
3. A/C outlet mode switch
4. Front defrost mode switch
5. Hazard warning light switch.
6. Air volume and shutdown knob
7. Rear defrost mode switch
8. Internal and external circulation switch
9. A/C switch
10. Right temperature knob

1. Left temperature knob

When the dual-zone button (see the function definition of the dual-zone function button for the DUAL switch) is not activated, manually operate this knob to adjust the outlet air temperature set on the driver and front passenger side at the same time; when the dual-zone button (DUAL) is activated, manually operate the knob. This knob can only adjust the outlet air temperature set on the driver's side.

The temperature control range is LO-18.5~31.5-HI. Each time the knob changes by one grid, the set temperature changes by 0.5°C, and the temperature change is displayed on the large screen of the central control synchronously.

Turn counterclockwise to set the temperature to decrease. When the temperature decreases to less than 18.5°C, it will display as LO, enter the maximum cooling state, automatically switch from the air outlet mode to the face blowing mode, open the air volume to the maximum gear, and continue to rotate counterclockwise without causing any changes.

When the temperature rises above 31.5°C, it will display HI, enter the maximum heating state, automatically switch from the air outlet mode to the foot blowing mode, open the air volume to the maximum gear, and continue to rotate clockwise without causing any changes.

In the OFF state, operating the temperature knob is invalid, and the air conditioning system will not turn on the working mode.

In the AUTO state, operate the left temperature knob. In the dual-zone mode, only the driver's setting temperature changes with the user's operation. In the non-dual-zone mode, the driver and front passenger's setting temperature changes with the user's operation at the same time; When the set temperature is not in the maximum cooling and maximum heating modes, other settings except the set temperature maintain the current state.

In the maximum cooling state: continue to rotate counterclockwise without causing any changes; Rotate clockwise to exit the maximum cooling state, the set temperature becomes 18.5°C, and other settings return to the state before entering the maximum cooling state.

In the maximum heating state: continue to rotate clockwise without causing any

changes; Rotate counterclockwise to exit the maximum heating state, the set temperature becomes 31.5°C, and other settings return to the state before entering the maximum heating state.

In front defrost mode: In the non-maximum cooling and heating state, operating this knob does not exit the front defrost mode, and the outlet air temperature is automatically controlled according to the actual environment at that time.

Attention

To avoid personnel misoperation, when the temperature knob is rotated rapidly and continuously, the set temperature of the A/C can only be adjusted by 2.5 °C at most at a time. Since the rear defrost consumes a large amount of power, it can only work when the engine is started.

2. AUTO mode switch

After pressing the auto switch, the work indicator light will be on, and the air conditioning system will enter the automatic control program. The air outlet temperature, air volume, air outlet direction, and air circulation mode will be automatically controlled by the air conditioning system. The AUTO working status is simultaneously

displayed on the large central control screen.

In the AUTO working state, users can adjust the left and right temperature knobs according to their own feelings, and can change the default temperature setting value of the A/C system to improve comfort; In the auto state, adjust the left temperature knob to enter the maximum cooling or heating state, and it will automatically exit the auto mode. At this time, without operating other switches, operate the left temperature knob, and the air conditioning system will exit the maximum cooling or heating state, and return to the auto state. The left temperature is subject to the set value.

3. A/C outlet mode switch

Manually operate this switch, the air outlet direction of the air conditioning system will cycle and select the corresponding function between the five modes of face-blowing, face-blowing& foot-blowing, face-blowing& defrosting and defrosting;

The air outlet mode state is displayed synchronously on the large central control screen.

4. Front defrost mode switch

Manually operate the switch, the air outlet mode of the A/C is window-blowing, external circulation, A/C start request signal is sent, the A/C work indicator is on, the air volume of the A/C is automatically adjusted to 5th gear (if the air volume gear is greater than 5th gear before the operation of the front defrosting switch, the original air volume gear is maintained), and the front defrosting working status is synchronously displayed in the central control screen. For quick defrosting, please manually adjust the air volume to the maximum gear after operating the front defrosting switch.

In the AUTO state, operate this switch, the A/C will enter the front defrosting working state and exit the auto state.

No matter in any working state, operate this switch, the A/C system will enter the front defrosting working mode. Operate this switch again, the A/C system will automatically return to the working state before the front defrosting, including the OFF state.

5. Hazard warning light switch.

In any case, operate the switch to start the hazard warning light function, the indicator light switch will enter the flashing state, and press again to cancel the hazard warning light function.

6. Air volume and shutdown knob

Operate this knob clockwise to increase the air outlet volume of the A/C until the maximum air volume does not change; Operate this knob anticlockwise, and the air outlet volume of the A/C will decrease until the air volume decreases to the 1st gear. After rotating it anticlockwise again, the A/C system will be turned off and enter the OFF state. The air volume status is synchronously displayed on the large central control screen.

When the A/C system is off, manually operate the air volume knob, the air volume is in 1st gear, and other modes return to the state before the last OFF.

In the AUTO state, operate this switch, the air volume will increase or decrease by 1 gear (if it is reduced to 0, it will enter the shutdown state, if it is the 8th gear, it will remain unchanged), exit the AUTO state, and other modes will remain unchanged.

In the maximum cooling, maximum heating and front defrosting modes, operate this knob to increase or decrease the air volume by 1 gear (if it is reduced to 0, it will enter the shutdown state, if it is the 8th gear, it will remain unchanged), and other modes will remain unchanged..

Attention

To avoid personnel misoperation, when the air volume knob is rapidly and continuously rotated, the air volume set by the A/C can only be adjusted to 2nd gear at most once, and no matter what, the air volume must be adjusted to 1st gear before the A/C system can be turned off again. When the air conditioning system is in the off state, the 1st gear air volume can only be reached by operating this knob, and then it can be adjusted to the required air volume.

7. Rear defrost mode switch

Manually operate the switch, the rear defrost indicator light will be ON, and the defrost working mode of the rear windshield and the left and right rear-view mirrors will be started. After the rear defrost working time is 15 minutes, the function will be automatically turned off and the working indicator light will be OFF. During the process of rear defrosting, operate the switch again to stop the rear defrosting. The working status is synchronously displayed on the large central control screen.

 Attention

Since the rear defrost consumes a large amount of power, it can only work when the engine is started.

8. Internal and external circulation switch

After the air conditioning system is shut down, it defaults to the external circulation mode. At this time, the work indicator light is off. When the switch is operated manually, the air conditioning system will switch to the internal circulation mode and turn on the work indicator light. Realize the switching between internal circulation and external circulation of the A/C system. The cycle status is synchronously displayed on the large central control screen.

When the A/C system operates this switch in any working state, the internal and external circulation mode of the A/C will change, and other functions will remain unchanged.

9. A/C switch

When the working indicator light of A/C switch lights up, it means that the A/C turns on the refrigeration function, and when it goes out, it turns off the refrigeration function. Only when the engine is running, the A/C switch will turn on the refrigeration function of the A/C;

When the engine is not running, operate the A/C switch, the work indicator light of the A/C switch will light up, but the refrigeration function will not be turned on.

In the AUTO state, press the A/C switch, the A/C indicator will go out, the air conditioning refrigeration function will be turned off, and the AUTO state will be exited.

In the OFF state, press the A/C switch, the work indicator light lights up, the A/C is turned on, the air volume is 1st gear, and other functions remain in the state before shutdown.

10. Right temperature knob

No matter whether the dual button is activated or not, manually operate this knob, only the air outlet temperature set on the passenger side can be adjusted, and the set temperature on the driver side cannot be changed.

The temperature control range is 18-18.5 ~ 31.5-32, and the setting temperature changes by 0.5 °C every time the knob changes.

Turn counterclockwise to set the temperature to decrease. When the temperature decreases to less than 18 °C, continue to rotate counterclockwise without causing any change.

Rotate clockwise and set the temperature to rise. When the temperature rises to more than 32 °C, continue to rotate clockwise without causing any change.

In the OFF state, operating the temperature knob is invalid, and the air conditioning system will not turn on the working mode.

In the AUTO state, the right temperature knob is operated, and only the temperature set by the front passenger changes with the user's operation. In the state of maximum cooling and maximum heating, there is no response when operating the right temperature knob.

 Attention

To avoid personnel misoperation, when the temperature knob is rotated rapidly and continuously, the set temperature of the A/C can only be adjusted by 2.5 °C at most at a time.

Dual Zone Function Button (DUAL)

This function button is integrated in the A/C function setting page in the central control large screen. When the DUAL button is not lit, the A/C system is in a single-zone control mode. Adjusting the left temperature knob can synchronously adjust the setting temperature of the right temperature knob;

When the DUAL button is not lit, operate the right temperature knob to automatically enter the dual-zone control mode.

When the DUAL button is lit, the A/C system enters the maximum cooling, heating, and front defrost modes, and the A/C system automatically enters the single-zone control mode.

Dual remains ON.

All the above A/C setting switches and knobs have corresponding touch the operation buttons on the large central control screen, and users can choose to use them according to their needs.

In-vehicle Heating

1. Turn the left and right temperature knobs -1-, -10- to above 24°C.
2. Press the air outlet mode switch -3- of the A/C to set the air outlet mode. It is recommended to use the foot-blowing mode.
3. Rotate the air volume and shutdown knob -6- to set the air volume.

In-vehicle cooling

1. Rotate the air volume and shutdown knob -6- to set the air volume.
2. Turn the left and right temperature knobs -1-, -10- to below 24°C.
3. Press the A/C switch -9- to turn on the cooling function, and the work indicator light on the button will light up immediately.
4. Press the air outlet mode switch -3- of the A/C to set the air outlet mode. It is recommended to use the face-blowing mode.

Cool down fast

If you need maximum cooling, close all windows, press the "A/C" button, turn the mode knob to the head-blowing state, turn the left and right temperature knobs to the coldest point, and turn the air volume control knob to the 8th position.

Attention

If the temperature inside the vehicle is very high when the engine is started, it will take a little time before the air conditioner is fully operational. Before turning on the A/C, set the fan to the highest speed and open the window, which can circulate and exchange the air inside the vehicle in a short time, which is beneficial to quickly reduce the temperature inside the car.

A/C Maintenance

The A/C system is completely sealed and the relevant major maintenance shall be operated only by a qualified technicians. To keep the system in optimum condition, the vehicle owner should ensure that the system runs for a short time every week (even in cold winter); When the engine is at normal operating temperature, start the A/C for at least about 10 minutes while keeping the vehicle running at a steady speed.

The excess water generated during the dehumidification process is drained by the system through the drain pipe at the bottom of the vehicle, which may cause water to accumulate on the road surface when the vehicle is stationary, so there is no need to worry.

Air conditioner air filter

The A / C air filter (as standard for vehicles equipped with A/C) is located in the A/C unit housing at the front left of the glove box, which can keep the air in the car fresh and prevent pollen and dust from entering the vehicle. To maintain its effect, check whether the vehicle is dirty every time it is inspected, and replace the air filter of the A/C if necessary.

Attention

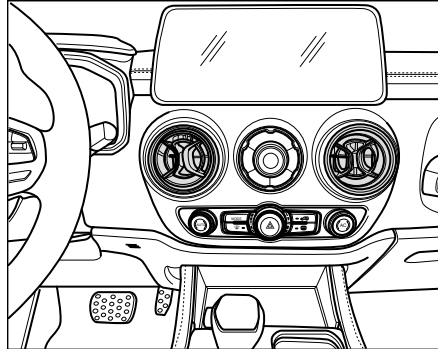
- **Park the vehicle in a cool place as far as possible. Parking in the hot sun will make the air inside the car scorching, which will take a long time to cool down. If you have to stop in the sun, please open the windows a few minutes before the A/C is running to remove the hot air in the vehicle.**
- **Please close the windows when using the A/C. The entry of external air will reduce the efficiency of the A/C.**
- **When the A/C system is running, please make sure that the air inlet in front of the windshield is unobstructed and free of obstructions such as leaves. The accumulation of blockage at the air inlet will affect the air flow.**
- **When the air conditioning system is turned off, the internal and external circulation status is external circulation by default. At this time, when the vehicle is running, fresh air will enter the cab through the external circulation air outlet. If fresh air is not required, please manually adjust it to the internal circulation status.**

A/C air vent

There are 4 types of air outlets in the A/C system of this vehicle:

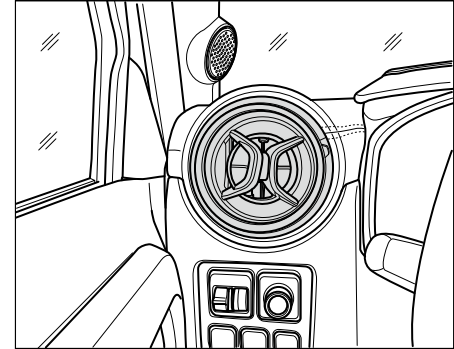
1. There are two side air outlets, located on the left and right sides of the dashboard.
2. There are two central air outlets, located in the middle of the dashboard.
3. There are two foot air outlets, located in the driver's and front passenger's footwells respectively.
4. There are two rear exhaust vents, located on the back of the front center armrest box.

Central air vent



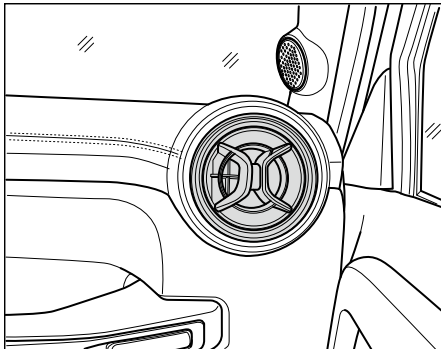
If you want to adjust the air flow direction of each air outlet, just push the air outlet in the required direction.

Driver side air outlet



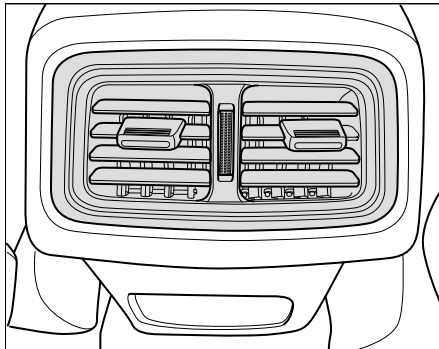
The driver side air outlet is adjusted in the same way as the central air outlet.

Front passenger side air outlet



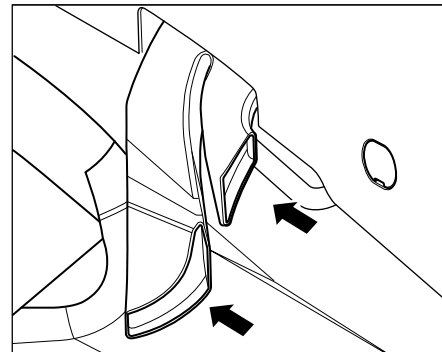
The driver side air outlet is adjusted in the same way as the central air outlet.

Rear air inlet



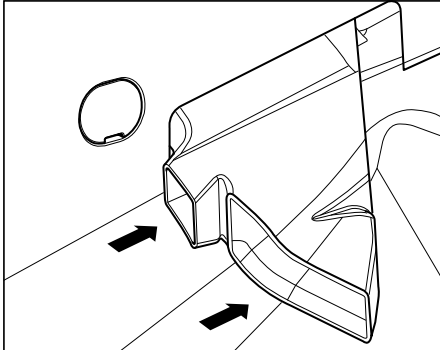
To adjust the air flow direction of the air vent, you can move the tab in the center of the air vent up, down, left and right.

Rear-row left foot blowing air outlet



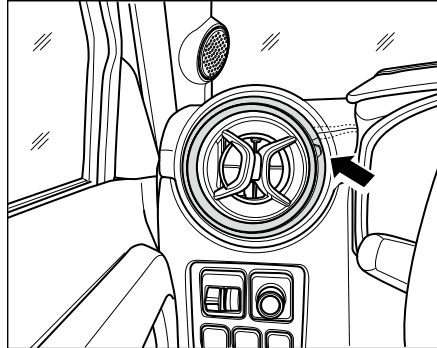
The figure above shows the rear-row left foot blowing air outlet.

Rear-row right foot blowing air outlet



The figure above shows the rear-row right foot blowing air outlet.

Air outlet switch



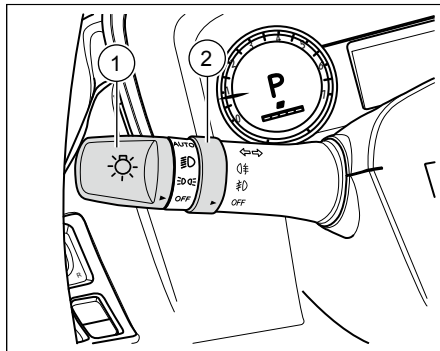
The air outlet switch controls the opening or closing of the air outlet, rotating clockwise to the limit position for closing, and rotating counterclockwise to the limit position for opening.

Car lights and visual field

2

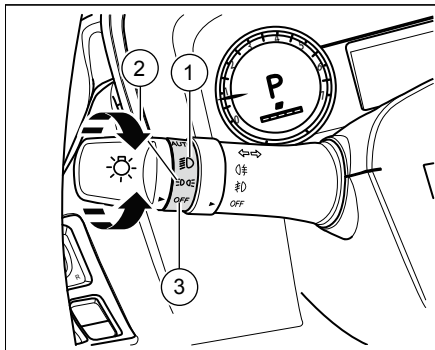
Exterior lights

The light controls are located on the left-hand multi-function lever behind the steering wheel.



1. Light switch knob
2. Fog light control knob

Light switch



As shown in the picture, when the light control knob points to the -3-"OFF" position, it means that the lights are turned off and all lights are off (except the hazard warning lights).


When the knob is turned to position -2-, that is, the small light position, the parking lights, tail lights, front and rear position lights, license plate lights and instrument backlight are bright spots, and the backlight of the information center display in the instrument will be reduced to the daytime brightness 40% to prevent glare.

When the knob is turned to position -1-, the low beam position, the headlight low beam is also turned on.

Attention

- When the engine goes out, do not keep the headlights and other lights on for a long time, which will reduce the battery power.
- On rainy days or when washing the car, the inside of the light transmitting mirror of the headlight may be fogged, which is the same as the fogging on the window glass in wet weather, and is not a fault. When the light is on, its heat dries the mist. However, if water condenses in the headlight, please go to the authorized dealer of BAIC.

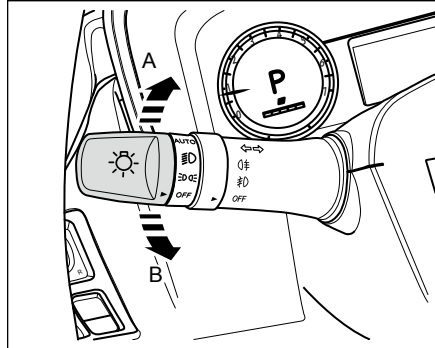
High and low beam switching



When the low beam of the headlight is turned on, push the left multi-function control lever in the opposite direction to the steering wheel, and the headlight will change from low beam to high beam, and the blue indicator light  on the combination instrument will be on. Then reset the left control lever, and the headlight will change from high beam to low beam.

Overtaking flash signal

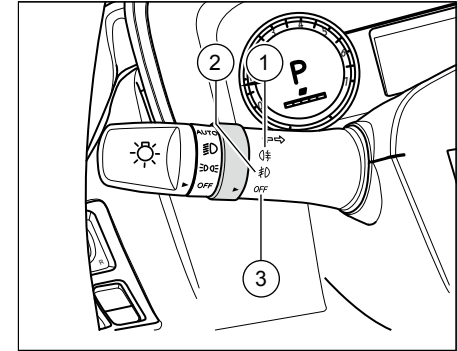
No matter what the position of the light switch knob is, if the left multi-function lever is pulled toward the steering wheel, the high beam of the headlight will be turned on, and the joystick will automatically return to its original state after it is released.

Turn signal light



Toggle the left multi-function lever - arrow A- upward to turn on the right turn signal light, and the green indicator light  in the combination instrument flashes; Toggle the left multi-function lever - arrow B- downward to turn on the left steering light, and the green indicator light  in the combination instrument flashes. After completing the turning action, after the steering wheel is straightened, the light handle will automatically return to the original position, and the external turn signal light and the turn indicator light in the combination instrument will go out. Gently move the control lever up or down to half gear to signal a lane change, release the

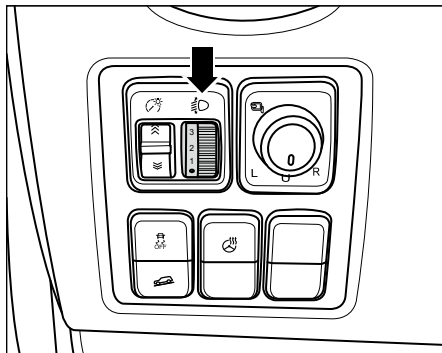
control lever and the turn signal light will go out.



Fog light control switch

When the light switch is in the small light position or low beam position, turn the fog light control knob to position -2-, and the front fog light will be turned on; Turn the fog light control knob to position -1-, the control knob will automatically return to position -2-, and the front and rear fog lights will be turned on; Turn the control knob again to position -1-, and the rear fog light will go out. When the fog light control knob points to position -3-, the front and rear fog lights are turned off, and the rear fog lights cannot be turned on separately.

Manual adjustment of headlight height



The angle of the low beam depends on the weight distribution of passengers and luggage inside the vehicle. The height of the headlights is adjusted to ensure the view of the road surface, provide sufficient lighting for the front of the vehicle, and do not cause dizziness to other road users. As shown by the arrow in the figure, the headlight height manual adjustment roller is located in the instrument panel switch group.

Using the following road conditions as a reference, adjust the light height of the headlights by turning the rollers up and down:

- Position '0'

Only for the driver, or the driver and passengers (without luggage).

- Position '1'

All seats are full.

- Position '2'

All seats are fully occupied, and the load of the trunk is evenly distributed (reaching the allowable axle load of the rear axle and not exceeding the maximum allowable loading mass).

- Position '3'

Only for the passenger seated and the luggage compartment distributes the load evenly (up to the permissible axle load of the rear axle and not exceeding the maximum permissible load mass).

High beam delay

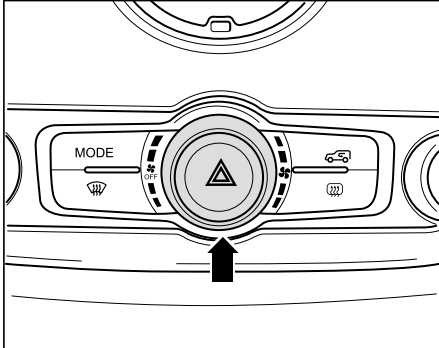
The high beam delay function can provide you with lighting by the headlights after you leave the vehicle.

Within 5 minutes after the start / stop button is in the "OFF" position, if the position light (or low beam light) is quickly turned on and off, the light delay function will start, and the headlights will automatically light up to illuminate the road ahead for you. The duration of headlight on can be set by the instrument information center. For details, see "Information Center".

Reminder that the lights are not turned off

After turning off the one-button start switch, if the lights are not turned off, there will be a beep when the driver's door opens.

Hazard warning light



As shown in the figure, the hazard warning light switch is located in the central control switch group.

In the event of emergency, using the hazard warning lights can cause other road users' attention to avoid leading to traffic accidents. Turn on the hazard warning lights in one of the following conditions:

1. Your vehicle breaks down due to a technical fault.
2. At the end of traffic flow during traffic jam.

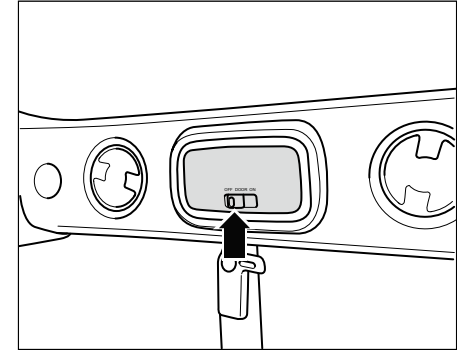
3. In emergency.
 4. Towing another vehicle or being towed.
- After the hazard warning light is turned on, all turn signal lights light up at the same time. And two turn signal indicator lights on cluster and all indicator lights in hazard warning switch also light up, and make a rhythmic prompt tone. The hazard warning lights still work when the push-button start switch is turned off.

Attention

- **Long-term use of hazard warning lights will consume battery power, even if the one-button start switch is turned off, it will also consume battery power.**
- **Follow the relevant laws and regulations when using the hazard warning lights.**
- **If the hazard warning lights fail, to cause other road users' attention, be sure to take other measures which comply with the relevant traffic laws and regulations.**

Interior lighting light

Reading light



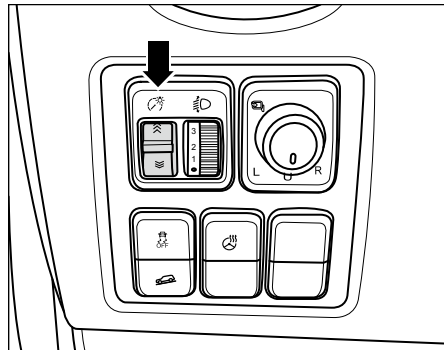
The reading light is located on the roof in the middle of the vehicle. As shown in the figure, the reading light switch has three positions:

DOOR: The reading light will automatically light up after the door is opened, and gradually go out after the door is closed for about 15 seconds. The interior lighting has a power-saving mode, and will automatically go out after lighting for about 8 minutes at the longest.

OFF: The reading light is off.

ON: No matter what state the door is in, the reading light is on.

Background brightness adjustment



As shown in the figure, the backlight brightness adjusting roller is located in the dashboard switch group on the driver's side. When the light control knob is located in the small light position or the low beam light position, the backlights of each button, instrument backlight, and radio backlight of the complete vehicle light up. Rotate the adjusting roller up to increase the backlight, and down to decrease it.

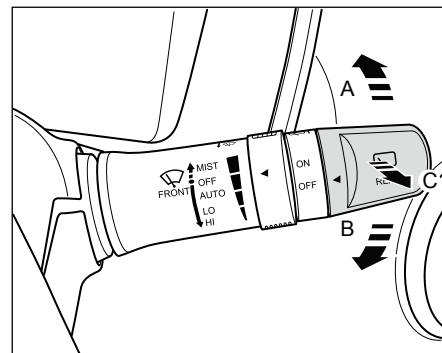
Tip

If the start/stop button is in the "OFF" position, the anti-leakage function is turned on: fog lights, headlights, reading lights will turn off after about 8 minutes. If any one or more of the fog lights, headlights and reading light switches are turned on again within 8 minutes, the timer will be turned on again; if the remote control is locked within 8 minutes, the corresponding lights will be turned off.

Windshield wiper

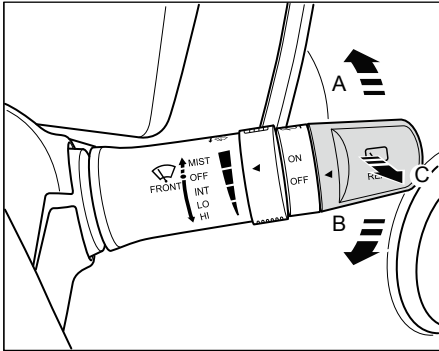
Front windshield wipers (with automatic wipers)*

The controls for the windscreen wipers are located on the right-hand multifunction lever behind the steering wheel.



Front windshield wipers (without automatic wipers)*

The controls for the windscreen wipers are located on the right-hand multifunction lever behind the steering wheel.



Inching and wiping

In the "OFF" position, push the right multi-function control lever in the direction of arrow A as shown in the figure to realize the inching and wiping of the front wiper, that is, operate the control lever once and the wiper will wipe once. After the push-up action is completed, the control lever will reset automatically.

AUTO (intermittent wiping) and continuous wiping*

In the "OFF" position, press the right multi-function control lever in the direction of arrow B- to 1 gear, the windshield wipers are in the AUTO gear, and the wiper speed is automatically adjusted according to the amount of rain (some models do not have an AUTO gear, which is Intermittent wiping); press down the 2nd gear to start low-speed continuous wiping; press down the 3rd gear to start high-speed continuous wiping.

INT gear *

When the control lever is turned to "INT", the front wiper will be in intermittent wiping state (this function is only available for specific vehicle configurations, and some vehicle models are in automatic mode).

LO

When the control lever is turned to "LO", the front wiper wipes slowly.

HI

When the control lever is turned to "HI", the front wiper wipes quickly.

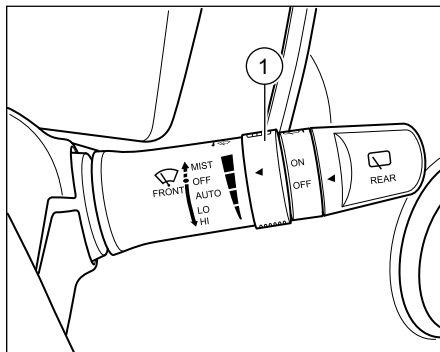
Front windshield cleaning

Move the right multi-function control lever in the direction of arrow C as shown in the figure (toward the driver's arms), the windshield washer nozzle will spray the windshield cleaner, and then the wiper will automatically cycle for several times.

If the one-button start switch is turned off during the cleaning of the windshield washer, the wiper will continue to operate until it stops after returning to its original position.

In the wiper cleaning mode, if the position of the right multi-function control lever is changed, the wiper will carry out the corresponding function. The exception is: if the intermittent wipe mode is selected, the wipers will not start to enter the intermittent wipe mode until the corresponding wiper cleaning mode has been completed.

At the end of the wiper cleaning cycle, if the wiper control lever is at any position except "off", the wiper will continue to execute the corresponding mode after completing the wiper cleaning cycle.



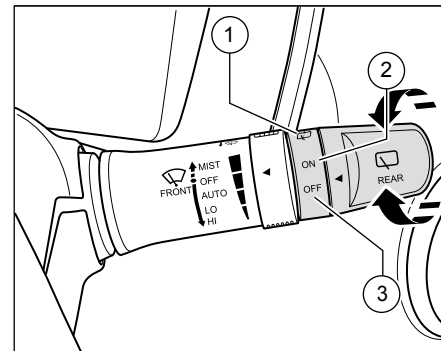
Intermittent wiping frequency

As shown in the figure, turn the end position -1- of the right control lever to control the intermittent wiping frequency of the windshield wiper. Rotate upward (clockwise) to reduce the frequency, and downward (counterclockwise) to increase the intermittent wiping frequency.

Attention

- It is forbidden to use wiper when the windshield is dry.
- Under low temperature or hot conditions, ensure that the wiper blade is not frozen/bonded or fixed on the windshield before wiper operation.
- In winter, snow and ice should be removed from the wiper arms and wipers, including areas where wipers operate.

Rear windshield wiper



The figure shows the rear windshield wiper control component, which is located on the right multifunction lever. There are several switch positions as follows:

1. Cleaning of rear windshield.

When the control lever is rotated to position -1-, the windshield cleaner is sprayed to the rear windshield by the rear windshield washer nozzle, and then the rear windshield wiper will automatically cycle for several times. The control ring will reset automatically after release.

2. ON

When ON is in this position, the rear windshield wiper starts and carry out continuous low-speed wiping action.

3. OFF

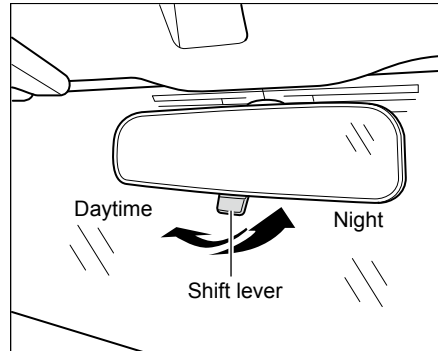
When OFF is in this position, the rear windshield wiper is closed.

Rear-view mirror

This vehicle is equipped with a manual anti-dazzle interior mirror and an automatic anti-dazzle and interior mirror with a streaming video function.

Keep the mirror surface of the interior rearview mirror clean and adjust it to the best visual angle. Before driving, adjust the position of mirrors.

Manual anti-glare in-vehicle rearview mirror



The manual anti-dazzle in-vehicle rearview mirror has two positions, one for day and one for night..

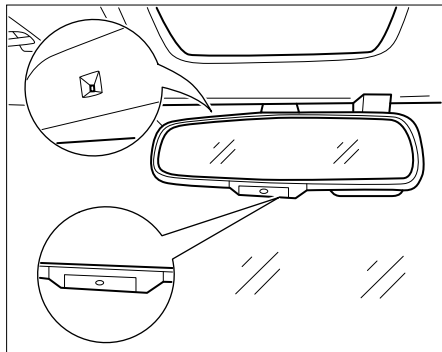
The interior rear-view mirror can be adjusted by moving the adjusting lever forward and backward. At night, the lever on the mirror base can be moved to the "night" position behind the vehicle to reduce the dizziness caused by the rear vehicle lights; Move the lever towards the front of the vehicle, and the interior rearview mirror will return to the initial position, that is, the "day" position, to restore the normal view.

i Tip

- **Some models are only equipped with manual anti-dazzle interior rear-view mirrors.**

Streaming media rearview mirror system *

This vehicle is equipped with an interior rearview mirror with automatic anti-glare and streaming media video function.



The automatic anti-glare interior rearview mirror can automatically adjust the color depth of the interior rear-view mirror according to the intensity of the front and rear lights, so as to reduce the dizziness caused by the rear vehicle lights.

⚠ WARNING

- **To ensure the normal function of the anti-glare sensors on both sides of the interior rear-view mirror, it is forbidden to touch or cover the sensor with fingers or objects.**
- **To ensure the normal function of the streaming media system camera, it is forbidden to cover the camera lens area with objects. In order to make the camera image clear, please clean the lens and the rear windshield timely when they are dirty.**
- **The streaming media rearview mirror system will not display children, pedestrians, cyclists, cars coming from both sides, animals or other objects outside the view of the camera, under the bumper or under the vehicle. The perceived distance may be different from the actual distance. Do not turn based solely on the streaming camera screen. Lack of attention before steering may result in injury, death or vehicle damage. Always inspect the area behind and around the vehicle before turning and braking.**

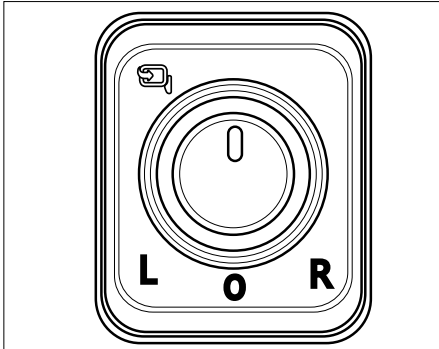
The interior rear-view mirror can display the image of the rear-view mirror camera. The selection of the interior rearview mirror screen brightness can be set on the radio navigation entertainment system.

The user can turn off the display of camera video by the switch button on the interior rearview mirror, so as to switch to a physical mirror surface rearview mirror.

Exterior rear-view mirror

This vehicle is equipped with an electric exterior rear-view mirror, which has the functions of electric adjustment and electric folding.

Electric adjustment of outside rearview mirror



As shown in the figure, the outside rearview mirror is controlled by the rearview mirror adjustment switch, which is located in the driver's side dashboard switch group.

Turn the adjustment knob to the left to select the left exterior rear-view mirror, and to the right to select the right exterior rear-view mirror.

Then you can turn the adjustment knob up, down, left and right to adjust the position of the exterior rear-view mirror on the corresponding side. Pull up and down to adjust the vertical position of the rearview mirror, and left and right to adjust the horizontal position of the rearview mirror.

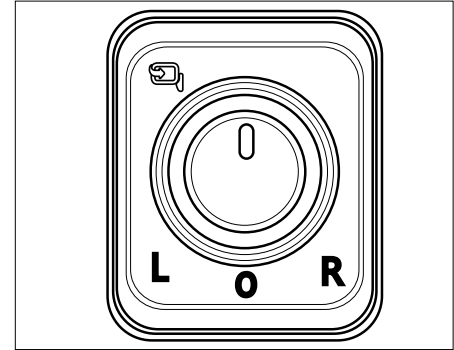
Attention

Do not use too much force when rotating the rear-view mirror adjustment switch knob. Too much force may cause the knob to fail.

Attention

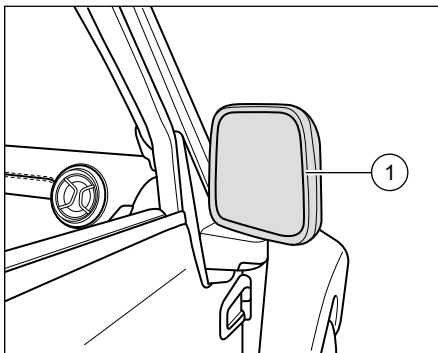
The view displayed in the rearview mirror may interfere with the driver's ability to accurately position the vehicle behind him. Please pay special attention!

Electric folding of exterior rearview mirror *



As shown in the picture, the electric folding button of the exterior rearview mirror is located in the switch group of the dashboard on the driver's side.

Rotate the switch knob to the top, the exterior rearview mirror s are folded electrically, rotated to other gears, and the exterior rearview mirror s are electrically unfolded.



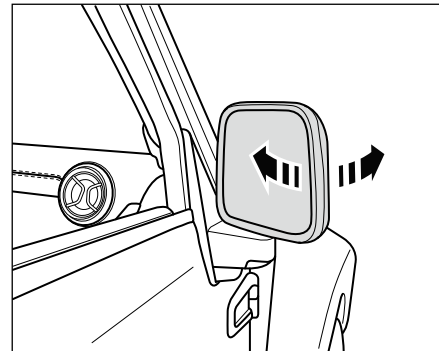
 Attention

It is prohibited to drive the vehicle with any of the exterior rearview mirrors -1- folded back, as doing so will result in reduced visual perception, which may result in an accident!

 Tip

- If the exterior rearview mirror electric adjustment function fails, you can gently push the outer edge of the mirror to adjust it.
- If the exterior rearview mirror frame is shifted due to external force, it must be fully folded under power mode. Do not manually adjust the rearview mirror frame, otherwise the rearview mirror adjustment function will be affected.

Manual folding of exterior rearview mirror*

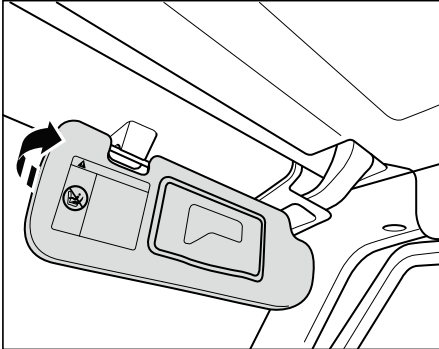


Push the exterior mirrors forward or backward to unfold or fold the exterior mirrors.

 Tip

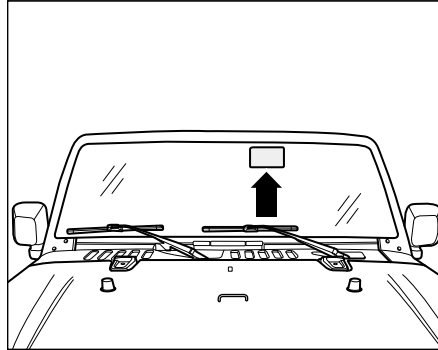
- Push the exterior rearview mirrors forward or backward to unfold or fold the exterior rearview mirrors.

Sun visor with vanity mirror



The sun visor on the driver's side/the front passenger's side can be pulled out of its holder and turned to the door in the direction indicated by Arrow to shield the sunlight from the window. (The sun visor on the passenger side is used as an example in the picture).

Automotive electronic mark microwave window



The microwave window is used to install automotive electronic marks, its installation position does not allow filming, heating wires, or antennas. It does not affect the driving vision and ensures the effective reading of data. The microwave window is allowed to be embodied in the form of pockmarks, and the black areas and pockmarks have no effect on the received signal of the electronic mark.

Seats and storage facilities

2

Significance of Correct Seat Adjustment

To get the most protection from the seat belts and airbags, adjust the seats properly.

Driver's seat or front passenger's seat can be adjusted according to the shape of passengers.

Before driving, observe the following requirements to adjust the front seat properly to make sure:

- You can maintain full control of the vehicle in an accurate, effective and safe manner.
- You sit in a correct posture, providing relaxation and indefatigability.
- You can get the most protection from the seat belt and airbags.

WARNING

Incorrect sitting posture will cause serious injury.

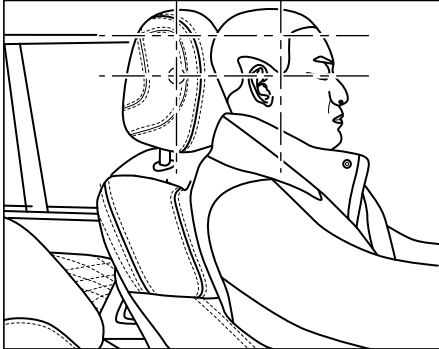
- **All drivers and passengers must sit in their respective seats.**
- **Be sure you and your passengers wear the seat belts and wear them properly.**
- **Make sure the child is restrained in the child restraint system properly.**
- **GND Adjust all the head restraints properly according to the height of the driver and passengers and be sure the driver and passengers wear the seat belts to get the best protection.**
- **When driving, always place your feet within the footwell well. Do not let your feet rest on the dashboard, stretch out the window or curl over the seat. Incorrect sitting posture will cause serious injury when the airbags inflating.**

WARNING

- **The seat can only be adjusted when the vehicle stops. If the seat is adjusted during driving, it will cause accidents easily.**
- **For the driver and front passenger, the torso should always be kept at least 25 cm from the steering wheel or dashboard. If the distance is less than 25 cm, the airbag system will not function fully - danger of injury!**

Headrest

It is of great importance to adjust headrest correctly for protecting passengers and reducing accident injury.



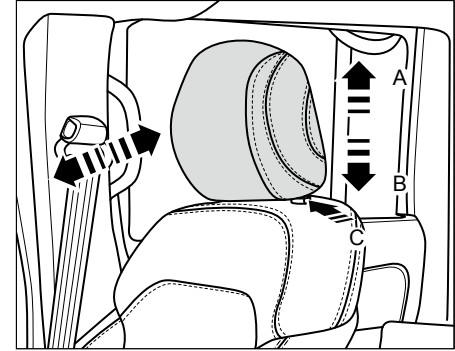
Adjust the head restraint so the center of the back of your head rests against the center of the restraint.

Failure to do so as shown in the figure can cause serious injury during a crash.

⚠ WARNING

- **Driving with the head restraints removed or improperly-adjusted/ installed can cause serious injury during a crash.**
- **Have passengers adjust their head restraints according to their body types.**
- **Improperly-adjusted head restraints will increase the chance of being injured during a crash or emergency braking.**
- **Properly adjust the head restraint until it fits your height. The top of the restraint must be even with the top of your head as far as possible. The back of your head should rest against the restraint as far as possible.**

Adjusting front seat head restraints



For the purposes of safety and comfort, please regulate your headrest before driving.

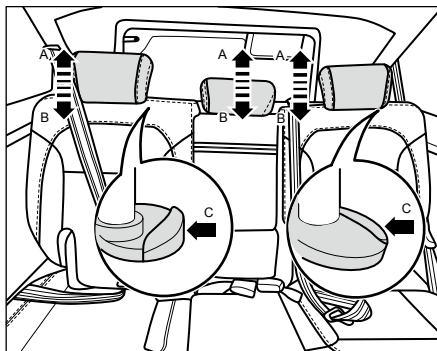
1. Raise the head restraint in the direction indicated by – Arrow A- by pulling up on both sides of the head restraint to the desired position.
2. Grasp both sides of the head restraint, and press and hold the button in the direction of –Arrow C- and press the head restraint down in the direction of – Arrow A- to the desired position.

3. Headrest forward and backward adjustment *: When the passenger sits on the seat, hold both sides of the head restraint with both hands at the same time, and adjust the head restraint forward to a proper position; Adjust the head restraint to the 1st gear and continue to adjust the head restraint forward. The head restraint can return to the last position.

i Tip

- **The front seat head restraint of some models does not have head restraint forward and backward adjustment.**

Vehicles with three head restraints



For the purposes of safety and comfort, please regulate your headrest before driving.

1. Raise the head restraint in the direction indicated by – Arrow A– by pulling up on both sides of the head restraint to the desired position.
2. Grasp both sides of the head restraint, and press and hold the button in the direction of –Arrow C– and press the head restraint down in the direction of –Arrow A– to the desired position.

⚠ WARNING

During traveling condition, never remove the headrest, to avoid serious injury when an accident occurs.

- **After the installation of headrest, you must adjust the headrest according to your shape, to obtain optimal protection.**
- **Please carefully read and follow relevant warnings and instructions.**

Seat

Front-row seat

Driver's seat

WARNING

When the driver's airbag is inflated, great pressure will be generated, especially when the driver is very close to the airbag, which may cause serious injury or even death.

When inflating within 50-75mm in front of the dangerous area of the driver's airbag, it can provide you with enough safety space at a distance of 25cm from the driver's airbag. The safe distance is from the center of the steering wheel to the driver's breast bone. Use the following methods to adjust the driver seat if the distance is less than 25cm:

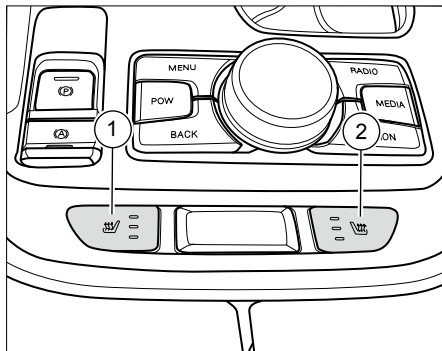
- Move the seat as backward as possible, while ensuring that you can still step on the pedals comfortably.

- Tilt the seat back slightly backrest. Although vehicle designs vary, for most drivers, even when the driver's seat is moved to the furthest forward position, the seat back can be reclined slightly to achieve a distance of 25 cm. If the driver can not get a clear view of the front road condition because of tilting the seat (can also use Conduct or lifting seat if the vehicle has this) function.
- If the angle of the steering wheel can be adjusted please tilt it down so that let the airbag facing breast other than head and neck.

Front passenger seat

WARNING

The passenger airbag also has considerable pressure when deployed, so serious injury or even death can result if the passenger is very close to the airbag. Adjust the seat back so that the front passenger seat is as far away from the airbag as possible.

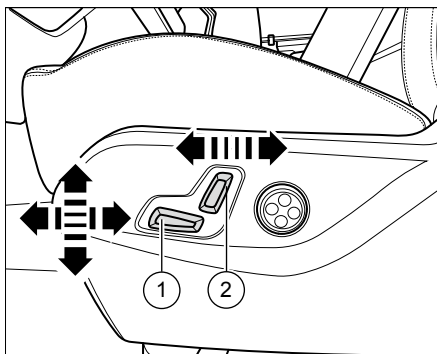
Front-row seat heating*

1. Driver's seat heating button
2. Front passenger's seat heating button

When the start / stop button is in the "run" mode, the three working indicators of the seat heating switch at the driver's and co driver's side will be on. At this time, the seat temperature is at the highest gear. Press it once, the indicator lights will go out in sequence from top to bottom, the seat temperature will be lowered by one gear, and so on, the switch button will be cycled. Depending on the model, some models may not be equipped with this switch.

Electric adjustment of front-row seat *

The driver's seat of this vehicle has a 6-way power adjustment function, and the passenger seat has a 4-way power adjustment function.

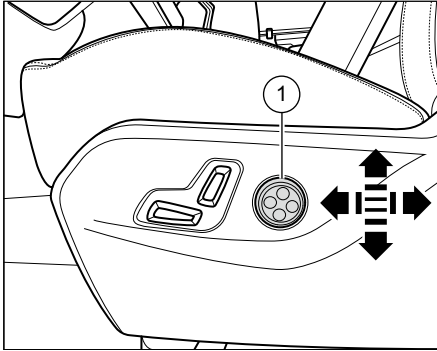
**Adjustment of driver's seat:**

Toggle switch -1-, according to the direction of the left - arrow - in the picture, you can adjust the seat height or move forward and backward at will.

Front and rear toggle switch -2-, according to the direction of the -arrow - on the right side of the picture, you can adjust the backrest angle of the seat back.

i Tip

- **Seat heating and power adjustment are not available for the front seats on some models.**



Electric lumbar support (if equipped):

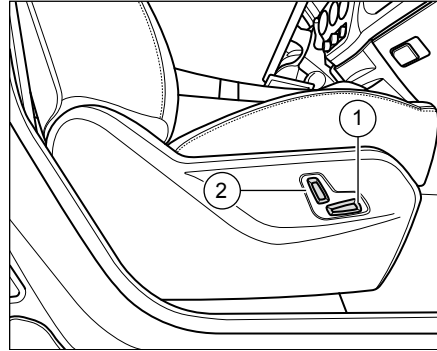
The electric lumbar support control -1- is located on the outside of the driver's seat cushion.

Press the upper part of the control button to move the lumbar support upwards;

Press the lower part of the control button, the lumbar support moves down;

Press the front of the control button, the lumbar support moves forward;

Press the back of the control button, the lumbar support moves backward;



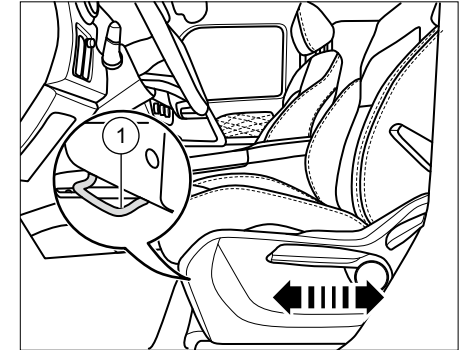
Electric passenger seat adjustment:*

Push switch -1- back and forth to adjust the seat position forward and backward.

Front and rear toggle switch -2- upper, to adjust the backrest angle of the seat back.

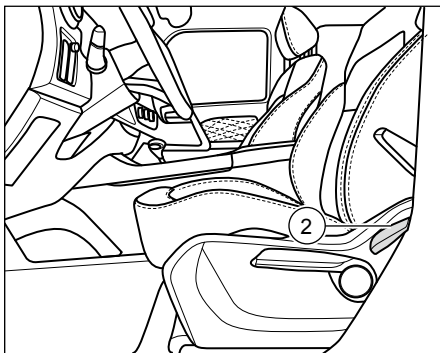
Manual adjustment of front row seat

The driver's seat of this vehicle has a 6-way adjustment function, and the passenger seat has a 4-way adjustment function.



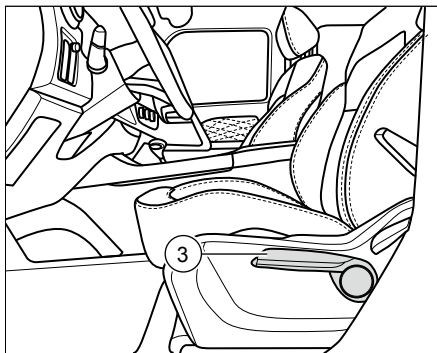
Front and rear adjustments of the seat

The two front seats can be adjusted back and forth, taking the driver's side as an example. Pull up the adjusting rod -1- under the front of the seat, and adjust the seat to a proper position. Release the adjusting pull rod and slightly move the seat backward and forward until the seat lock is clipped firmly.



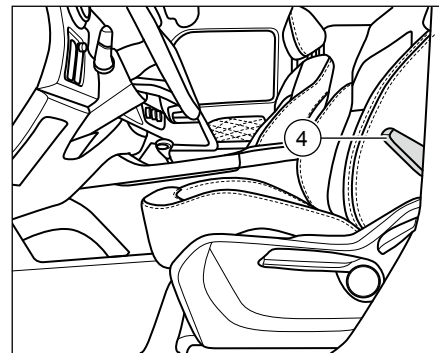
Seat backrest adjustment

The backrest of both front seats can also be adjusted. The picture here takes the driver's seat as an example. If the driver and co driver want to adjust the seat back, they need to lean forward slightly, gently pull up the horizontal part -2- on the seat back angle adjustment handle, tilt back and stick to the seat back until it reaches a comfortable position. Release the handle and the seat back will be locked in this position.



Seat height adjustment (driver's seat only):

Press the height adjustment handle -3- back and forth, and the seat surface will move downward; Pull the height adjustment handle back and forth upwards, and the seat seat moves upwards.



Backrest lumbar adjustment (driver's seat only):

Pull up the adjustment handle-4-back and forth upwards to increase lumbar support; press the adjustment handle- back and forth downwards to lower the lumbar support

Attention

- After adjusting the seat position, try sliding the seat back and forth to make sure it is locked in place.
- Push the upper part of the seat back back and forth to ensure that the seat back is firmly locked, otherwise it may interfere with the normal operation of the seat belt.
- Do not place objects under the driver's or front passenger seat, which may interfere with the seat locking mechanism or accidentally push the seat position lever upwards causing sudden seat movement, which are especially likely to result in loss of vehicle control while driving.

Attention

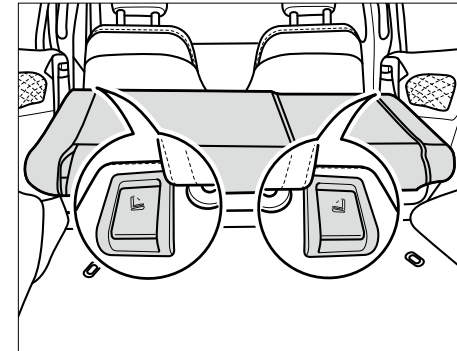
- The seat position set by the manufacturer: the front and rear adjustment stroke is 240mm, and the seat design position can be adjusted forward by 200mm and backward by 40mm; The design position of the driver's seat can be adjusted upward by 20mm and downward by 25mm; The design angle of the front backrest is 22°, and the design position can be adjusted backward by 50° and forward by 25°; The headrest with 4-way adjustment can be adjusted forward and backward in 3 levels of about 26mm.

WARNING

- Do not adjust the seat during driving because the unexpected shift of the seat is liable to the out-of-control of the vehicle.
- Adjust the seat so that it does not hit the passenger or luggage.

Rear-row seats**Rear-row seat folding**

This vehicle is equipped with rear-row 4/6 split seats. If you need to place bulk items in the rear-row seats, you can fold and flip the rear-row seat backs.



As shown in the above figure, pull up the two folding buckles of the rear-row seat back to control the seat reclining function of the left or right rear respectively.

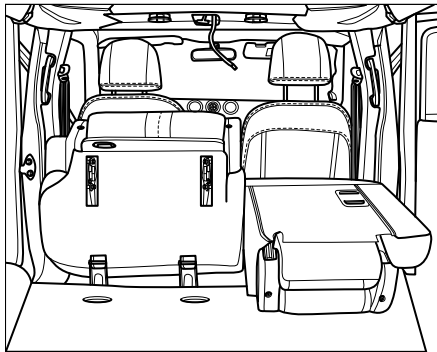
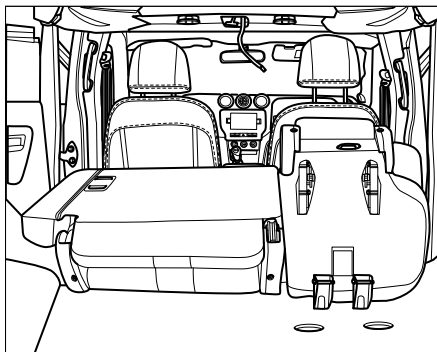
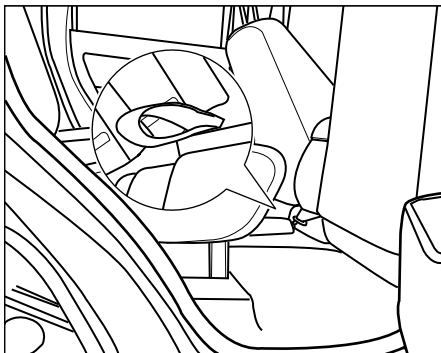
Fold the seat back into full contact with the seat cushion.

i Tip

Before folding the rear-row seats, it is necessary to adjust the front-row seat position to ensure the folding space of the rear-row seats.

Overturn

Pull down the seat strap under both sides of the seat as shown in the figure, and then turn the seat up.



Then, turn the seat upward and forward to the limit position to turn the rear seat over.

When the seat on one side turns over twice, stick the seat belt buckle to the felt on the side of the seat on the other side.

The advanced 4/6 split seat can meet different space requirements on both sides, so as to meet the living load.

When restoration is required, reverse the sequence. After restoration, push the seat to confirm whether the seat is fully locked and fixed.

Design requirements for backrest angle:

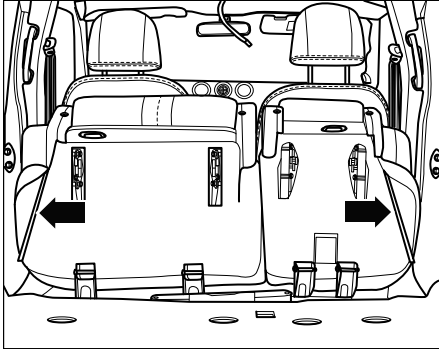
The design angle of the backrest is 23° , which can be adjusted forward by 4° and backward by 10° .

i Tip

Push the upper part of the seat back back and forth to ensure that the seat back is firmly locked, otherwise it may interfere with the normal operation of the seat belt.

Attention

When the rear seat that needs to be turned over carefully during driving falls down, the fixed hook in the cloth pocket at the bottom of the seat should be hung on the upper armrest of the body side guard as shown by the arrow.

**WARNING**

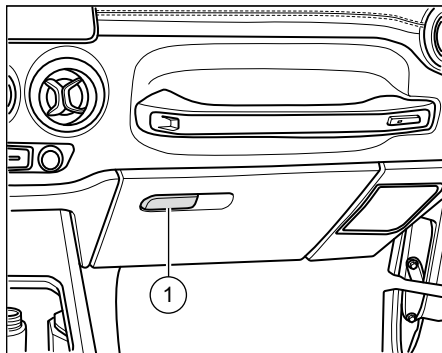
- It is very dangerous to ride in the luggage area. In a collision accident, the passengers sitting in this area are likely to be seriously injured or even killed.
- Ensure that every passenger in the vehicle is seated on the seat and fasten the safety belt correctly.
- In a collision accident, if the seat is not properly locked to the fixture, the passenger in the vehicle may be injured. Make sure that the seat is completely locked at all times.

WARNING

- To prevent personal injury, passengers should not sit in the rear baggage area, nor fold the rear seats.
- The rear baggage space is for carrying goods only, not passenger seats. The passenger shall sit on the seat and fasten the seat belt.

Storage facilities

Front passenger's glove box

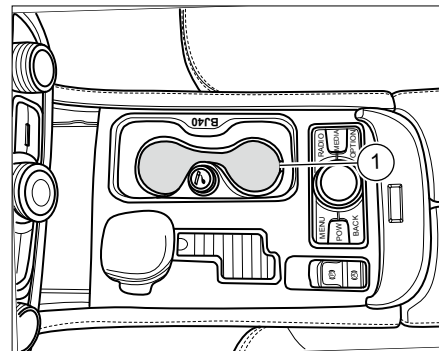


Pull the handle -1- to open the glove box, push the glove box lid up to close the glove box.

Attention

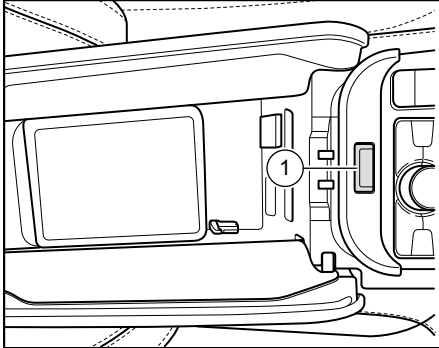
- When storing liquids in the glove box, store only tightly closed or unopened containers. Because the spilled liquid from the container without cover will damage the decorations and electrical parts in the glove box and instrument panel.
- The glove box should be closed when driving, otherwise the articles in the glove box may fly out and easily hurt the passengers during emergency braking or accident.

Cup holder



The cup holder -1- is located in the front central channel console, where you can also place an ashtray (purchased by yourself).

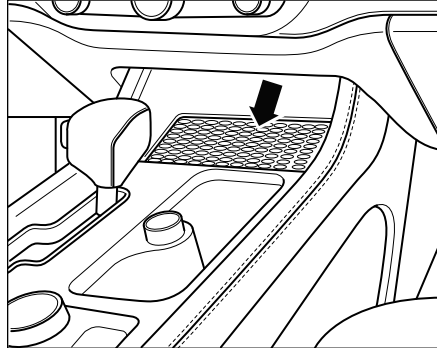
glove box inside the front central handle



As shown in the figure, press the switch -1- near the front passenger's side and lift the storage box cover upward, that is, open the upper storage box of the front central armrest.

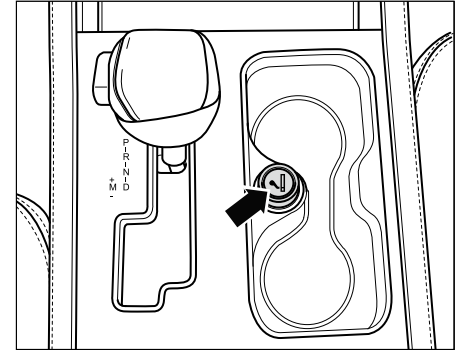
Place the storage box lid downward to close the upper storage box of the front center armrest.

Small storage box



This storage box (shown with the arrow) is located next to the cigarette lighter and can store small items.

Front-row integrated power outlet (cigarette lighter/12V power supply)



The cigarette lighter (arrow position shown) is located below the instrument control panel.

1. Press the cigarette lighter button.
2. Wait until the cigarette lighter pops up automatically.
3. Pull out the cigarette lighter and light the cigarette with the red hot heating coil.
4. After use, re-insert the cigarette lighter back into the socket.
5. When used as a power outlet, the cigarette lighter can be connected to electrical equipment, such as a

mobile phone. Certain electrical accessories may not be compatible with the cigarette lighter socket and, if incompatibility occurs, may cause the vehicle or adapter fuse to blow.

Precautions:

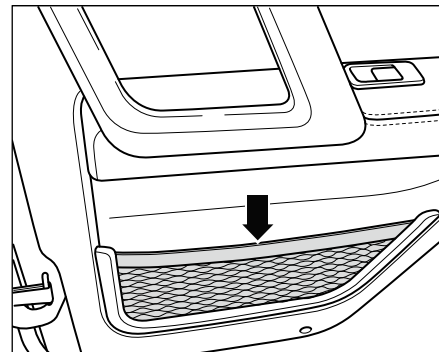
1. Frequent plugging and unplugging of the plug on the cigarette lighter leads to functional failure of the cigarette lighter. Please try to uniquely use the cigarette lighter, and do not frequently switch between the functions of the cigarette lighter and the power socket.
2. Pressing the cigarette lighter when it is heating will make the cigarette lighter unable to disengage the heating core when it is very hot. Overheating can damage the cigarette lighter or heating element, or even cause the fuse to blow. Do not press the cigarette lighter when it is heated.
3. Adding any electrical equipment to the vehicle may damage the vehicle or cause other parts to work abnormally. The resulting repairs are not covered by the warranty. Do not use equipment with a maximum rated power exceeding 120W. Before adding electrical equipment, please consult the authorized after-sales service center of

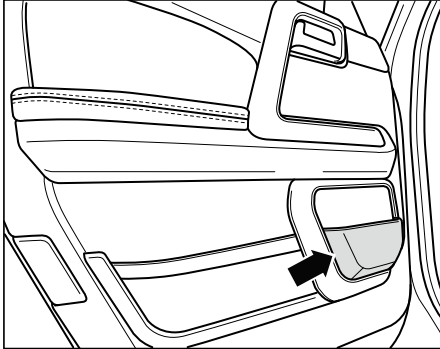
BAIC Motor.

4. Be sure to choose electrical equipment without contact between the power plug and the metal shrapnel inside the cigarette lighter, otherwise, it will cause the function of the cigarette lighter to fail.
5. The cigarette lighter is used as a power socket, and improper use may cause damage, which is not covered by the warranty.
6. Do not hang any type of attachment or auxiliary bracket on the plug.

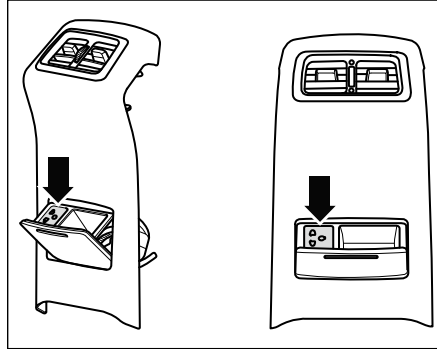
Door glove bag

There is a sundries net bag-arrow-under the doors on both sides (different models have different configurations), which can be used to store small items such as maps. The bearing weight shall not be greater than 0.6 kg. The picture here takes the right door as an example.



Driver's door storage box

The storage box is located under the driver's side door.

220V power port *

It is located under the rear air outlet

1. 220V power supply can only be used when the engine is running. Connect the electrical plug and insert the plug into the socket to the limit position;
2. Please use the plug matched with the power socket to avoid damaging the socket;
3. Please use only accessory products approved by BAIC;

4. When the green light of LED indicator light is on, the 220V power supply is in normal working state, while the red light flashes, the 220V power supply is in abnormal state. Please go to the after-sales service center for inspection and maintenance in time.

 **Attention**

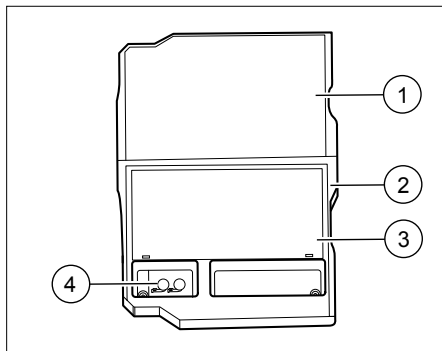
- **Do not use electrical appliances exceeding 150W, otherwise the electrical system may be damaged;**
- **Improper use of sockets may cause serious personal injury or fire, so do not leave children alone in the vehicle;**
- **Do not spill liquid on the power outlet, otherwise it may lead to dangerous accidents.**

Multifunctional storage compartment *

The multifunctional storage compartment of trunk provides storage function and sleep space for passengers. Removable, optional.

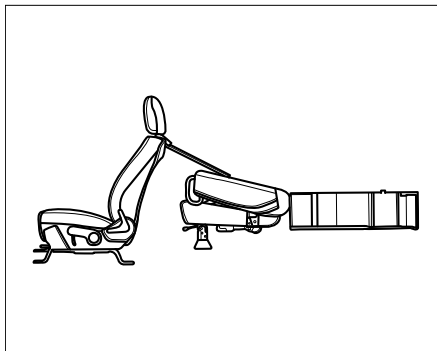
Composition

The multi-functional storage compartment includes: 1-cover plate, 2-body, 3-extension plate and 4-strap.



Use

The cover plate and extension plate can be opened, and the lower part is the storage space. After the second row of seats are laid down, the extension plate is fixed between the driver and front passenger seats and the second row of seats through straps, and the most comfortable lying angle is obtained by the front and rear adjustment function and backrest adjustment function of the driver and front passenger seats.



Removal

Remove the cover plate and extension plate, remove the four bolts and gaskets at the four corners of the compartment body with a Phillips screwdriver, and then remove the multifunctional storage compartment of the trunk. Install the high-strength hook with the removed bolts.

Accessories and Modifications

When the vehicle leaves the factory, data labels and signs are pasted on the front wall of the front engine compartment, B-pillar and other components, which are marked with important data and information about the use of the vehicle. Do not remove or damage such labels and signboards. Always keep the data and information on the labels and signboards clear and readable.

This vehicle is designed with the latest safety technique to ensure excellent active safety and passive safety. Therefore, to maintain the vehicle's excellent characteristics, before you make any modifications or add any accessories, be sure to consult the authorized dealer of BAIC.

We recommend you always use the accessories and parts which have been designed and approved for your vehicle. In case of installation of parts that are not approved by our company, our company will not undertake any quality guarantee.

WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

If the vehicle phone, alarm device, two-way radio communication equipment, and low-power sound system are correctly installed, it will not interfere with the computer control system on the vehicle, such as anti lock braking system (ABS).

Before installing any accessory:

Make sure the accessory does not obscure any lights, or interfere with proper vehicle operation or performance.

Modifying Your Vehicle

Removing parts from your vehicle, or replacing components with non-BAIC components could seriously affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and reliability.

EXAMPLE:

- Larger or smaller wheels and tires can interfere with the operation of your vehicle's anti-lock brake system and other systems.
- Modifying your steering wheel or any other part of your vehicle's safety features can make the systems ineffective.

 **WARNING**

- **Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed. We recommend you always use the approved accessories and spare parts with strictly-verified adaptability, reliability and safety.**
- **Improper maintenance or modifications can weaken the protection from airbags, cause the system failure and fatal accidents. Do not install or connect the beverage cup holder, phone holder and other accessories onto the cover of airbag module or in the range of action of airbags.**
- **Improper operation or modification of the vehicle will affect the function of the airbag system and cause serious casualties.**
- **Do not install non-GAC Motor wheels and tires.**

 **WARNING**

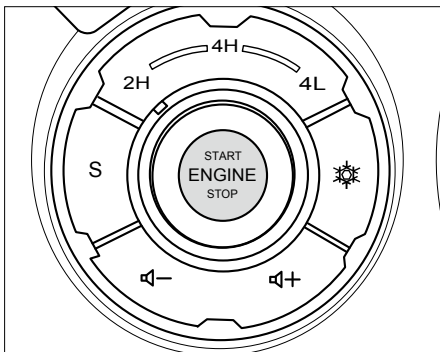
- **Modifying the front of the vehicle and the front engine compartment can deteriorate pedestrian protection performance of the vehicle and violate the road regulations.**

3. Drive Guide

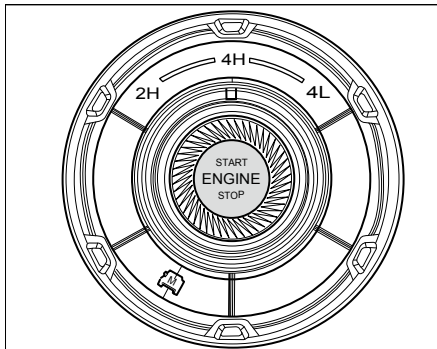
Starting and Driving	150
Transmission system.....	165
Brake system	167
Park assistance system.....	181
Driving skills	185

Starting and Driving

Start/Stop button (Mode I)*



Start/Stop button (Mode II)*



The start/stop button is located in the center of the A/C vents in the center console.

Power Mode Switch:

Automatic transmission models: Put the shift lever in the P or N position, when the brake pedal is not pressed; Manual transmission models: When the clutch pedal is not pressed; Press the start/stop button, the power mode will be switched in the following order:

- When the button is pressed for the first time: the "RUN" mode is turned on, the meter lights up, and all electrical equipment such as the display screen are on;
- When the button is pressed for the second time: "ACC" mode is turned on, and accessory circuits such as radio and cigarette lighter are connected.
- The third time the button is pressed, it returns to "OFF" mode.

Press the engine start/stop button successively to switch circularly among the three modes of "OFF," → "RUN," → "ACC".

Steering system

Do not hold the steering wheel in the dead position (turn left or right) for more than 15 seconds, which will damage the power steering system.

For users in cold regions with ambient temperature lower than -20°C , it is recommended to use pandongxing hydraulic transmission oil CHF 202 power steering fluid.

i Tip

- **Automatic transmission models: the engine can be started only when the shift lever is in P or N and the brake pedal is pressed.**
- **Manual transmission models: the clutch pedal must be pressed before the engine can be started. For safety reasons, it is strongly recommended to put the shift lever in the neutral position before starting the engine.**
- **Press the start / stop button to start the engine or switch the power mode, but it must be ensured that the smart remote key is placed in the effective area that can be detected by the vehicle.**

Electronic burglar alarm function

The electronic burglar alarm function is used to prevent others from illegally stealing vehicles. The transceiver chip in the remote key is equipped with an electronic code which is sent to the vehicle. The engine can be started only when the electronic code of the transceiver chip is consistent with the registered vehicle ID code. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

Driving automatic locking function / flameout unlocking

When all doors are locked, after unlocking the doors with the smart remote key, none of the four doors and two covers has been opened within 30 seconds, and the central door lock will automatically lock. When the vehicle speed is higher than the set value during driving, the central door lock will automatically lock all doors. When the vehicle stalls, the door will unlock automatically.

smart remote key backup start function

If the vehicle is in a strong signal interference area, or when the battery of the smart remote key is low, when you press the "Start/Stop button" to try to start the vehicle, the "smart remote key not found" will be displayed on the trip computer display on the instrument. At this time, the standby start function is required.

Vehicles with automatic transmission:

When the gear is in the "P/N" gear position, press the brake pedal, place the smart remote key in the key identification position designated by the cup holder, and press the start/stop button to start the engine.

Vehicles with manual transmission:

When the gear is in the "neutral" gear position, press the clutch pedal, place the smart remote key in the key identification position designated by the cup holder, and press the start/stop button to start the engine.

Emergency shutdown function

When the normal mode cannot stop the engine, the emergency shutdown mode can be used. Step on the brake, press the start/stop button twice within 2s or long press the start/stop button for 2s to stop the engine.

Start the engine.

Start the engine by the start/stop button. When the smart remote key is within the effective detection range, the starting method of the model equipped with the start/stop function is as follows:

Manual transmission models:

- Press and hold the clutch pedal to the bottom; Place the shift lever in the neutral position;
- Press the start / stop button once to start the engine.

Automatic transmission models

- Press the brake pedal to the bottom and hold it;
- Place the shift lever at the P or n position;
- Press the start / stop button once to start the engine.

Diesel engine models:

- After entering the vehicle, press the start / stop button once, and when the conditions are met, the instrument engine air intake preheating indicator will light up;
- After the preheating indicator is off, start the vehicle according to the above manual or automatic transmission models.

Tip

- **If the engine does not start successfully within about 10 seconds, release the start / stop button, wait for 10 to 15 seconds, and then repeat the normal start procedure.**
- **If the vehicle fails to start successfully for many times, please go to the authorized dealer of BAIC to check the vehicle to eliminate the fault.**

Attention

When starting the cold engine, because it takes several seconds for the engine oil to reach the normal working pressure, running noise may occur. This is a normal phenomenon, so there is no need to worry.

 **WARNING**

- **Do not start or run the engine in a poorly-ventilated place or closed space. Otherwise, the colorless, odorless and poisonous exhaust gas will cause personal coma or even suffocation.**
- **When the engine is running, do not leave the vehicle alone without supervision.**
- **Do not start the engine with any auxiliary starting device. Doing so can cause explosion or the engine to race, resulting in personal injury or death.**
- **To prevent damage to the starter, do not start the engine for more than 10 seconds each time. Wait for 10 to 15 seconds before starting the next time.**

Vehicle starting

The idle speed is related to the engine coolant temperature. The engine idle speed gradually decreases to the normal idle speed as the coolant temperature increases. In cold weather, it may take a long time for the engine to drop from high idle speed to low idle speed. If you want to start at high idle speed, you should run the engine for at least 15 seconds before starting. At the same time, the speed of releasing clutch pedal or brake pedal should not be too fast to prevent the vehicle from suddenly rushing forward and causing accidents.

Shut down the engine.

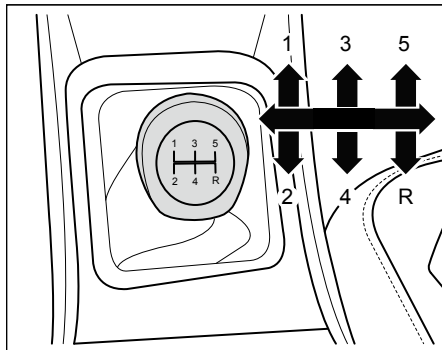
Stop the vehicle, apply the parking brake, put the shift lever in neutral, and the automatic transmission model should be in P, release the brake or clutch pedal, press the start/stop button, and turn off the engine.

The start/stop button is placed in the "ACC" position and the engine will stop.

 **Attention**

After running under heavy load, it is recommended to let the engine run at idle speed for a few minutes before shutting down. This allows the cooling system to continue working to lower the temperature of the engine.

Manual transmission (gasoline model) *

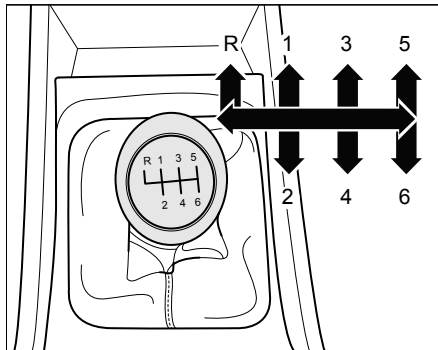


Press the clutch pedal down all the way and then start the engine.

The shift lever of the transmission is put into "1" gear from neutral, and the clutch pedal is slowly lifted so that the vehicle can start running.

When shifting up or down, make sure you push the clutch pedal down all the way, shift to the next gear, and let the pedal up gradually.

Manual transmission (diesel model) *



Press the clutch pedal down all the way and then start the engine.

The shift lever of the transmission is put into "1" gear from neutral, and the clutch pedal is slowly lifted so that the vehicle can start running.

When shifting up or down, make sure you push the clutch pedal down all the way, shift to the next gear, and let the pedal up gradually.

Attention

- Do not try to start the engine when the transmission is in gear, because the vehicle may move.
- Before starting the engine, verify that the shift lever is in the neutral position.
- Do not start the vehicle with gears other than 1st gear and reverse gear to avoid damage to the engine, transmission and clutch.

Tip

Forced downshift and deceleration: the vehicle speed shall not be greater than 50km/h when shifting to the 2nd gear; The vehicle speed shall not be greater than 30km/h when shifting to the 1st gear.

Recommended driving speed (gasoline model)

Gears	Vehicle speed (km/h)	
	Normal driving	Acceleration driving
1st gear	5-20	0-30
2nd gear	15-40	20-60
3rd gear	30-70	40-100
4th Gear	Above 50	70-150
5th gear	70-140	—

Recommended driving speed (diesel model)

Gears	Vehicle speed (km/h)	
	Normal driving	Acceleration driving
1st gear	5-20	0-30
2nd gear	10-40	20-60
3rd gear	30-70	40-100
4th gear	Above 50	70-150
5th gear	60-120	—
6th gear	70-140	—

Correct operation of manual transmission

Shift with gentle force, and do not use excessive force to prevent damage to the transmission gears.

Do not put your hand on the shift lever all the time during the driving of the vehicle to avoid premature wear of the shift fork.

When shifting from forward gear to reverse gear, or from reverse gear to forward gear, it must be done when the vehicle stops completely, so as not to damage the transmission.

Do not use low-speed driving for a long time, so as not to reduce the engine life. When the vehicle is driving at high speed in a certain gear, do not force it to change into low gear, so as not to damage the engine or transmission.

When slowing down or going uphill, don't overload the engine or drive too slowly in a certain high gear. You should shift into low gear according to the speed requirements to avoid overheating of the engine.

When the vehicle is running or the engine is idling, do not step on the clutch pedal to avoid overheating or even damage to the clutch.

Do not use the "half-clutch" method to stop the vehicle on a slope to avoid damaging the clutch.

The clutch should be fully depressed when shifting gears to avoid damage to the transmission or clutch.

When the vehicle is stuck and needs to be impacted by shifting the forward gear and the reverse gear, the vehicle speed should not exceed 25km/h to avoid damage to the drive train.

WARNING

- **Don't slide in neutral when going downhill, and don't turn off the engine.**
- **The speed should not be too fast when reversing.**

Push the gear lever to the reverse gear

When the engine is running, the clutch pedal should be pressed to the bottom before shifting into reverse gear, and then the shift lever should be shifted into reverse gear after a pause, otherwise the gear collision sound will be generated when shifting into reverse gear. Once shifting into reverse gear, the reversing indicator light will light up, the instrument will send out a prompt sound, and the the backup sensor system will start to work.. For information on the backup sensor system, see "Backup Sensor System" on page 181.

WARNING

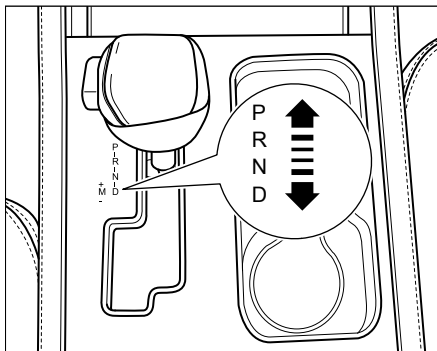
- The reverse gear can only be engaged after the vehicle has stopped steadily.

Tip

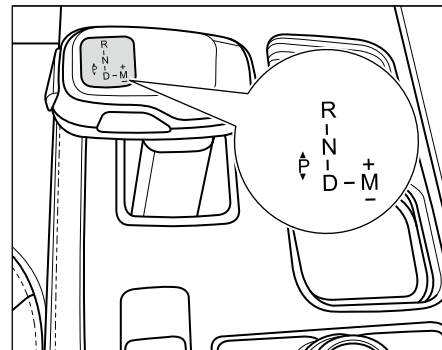
For manual diesel vehicles, the reverse gear lifting device is under the shift ball head, and should be lifted before shifting into reverse gear, and the reverse gear position should be selected before shifting into reverse gear.

Driving description

Automatic transmission model I*



Automatic transmission model II *



- The shift control mechanism of the automatic transmission model I is a mechanical stepped shift type. You can refer to the gear prompt on the shift panel to perform the shift operation in the specified direction.
- The shift control mechanism of the automatic transmission model II is an electronic bistable self-reset shift type, and the shift operation can be performed in the specified direction by referring to the gear prompt on the shift handle.

Gears description of Automatic transmission model I

"P" gear (parking gear):

- Only after the vehicle is completely stopped and the brake pedal is fully depressed can the "P" gear be engaged or moved out.
- The automatic shift operating mechanism has a "P" gear lock structure, which means that the gear can only be moved out of the "P" gear when the brake pedal is depressed and the vehicle is powered on or the vehicle is powered on, and the shift lever's unlock button is pressed..

"R" gear (reverse gear):

- When entering the "R" gear, make sure that the vehicle has completely stopped; From the "P" gear or "N" gear into the "R" gear, you must step on the brake pedal to the bottom and press the unlock button of the shift handle before you can enter the "R" gear; When the gear is in "R" gear, the reversing light will come on automatically.

"N" gear (neutral gear):

- When the vehicle is completely stationary and the engine needs to be idle for a short time (such as waiting for traffic

lights), the "N" gear can be selected. When the gear is in neutral, the transmission is not locked, and the parking brake must be used or the brake pedal must be pressed.

"D" gear (driving gear):

- Use this position for your normal driving. The transmission automatically shift up or down according to the engine load and the vehicle speed.

"M" gear (Manual transmission):

- When the shift lever is shifted from "D" to "M", the transmission enters manual mode. By pushing the shift lever back and forth, the driver's desired gear is shifted, and the dashboard displays the corresponding target gear.

Gears description of automatic transmission model (See page 160.)

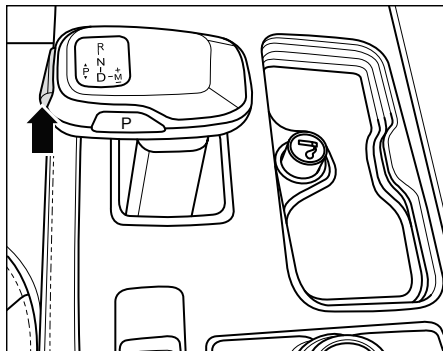
Shift lever position and status:

- The shift lever has two steady-state positions, which are the center position and manual mode position respectively, and the rest positions are transient. (Note: Steady-state position refers to the position where the shift lever can be stabilized; transient position means that the shift lever can be pushed to this position by hand, but it will automatically

return to the steady-state position when the shift lever is released.)

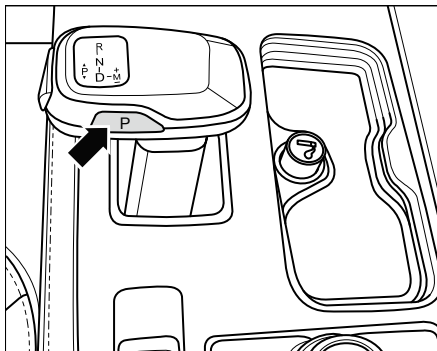
- When the shift lever is located in the center position, tPush forward has two transient positions, which are the first order and the second order in turn; Pushing back also has two transient positions, first order and second order.
- When the selector lever is in the center position, push it to the right to the manual mode position, push the manual mode position forward to have a transient position, push it backward also has a transient position, and push the manual mode position to the left to return to the center position.
- When the front and rear first-order and second-order shift operations are carried out, the automatic transmission will shift to the adjacent first gear in the corresponding direction according to the gear prompt on the shift handle when it is pushed forward or backward to the first order and the shift conditions are met;

Unlock button:



- The button on the left side of the shift handle is an unlock button, which needs to be pressed when moving out of "P" gear and into "R" gear, otherwise it will not be able to move out of "P" gear or into "R" gear successfully.

P gear button:



- The button with the "P" character on the rear side of the shift handle is the "P" gear button. When the vehicle is completely stopped, press the "P" gear button to directly shift the automatic transmission from any gear to the "P" gear.

"P" gear (parking gear):

- After the vehicle stops completely, press the brake pedal to the bottom or pull up the parking brake, and press the "P" button to put the automatic transmission into the "P" gear, and the internal transmission gear of the transmission is stuck.

- As this model is an electronic gear shifting mechanism, in order to ensure safety, the transmission has a locking structure that automatically shifts into the "P" gear (when the complete vehicle is powered down, the automatic transmission will automatically shift into the "P" gear). Therefore, the automatic transmission will be automatically put into the "P" gear under the following conditions:

1. When the vehicle is stopped, the automatic transmission is in any gear of R/N/D/M, and the engine is turned off;
 2. When the driver's door is open and the brake pedal is released after the R/D/M gear is engaged in the parking state with the brake pedal depressed.
- As the transmission of this model has a locking structure that automatically shifts to "P", the gear can be moved from "P" to other gears only when the brake pedal is fully depressed, the complete vehicle is started, the unlocking button of the shift handle is pressed, and the shift lever is pushed forward or backward to the first or second-order position.

"R" gear (reverse gear):

- When engaging the "R" gear, make sure that the vehicle has come to a complete stop. When shifting from "N" or "P" or "D" gear to "R", the brake pedal must be fully depressed, the unlocking button of the shift handle must be pressed, and the shift lever must be pushed forward to the first or second-order position before shifting to "R". When the gear is in "R", the "R" gear will be displayed on the instrument panel and the shift handle, and the reversing light will automatically light up. "N" gear (neutral gear)
 - When the vehicle is completely stationary and the engine needs to be idle for a short time (such as waiting for traffic lights), the "N" gear can be selected. When the gear is in the "n" position, "n" will be displayed on the instrument panel and the shift handle. If the transmission is not locked, the parking brake must be applied or the brake pedal pressed.
- "D" gear (driving gear):
- Generally, this gear is used when the vehicle is driving forward, and "D" gear will be displayed on the instrument panel and the shift handle. The system will automatically shift to the high gear or low gear according to the engine load

and vehicle speed.

"M" gear (Manual transmission):

- Only when the current gear is "D", push the shift lever to the right to the manual mode position, and the automatic transmission enters the "M" gear mode. At the same time, the current actual gear M will be displayed on the dashboard, and the "M" gear will be displayed on the shift handle. At this time, the shift lever can be pushed back and forth to manually add and subtract gears, and the corresponding actual gear will be displayed on the dashboard.
- If the gear is in the "P", "R" and "N" gear, push the shift lever to the right to the manual mode position, and the automatic transmission will keep the original gear at this time, and the whole vehicle will display a prompt message on the dashboard and send out a prompt tone for pushing the shift lever to the left.
- If the automatic transmission is automatically shifted into the "P" gear when the engine is turned off in the "M" gear, please be sure to push the shift lever to the left center position, if not, you will not be able to start the engine again. At this time, a prompt message is dis-

played on the dashboard and a prompt tone is issued to prompt the shift lever to be pushed to the left.

Driving operation:

- Press the brake pedal to the bottom, turn the gear of the vehicle to P/N gear, and start the engine.
- Press and hold the brake pedal, shift the vehicle into "D" gear, and enter the normal shift procedure.
- After engaging the gear, first release the electronic parking brake, then release the brake pedal, and slowly depress the accelerator pedal before the vehicle can start. When parking, depress the brake pedal, stop the vehicle, apply the parking brake, and engage the vehicle in "P" gear.

 Attention

- The vehicle starts the corresponding shifting program based on changes in resistance (e.g., traction, climbing a long slope, etc.), and moves the shift lever to a lower gear to give the vehicle more power. This can prevent frequent shifting.
- The speed of the cold engine is very high when it is just started, so please be careful when shifting to "D" or "R" gear before the engine warms up.
- Before starting the engine, make sure that the gear is in "P" or "N", and do not try to start the engine in other gears.
- When shifting the shift lever from "n" to other gears, please keep the engine at idle speed.

- For automatic transmission model II, the transmission will automatically shift to "P" gear when the engine is switched off. You should pay attention not to switch off the engine when the transmission "N" gear is required (such as vehicle washing device, towing trailer, etc.).
- For automatic transmission model II, when the engine cannot be started or must be shut down, if the transmission needs to be in "N", it is necessary to use the transmission "P" emergency unlocking mechanism to forcibly unlock the transmission and shift it to "N".
- For automatic transmission model II, when the engine is switched off at the "M" position, the transmission will automatically shift to the "P" position. Please be sure to push the shift lever to the left position to avoid affecting the

- When driving in manual mode, the vehicle will only be forced to upshift when the engine speed is too high. Please also note that the vehicle speed and load will be upshifted in time, otherwise the engine and automatic transmission will be damaged.
- When the vehicle is towed, please keep the driving wheel off the ground.

 Attention

For automatic transmission model II, automatically shift into "P" gear under the following conditions:

- When the vehicle is stopped, the automatic transmission is in any gear of R/N/D/M, and the engine is turned off;
- When the driver's door is opened and the brake pedal is released, if the D/M/R gear is engaged in the parking state.

 **WARNING**

- **The driver must carry the remote key when leaving the car. Otherwise, the passenger in the vehicle can start the engine or turn on the electrical equipment accidentally, resulting in serious personal injury or death.**
- **When parking the vehicle, you must exert parking brake. If the vehicle is stopped, no one shall be left in the vehicle, otherwise it may inadvertently release the parking brake and make the vehicle move.**
- **When parking or stopping with the engine running, be careful not to press the accelerator pedal for a long time. Otherwise, the engine or exhaust emission system may overheat and cause fire.**
- **Do not park the vehicle near flammables and explosives. Park the vehicle in the proper direction. Do not let the exhaust gas blow out the plants, causing damage to the green belt.**

Transmission gear display*

On vehicles equipped with automatic transmission, the gear display in the combination instrument will display the current gear information of the transmission.



The gear character on the shift panel or the shift handle has the gear display function, that is, when the transmission is in a certain gear, the gear character will be illuminated, highlighted or discolored with the gear. When the transmission and the shift lever are in any gear of the manual mode, the M, + and - gear characters are illuminated or highlighted or changed color with the gear.

How to use automatic transmission

The following information is particularly important for drivers unfamiliar with vehicles equipped with automatic transmissions.

Start

- The engine can only be started when the shift lever is in "P" or "N".
- Before starting the engine, press the brake pedal.

- When "D" or "R" gear is selected and the vehicle is stationary, do not run the engine at high speed.
- Always apply the parking brake until you are ready to drive away, remember that once the drive gear is selected, the automatic vehicle will drive slowly forward or backward.
- Do not keep the vehicle stationary with the drive gear selected and the engine already running (always select "N" gear if you need to idle for a long time).
- When driving on slippery roads, vehicles should start in snow mode. According to different models, the specific operations are as follows: after the vehicle stops completely, put the gear lever into D gear, press the  button on S or center console, enter the sport or snow mode, and slowly step on the accelerator to start driving; After the vehicle stops completely, put the gear lever into D gear, press the  button on the center console, enter the modes of snow, sports, comfort, ECO, etc., and slowly step on the accelerator to start driving.

Attention

- **When the vehicle is running, please do not put into "P" or "R" gear, otherwise it will seriously damage the transmission.**
- **When the vehicle is driving, especially at idle speed, please do not slide in neutral.**
- **When the vehicle is parked for a long time, please put on "P" gear and use it with the parking brake.**

Special circumstances of limited use of transmission function

When the hardware, CAN communication, or TCU operation of the transmission fails, the vehicle function is restricted, and the corresponding limping mode is entered (the phenomenon that the vehicle cannot normally rise and fall, or is fixed in a specific gear, etc. may occur), and a warning is given on the instrument through the gearbox fault indicator light or text. The vehicle can continue to drive. It is recommended to repair it as soon as possible.

Push the gear lever to the reverse gear

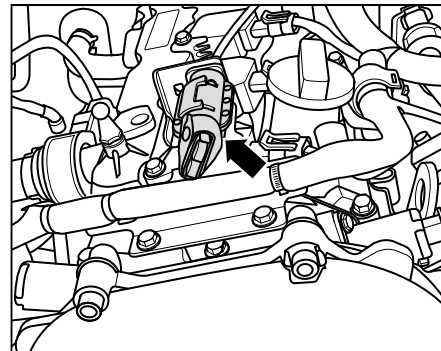
1. Stop the vehicle firmly.
2. Press the brake pedal and press the unlock button of the shift handle to shift the shift lever into the "R" position.
3. After entering the "R" gear, slowly release the brake pedal, and the vehicle will run in reverse gear.

When driving in reverse gear

- The backup signal lights come on.
- Reversing rearview system is activated automatically and the reversing image appears on the multimedia display (for some vehicle models).
- When the parking sensor is activated, it will sound an alarm with different frequencies when approaching an obstacle (see "Parking Sensor System" on page 181).

Transmission P emergency unlocking

If the transmission cannot switch from "P" to another gear normally, the transmission "P" can be forcibly unlocked by emergency unlocking of the transmission. The transmission emergency unlocking handle is arranged in the engine compartment or under the driver's seat in the front.



Attention

- When this fault occurs, it is recommended to contact the authorized dealer of BAIC, and the professional will operate to remove the fault. Doing it yourself may damage vehicle-related components.
- When the transmission needs to be unlocked in an emergency, it means that there is a problem with the vehicle and needs to be checked and repaired at a authorized dealer of BAIC.

1. Apply parking brake..
2. Rotate the transmission emergency unlocking handle counterclockwise to make it enter the sliding slot.
3. Pull the rope on the handle outward, pull it to the outermost side, rotate the transmission emergency unlocking handle clockwise, and there will be a slight "click", indicating that the handle position has been fixed, and the transmission is in the "P" gear unlocking state. At this time, the vehicle will give an alarm, the instrument will display "transmission parklock failure", and the transmission fault light will be on. At this time, the transmission is in "N" gear.
4. After the vehicle is moved, please immediately follow the reverse

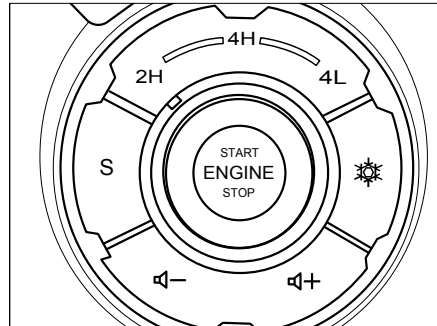
operation steps of the above methods to restore the transmission emergency unlocking handle to its original position.

Attention

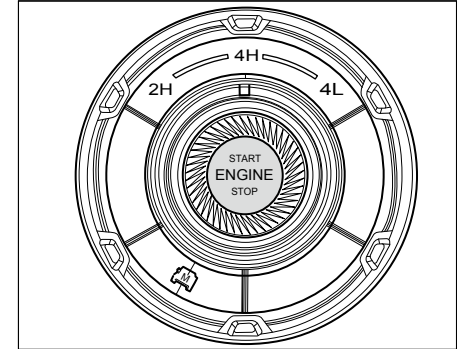
- Forced release of transmission "P" gear for a long time should be avoided.
- In the case of forcibly releasing the "P" gear of the transmission, the transmission is not locked. If you need to stop the vehicle, you must use the parking brake or step on the brake pedal.

Electronically controlled four-wheel drive transfer case

Mode I *



Mode II *



This vehicle is equipped with electronically controlled four-wheel drive transfer case, which has the following gears:

2H: Two-wheel drive, high-grade, rear-wheel drive, used under normal driving conditions, without four-wheel drive.

4H: Four-wheel drive high-grade, four-wheel drive, can be used in rain, snow, muddy, gravel areas or general cross-country roads for a short time, and is not allowed to be used on dry or paved roads.

4L: Four-wheel drive low-gear, four-wheel drive, can be used on off-road roads requiring low speed and high traction for a short time, and is not allowed to be used on dry or paved roads.

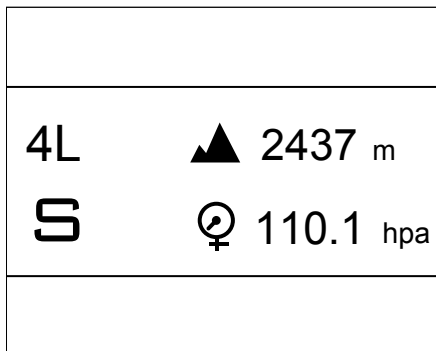
Gears shift

Switching between 2H and 4H:

During the driving process of the vehicle (the required speed is lower than 30km/h), the driver can switch between 2H and 4H at will without stopping the vehicle, but it should be done when driving in a straight line at a constant speed.

Switching between 4H and 4L:

1. Stop the vehicle and keep the engine running
2. Depress the clutch pedal or move the shift lever to the N position;
3. Rotate the transfer case shift switch to 4L or 4H. Note: For MT models, do not lift the clutch before the transfer case shift is completed; during the shift process, the target gear flashes, and after the gear shift is completed, the target gear is always on.



The current gear position of the time-sharing four-wheel drive transfer case is displayed in the upper left "4L" position in the display of the combination instrument.

Attention

- In order to avoid the failure of the transfer case caused by misoperation, the electronically controlled transfer case of this model does not support the installation of wheel clutch on the vehicle!
- In the 2H gear, the instrument light does not light up.
- When the transfer case is switched, the current gear is always on and the target gear is flashing. If the 4H gear is switched to the 4L gear, the 4H light on the instrument is always on, and the 4L gear is flashing. After the shift is completed, the 4H light is off and the 4L light is always on.

⚠ WARNING

- If the transfer case gear is not fully engaged, the transfer case may be damaged or the vehicle loses power and control, resulting in personal injury accidents.
- Do not drive on dry and hard roads for a long time in four-wheel-drive mode.
- If abnormal vibration of chassis is found during turning, please check whether the transfer gear is not placed in "2H" gear first.
- Use the "4L" gear only when extra traction is needed, and do not use the "4L" gear for a long time.
- In 4H mode, the vehicle speed is not higher than 60km/h;; The vehicle speed in 4L mode is not higher than 30km/h.

Transmission system

General

When the vehicle is on off-road road, improper operation of the driver will cause abnormal damage to the transmission system.

Operation requirements (steep hill, uneven mountains and muddy sections):

1. Four-wheel low-gear drive, maintain stable throttle. Drive slowly, and the speed should not exceed 25 km/h.
2. Do not accelerate or lift the clutch sharply to avoid abnormal damage to the transmission system.
3. Once the vehicle can't get out of trouble by itself, don't force it to operate. Please quickly ask for help from external forces to help you get out of trouble

👁 Attention

When driving into a cross-country zone, remember to drive slowly and the speed should not exceed 25 km/h.

Avoid sudden acceleration to prevent the wheels from turning suddenly and violently, resulting in idling and skidding.

When the vehicle is out of trouble, it is forbidden to accelerate sharply or lift the clutch suddenly.

The following will cause failure of transmission parts, remember to avoid:

1. Press the brake pedal and accelerator pedal at the same time, and lift the clutch sharply.
2. The front-wheel encountered a big obstacle, so it was eager to get out of trouble and slammed on the accelerator pedal.
3. The wheels soar and step on the accelerator pedal.
4. The steering wheel is turned to the end, and one wheel is under stress (such as a step or a dimple), and the drive axle is over-stressed.

3

Mechanical locking differential* (if equipped)

1. Automatic locking: The rear axle is optionally equipped with a mechanical locking differential. When the vehicle speed is lower than 30km/h, when the speed difference between the left and right rear wheels reaches 100r/min, the mechanical locking differential is automatically locked to help the vehicle get out of trouble.
2. Manual unlocking: After the vehicle is out of trouble, if you want to unlock it, you need to turn the steering wheel slightly to the side of the slippery wheel and drive 2 to 3 meters to unlock it. If the driver cannot accurately determine which side the slipping wheel is on, it can also be unlocked by turning the steering wheel slightly to the left and right and driving a distance of 2 to 3 meters in each turning direction.
3. Improve performance: the differential lock is fully compatible with ESP, and the off-road performance will be better if they are used at the same time.

WARNING

- **The locking function of the mechanical locking differential is only used to help the vehicles in trouble to get out of trouble, such as mud pit, cross axle, ice and snow, sand, etc;**
- **The new car shall not be locked within the first 50km;**
- **If the vehicle has been stored for more than one month, it must be driven for 50km before using the locking function;**
- **If it is locked for 5 times in a short time, it must drive at a speed less than 40km/h for more than 2km in the unlocked state, and then restart the locking differential operation after cooling the rear axle lubricating oil;**
- **Avoid locking the differential under overload;**
- **If the locking function fails, stop the locking operation immediately and drive to the nearest repair shop for inspection and maintenance.**

 Attention

- **When the locking function fails, it can still be used as an ordinary differential. If the locking operation is continued, other components may be damaged and the differential function will fail, making the vehicle unable to drive.**

 Attention

- **At the moment of locking, the mechanical locking differential will produce slight impact and deviation, which is a normal phenomenon and will not cause vehicle damage;**
- **After the vehicle is locked by the mechanical locking differential, the differential must be unlocked in time to prevent danger during driving.**
- **When the vehicle speed is above 30km/h, the mechanical locking differential will not lock.**

Brake system

General Introduction

All four wheels of the vehicle are equipped with disc brakes. The Booster helps reduce the amount of force required to depress the brake pedal.

The service brake system has two sets of brake lines. One pipeline failed, and the other could stop the vehicle normally. However, the brake pedal must be pressed harder than usual. Please contact the special dealer of BAIC for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Placing your foot on the brake pedal during driving will cause the brake to operate slightly and generate heat, thus reducing the effectiveness of the brake, shortening the service life of the brake friction plate and reducing the fuel saving efficiency. If the brake light is always on, it will also cause confusion to the driver behind.

When going down a long slope, continuous use of the brake will cause it to accumulate heat, thus reducing the effectiveness of the brake.

At this time, keep your foot off the accelerator pedal and shift to a lower gear to assist braking with the engine.

After driving through deep water, the brakes must be checked. Press the brake moderately and feel whether the braking effect is normal. If there is any abnormality, the brake should be lightly pressed frequently until the braking effect returns to normal.

Braking operation includes feeling time and reaction time.

First, the driver has to decide whether to step on the brake pedal, which is the feeling time. Then you must raise your foot and press the pedal. This is the reaction time.

The average reaction time is about three quarters of a second. But this is only the average time. Maybe one driver's reaction time is shorter, but the other driver's reaction time will be as long as two to three seconds, or even longer. Reaction time is affected by age, physical condition, vigilance, coordination and vision, as well as alcohol, drugs and depression. The vehicle will move forward for 20 meters when the speed is 100km/h even if the response time is about three quarters of a second. And in an emergency, the distance may be too long. Therefore, it is very

important to keep enough distance from other vehicles.

Of course, the actual braking distance will vary depending on the road surface (eg paved or sandy), road conditions (wet, dry, icy), tire tread, braking vehicle weight, and braking force.

Do not apply the brake pedal urgently when it is not required. Some drivers drive too uncontrollably. For example, they step on the accelerator pedal and then the brake pedal, failing to keep pace with the speed of traffic flow. This is a wrong approach. The brakes do not have time to cool down between consecutive emergency braking, and if the brake pedal is frequently pressed hard, it will accelerate the wear of the brakes. Keeping pace with the traffic flow and keeping a certain distance between vehicles will greatly reduce unnecessary emergency braking, which will improve the braking effect and prolong the brake life.

If the engine stalls during driving, the normal braking shall be adopted but the inching braking shall not be adopted, otherwise it will be difficult to step on the brake pedal. Even if the engine is stopped, there is still some brake assistance for braking, but it will be consumed during braking. Once the brake power is exhausted, the braking time will be prolonged, and it will be more difficult to step on the brake pedal.

Factors affecting the braking effect

1. Abrasion

The wear of brake friction plates depends to a great extent on the use mode and driving conditions, especially for those cars that often travel in urban traffic and short distances or drive in sports mode. Therefore, within the prescribed time interval of maintenance, it is very necessary to go to the special dealer of BAIC to check the thickness of brake friction plates.

When driving downhill, you should change gears in time to make use of the braking force of the engine, which can reduce the burden on the brakes. To increase braking force, do not brake continuously but intermittently.

2. Moist or sprinkled salt

Under certain driving conditions, such as driving in water, rain, or after washing the car, due to the freezing of brake discs and friction discs due to humidity or low temperature in winter, the braking effect will lag, so it is necessary to brake several times first and dry the brakes.

When driving on rainy days and slippery roads, the vehicle speed should be controlled to prevent slippage; when encountering water, the vehicle should be passed at a low speed and a uniform speed. After passing through a road with deep water, the brake pads and brake discs will be soaked in water, which will affect the braking effect. It is necessary to lightly step on the brakes a few times to keep the brake parts dry and restore performance.

When driving on salted roads, if the brakes have not been applied for a long time, the braking action will be delayed and lagged. To resolve it, it is necessary to eliminate the salt layers on the brake discs and brake linings.

3. Plateau environment

Because of the high mountains and long slopes in plateau areas, the brakes are used frequently and for a long time, and often work continuously under forced dynamic conditions, these factors will make the braking effect worse. Therefore, we suggest that the vehicle should not slide in neutral and avoid frequent braking when going downhill. Try to use low gear to control the vehicle speed through the braking effect of the engine itself, which can reduce the working intensity of the wheel

brake and reduce the brake temperature. When using engine braking, the lower the transmission gear, the higher the engine speed, the greater the drag force, and the more obvious the braking effect.

The air in plateau area is thin and the air pressure is low, which is different from the atmospheric pressure in plain and has different boosting effects. In a plateau area, because the atmospheric pressure acting on the diaphragm of the brake booster per unit area is less than a standard atmospheric pressure force, the brake booster will become smaller and the time for producing the same boosting effect will become longer, which is a normal physical phenomenon, so it is necessary to apply greater brake pedal force when braking in the plateau area. When braking is needed, do not slam the brake pedal many times, but keep your feet on the brake pedal and control the brake pedal force to ensure the braking effect.

4. Snow and ice weather

Because of the low friction coefficient of ice and snow road surface, the braking distance will be greatly prolonged during braking, and the braking distance will raise with the raise of vehicle speed. Therefore, special attention should be paid to controlling the vehicle speed when driving on ice and snow road surface, and a large safe distance should be kept from the front vehicle or the side vehicle.

No coasting with the Neutral position is permitted when driving on icy and snowy road surfaces.

5. Surface rust

If the vehicle is parked for a long period of time or you have not operated the brake system for a long period of time, the brake disc may become rusty and the lining may become dirty. We recommend that you apply the brakes repeatedly to clean the brake discs when the vehicle is moving.

6. Brake system failure

If you suddenly find the braking distance becomes longer or brake pedal stroke becomes longer, there may be a trouble in the braking system. In this case, you should immediately drive to the nearest the special dealer of BAIC for inspection and maintenance. On the drive to the special dealer of BAIC, please drive at a low speed, adjust your driving style, and apply more force to the brake pedal when braking.

7. Over-heated brake

Never "slip rotation" the brake by lightly stepping on the brake pedal when braking is not required, which will cause the brake to overheat, extend the braking distance and raise wear.

If the spoiler, wheel trim panel, and other relevant accessories are installed, it must be ensured that the airflow to the brake is not affected, otherwise, the brake will overheat.

Brake pedal

Do not place thick floor mats or other foreign objects near the brake pedal. This affects the travel of the brake pedal in an emergency. Make sure that the brake pedal operates freely in all conditions.

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal when braking is not required. Otherwise, the brake temperature will rise, the brake pads will wear prematurely, and even the brake will be damaged.

Brake lining

When the brake lining is worn to the limit, the disc brake equipped with a warning device will emit a squeal of metal friction. If you hear this sound, go to the special dealer of BAIC to replace the new brake lining as soon as possible.

After replacing a new brake lining, avoid emergency braking as much as possible during the first 200km of driving.

**WARNING**

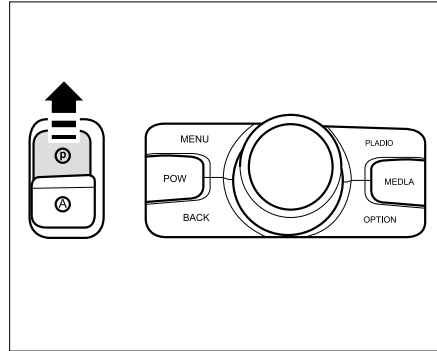
Do not drive a vehicle with excessively worn brake linings, which will make it difficult to brake the vehicle and may cause accidents.

Brake system status and brake system fault warning light

When the parking brake force is applied or the brake fluid level is lower than the specified level, the brake warning light will illuminate. Before driving, the parking brake shall be completely released and the brake warning light shall be off. If the brake warning light is on while the vehicle is running, it means that the braking efficiency is weakened. Park the vehicle in a safe place by:

- If the brake pedal is pressed, when the braking effect is weakened, press the brake pedal with greater force.

Electronic Parking Brake System (EPB)

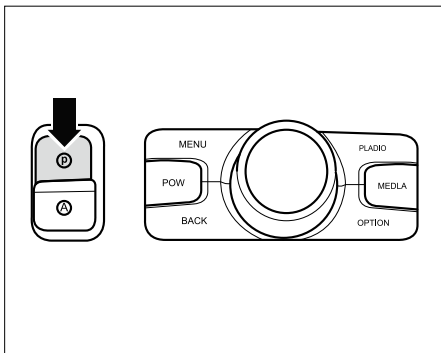


Manually apply electronic parking:

When the vehicle is in a stationary state and the start/stop button is in the "RUN" mode, pull the electronic parking switch button (P) upward in the direction of the arrow to apply the electronic parking brake and prevent the vehicle from slipping. At this time, the red parking light (P) on the combination instrument lights up. Automatically apply electronic parking:

When the vehicle is in any gear state, when the start/stop button is placed in "OFF" mode, the vehicle will automatically park, and the red parking light (P) on the combination instrument will light up.

Secondary application of electronic parking: In some special cases, the secondary clamping of the brake caliper can be achieved by putting the start/stop button in the "RUN" mode and flipping the electronic parking switch button upward in the direction of the arrow for (P) 3 seconds when the car has been parked.



Manual release of electronic parking:

When the start/stop button is in "RUN" mode, press the brake pedal and push down the electronic parking switch button (P) in the direction of the arrow to release the electronic parking brake. At this time, the red parking light (P) on the combination instrument goes out.

Attention

- If the brake pedal is not pressed down and the electronic parking switch is pushed down, the electronic parking will not be released. The display screen of the combination instrument indicates "Please step on the brake pedal to release the electronic handbrake".
- After the automatic transmission vehicle is firmly parked, electronic parking should be applied first, and then the selector lever should be placed in the "P" position.
- Under some special circumstances, if electronic parking brake is not needed for parking, you can push down the electronic parking switch before turning off the start/stop button, hold it for more than 3 seconds, and then turn off the power supply of the complete vehicle, then the vehicle will not perform parking brake.

Attention

- When the transfer case is at 4L, the transmission is in D/R gear. If EPB is used for parking for a long time, the display screen of the instrument cluster indicates "If parking for a long time, please switch to P/N gear". On the hills, when the transfer case is 4L, shift to gear d / r to use electronic parking. The vehicle may slide. Please pay attention to safety. Minimize the use of electronic parking when the transfer case is 4L in D/R gear.
- If two or more wheel speed sensors fail, when the start / stop button is in the "run" state, parking cannot be achieved by pulling up the electronic parking switch, and the combination instrument display prompts "If parking, please turn off the engine and pull the EPB switch for a long time". When the start / stop button is in the "off" state, pull up the electronic parking switch for 3 seconds to park.

 Attention

- **When the start / stop button is in the "off" state, if the electronic parking is in the released state, the parking can be realized by pulling up the electronic parking switch for 3 seconds.**
- **When the yellow indicator light on the combination instrument is on, it indicates that the electronic parking system is faulty. Please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC for vehicle maintenance.**

Automatic release of electronic parking:

First, make sure the door is closed and the driver fastens his seat belt. From P gear or N gear to D gear or R gear, press the accelerator, and the electronic parking will be automatically released.

 Attention

- **Make sure that the driver's seat belt is fastened, otherwise the automatic release function of electronic parking cannot be realized.**
- **If the driver does not fasten the seat belt, the display of the combination instrument prompts "Please fasten the driver's seat belt to release the electronic handbrake".**

ABS (anti-lock braking system)

The anti-lock braking system (ABS) prevents the wheels from locking when the vehicle is braking, which will ensure the vehicle's maneuverability and directional stability when braking.

The purpose of ABS is to improve the active safety during driving. ABS will automatically adjust the brake pressure of each wheel. Before the wheel is about to lock up, the braking pressure will automatically decrease, and then raise the braking pressure until the wheel is about to lock up. The braking system's electronics get a signal from the wheel speed sensor, which accurately contains the time the wheel rolls. This information is processed continuously in order to adjust the brake pressure as accurately as possible. The braking pressure can be adjusted up to 12 times per second, but the ABS cannot be expected to shorten the braking distance in all cases. For example, on gravel roads or smooth roads that have just snowed, even if you drive carefully and slowly, the braking distance may still belong.

Working Mode of ABS Anti-lock Braking System

When the vehicle speed reaches about 20km/h, an automatic detection process is started. At this time, the running sound of the pump can be heard.

ABS cannot shorten the braking distance on gravel and snow-covered roads, however, it can still allow the driver to control the vehicle steering because the wheels will not be completely locked.

When the ABS system works, you can feel the brake pedal shaking and hear the clicking sound at the same time, which is a normal phenomenon. If the speed range of a wheel is too low relative to the vehicle speed and tends to lock up, the ABS will reduce the brake pressure on the wheel. This adjustment process can be detected by the noise of the brake pedal. From this, as a driver, you know that the wheels are tending to lock (ABS adjustment range). At this time, keep the brake pedal completely depressed and control the vehicle out of danger.

Never release the brake pedal before the vehicle stops or the danger is over! It is also not allowed to repeatedly press the brake pedal, which will stop the work of ABS and may increase the braking distance.

If the road is slippery, ABS will be enabled even if the brake pedal is lightly pressed, so that the driver can obtain the road characteristic information through braking, and then adjust his driving style.



WARNING

Any ABS braking system shall not violate the physical principle. Therefore, please develop good driving habits and do not use the advantages of ABS system to drive fast.

To achieve the shortest braking distance possible and to improve trajectory stability on wet and dry roads, brake as hard as possible and perform emergency avoidance operations as necessary.

ABS system warning light

ABS integrates a monitoring system to check whether all system related electrical components are working properly in real time.

When the ABS system fails, the ABS warning light is on. When the start/stop button is in the "RUN" position during the vehicle self-test, the light will be on for 2~3 seconds and then off. Make sure that the light is off before the vehicle is driven.

When the ABS system warning light is on while driving, do not brake hard at this time, otherwise the vehicle may be in danger of unstable driving. Always depress the brake pedal gently and park the vehicle in a safe place. Restart the engine and check if the warning light goes out after a few minutes of driving. If the warning light goes out while driving, there is no problem.

If the warning light does not go off, or if the warning light comes on again while driving. Please contact the special dealer of BAIC for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

 **WARNING**

After the ABS system fails, the normal braking system will work normally and will not be affected by the partial loss of ABS function, but the braking distance will be correspondingly longer.

ABS system routine maintenance

ABS is composed of mechanical-electrical integration components, which have high working reliability and usually do not need regular maintenance. Pay attention to the following points to help improve the performance of the system and further reduce the failure rate of the system:

- ECU of ABS is composed of precise electronic parts, and electronic parts are easily damaged by strong collision and knocking. Therefore, ECU should be avoided from collision as much as possible.
- Do not let oil contaminate the electrical connectors of ABS system, especially metal terminals, so as to avoid poor electrical contact.
- Do not contaminate the wheel sensor with oil or other sundries, especially near the gear ring position.

- Excessive water content of brake fluid will not only cause poor braking due to vaporization of water, but also corrode the brake system and lead to degradation of ABS performance. Therefore, brake fluid should be replaced regularly, generally at least once every two years.
- When the ABS warning light has the following conditions:
 1. Continue to light up
 2. Light up for a long time while driving
 3. When the start / stop key is turned from "off" to "run", the ABS warning light on the combination instrument will not be on.

It must be checked and repaired in time. Before using the braking system before troubleshooting, you must pay attention to controlling the braking intensity to avoid wheel locking.

EBD electronic brake force distribution system

Automatically adjusts the distribution proportion of braking force between front and rear axles to improve braking efficiency, shorten braking distance to a certain extent, and cooperate with ABS to improve braking stability.

ESP (electronic stability system) *

The Electronic Stability System (ESP) can effectively reduce the risk of the vehicle sliding sideways.

ESP only works when the engine is running. In special cases, the ESP function should be deactivated, for example:


- When the vehicle is driven with snow chains.
- When driving on deep snowy or spongy road surfaces.
- When the vehicle is stuck somewhere (e.g. on a muddy road) and needs to move back and forth.

If there is no such situation, turn on the ESP electronic stability system.

The use of electronic stability system (ESP) can improve the control of the vehicle in the dynamic driving limit state. For example, during acceleration and curve driving, It can reduce the risk of vehicle side slip under all road conditions, thereby improving the driving stability of the vehicle.

Also integrated in the electronic stability system are Anti-lock Brake System (ABS), Electronic Brakeforce Distribution (EBD) and Traction Control System (TCS), Hill Assist (HHC), Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA), Hill Decent Control (HDC), Roll Movement Intervention (RMI), Auto Hold function (AUTOHOLD).

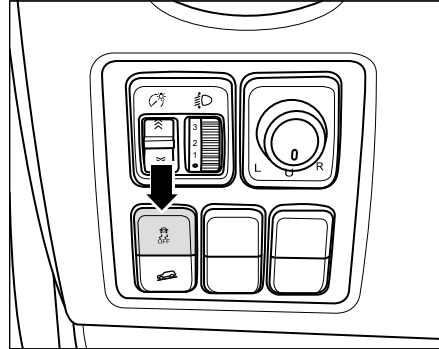
ESP indicator light

When the start/stop button is in the "ON" position, the ESP indicator light in the combination instrument  will light up, and the ESP system self-check will begin, and the indicator light will turn off after the self-check is completed.


During driving, if the ESP indicator light flashes, it means that the ESP system is currently working.


If the ESP indicator light does not go out after the self-test or remains on during driving, it indicates that the ESP system is faulty. The vehicle should drive at a low speed to the nearest authorized dealer of BAIC for inspection and repair.

ESP OFF function






When the transfer case is 2H: in the default state, the ESP function is turned on.




Press the ESP off button to turn off the ESP function. At this time, the ESP OFF  indicator on the combination instrument will light up.

Press the ESP off button again to start the ESP function. At this time, the ESP off indicator light "" on the combination instrument will go out.

Attention

- When the transfer case is in 4H/4L, short press the ESP off button for < 3s, only the ESP and TCS torque control functions can be turned off, and other functions are reserved.
- When the transfer case is in 4H/4L, long press the ESP off button (3s-10s), only the ESP and TCS functions can be turned off, and other functions are reserved.
- When the transfer case is at 2H, press the ESP off button for < 10s, only the ESP and TCS functions can be turned off, and other functions are reserved.
- Press the ESP off button for more than 10s, this operation is invalid.
- When the ESP function is turned off by pressing the ESP off button, when the driving speed is higher than 80km/h, the ESP function will be restored automatically, and the ESP OFF indicator light will be off.

When the transfer case is at 4H: the ESP OFF indicator lights  up by itself, indicating that the ESP system is in a partial functional state in this state, including: ABS function, EBD function, TCS function, hill assist function, hydraulic brake assist, and hill decent control. When the ESP system is working, the ESP OFF indicator light  goes off and the ESP indicator light  flashes.

When the transfer case is at 4L: the ESP OFF indicator light  lights up by itself, indicating that the ESP system is in a partial functional state in this state, including: ABS function, EBD function, TCS function, hill assist function, hydraulic brake assist, and hill decent control. When the ESP system is working, the ESP indicator light is  OFF, and the ESP indicator light is  flashing.

⚠ WARNING

ESP has certain limitations in controlling the driving stability of the vehicle and the driving mode should be adjusted according to the road conditions and traffic conditions at any time even if the vehicle is equipped with ESP. This is especially important for driving on smooth and wet roads. Do not drive at risk just because this system improves the safety of the Driving safety;; otherwise there will be a risk of accidents!

TCS traction control system *

The TCS traction control system prevents the drive wheels from slipping during acceleration.

The TCS traction control system is part of the electronic stability system (ESP). Under extremely adverse road conditions, only the TCS traction control system can make starting, accelerating and climbing possible or easier.

Operation mode of TCS traction control system:

The TCS traction control system functions automatically, i.e. without driver intervention. It monitors the rotation speed of the driving wheel with the help of ABS sensors. If the wheels slip, the engine torque is automatically reduced to match the driving force with the road conditions, which can be achieved in all speed ranges.

The TCS traction control system works in conjunction with the ABS brake anti-lock system. When ABS fails, TCS also loses its function.

HBA brake assist*

The brake assist system is used to optimize the braking force. The brake assist system helps to increase the braking force and thus shorten the braking distance. When the driver presses the brake pedal very quickly, the brake assist system will automatically adjust the braking force to the maximum until ABS carries out control intervention. The brake pedal must be depressed until the required braking is completed. Once the brake pedal is released, the brake assist system switches off automatically.

In case of ABS failure, the brake assist system is also unavailable.

HHC Hill-start hold control *

After the driver fastens his seat belt and closes the driver's side door, When the slope is greater than 4 degrees, Whether you stop when going uphill and then move forward, Or reverse after stopping when going downhill, the ramp starting auxiliary system automatically comes into work at any time and releases the brake. The braking system will still provide powerful braking force in about 0.5 ~ 2 seconds, ensuring the braking of the vehicle, preventing the vehicle from sliding on the slope, making the driving smooth, and no longer having the trouble of sliding backward, and greatly improving the comfort and control safety.

HDC Hill Descent Control*

HDC hill descent control allows the vehicle to maintain a constant speed when going downhill.

The hill descent function is an additional function of the ESP system. It can be used when the driver wants to maintain a constant speed (when the transfer case is 2h/4h, the range is 8km/h ~ 35km/h; when the transfer case is 4L, the range is 4km/h ~ 35km/h) downhill.

Operation mode of hill descent function:

1. Press the HDC switch to start the hill descent function. At this time, the instrument green HDC light is on, indicating that the HDC function is on and in standby state; Press the HDC switch again to turn off the HDC function;
2. When the HDC function is turned on and the vehicle is on a downhill slope, the driver does not perform braking and acceleration operations, and the vehicle driving speed is 4km/h (transfer case 4L) /8km/h (transfer case 2h/4h) ~ 35km/h; The hill descent function starts to work, and the vehicle can drive at the initial speed; At this time, the green HDC light of the instrument will be flashing;

- When the driver makes the vehicle speed over 35km/h through the accelerator pedal, the HDC function will stop working and be in a standby state; when the vehicle speed continues to increase over 60km/h, the HDC function will be completely withdrawn, and the HDC light of the instrument will be off, and the HDC function will be in a closed state.
- When the "yellow HDC light" on the combination meter lights up, it means that the HDC function is disabled. Please contact the special dealer of BAIC for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

RMI Roll Movement Intervention*

When the vehicle starts after the body roll or the wheel height from the ground exceeds a certain limit, or the driver's driving direction exceeds a certain limit, which may cause the vehicle to roll over, the RMI Roll Movement Intervention will reduce the risk of rollover by braking the wheels and reducing the engine torque.

AUTOHOLD automatic parking function *

The automatic parking function can help the driver start more comfortably on slopes. After releasing the brake pedal, the system continues to maintain braking, so that the driver has enough time to step on the accelerator pedal to start, so as to reduce the impact of sliding slope.

Automatic parking function on

When the engine is running, the driver's side door is closed, the seat belt is fastened, and the "autohold" switch is pressed, the automatic parking function is turned on, and the switch indicator light is on.

Automatic parking function activated

- Start the engine, close the driver's door, fasten the seat belt, after the "AUTO-HOLD" function is turned on, press the brake until the vehicle speed is zero, the automatic parking function is activated, and the green light of the combination instrument (ⓐ) lights up;
- Lightly step on the accelerator, the parking is automatically released, and the green indicator light of the combination instrument (ⓐ) goes out;

- If the accelerator is not stepped on for more than 3 minutes, it will switch to EPB mode and the EPB red parking light (ⓑ) will illuminate.

Auto park function OFF

Press the "AUTOHOLD" switch, the automatic parking function is turned off, and the switch indicator light is off.

Forced exit of automatic parking function

- Unfasten the seat belt or open the driver's door or turn off the engine, the AUTOHOLD function will automatically exit.

If the AUTO HOLD function has been activated, unfasten the seat belt or open the driver's door or turn off the engine or press the "AUTO HOLD" switch without applying the brake, then EPB electronic parking is performed, the green indicator light (ⓐ) of the combination instrument goes out, and the red indicator light (ⓑ) of electronic parking lights up.

Automatic parking function automatically exits

After the AUTO HOLD function is activated, put into D gear or R gear, and press the

accelerator, the AUTO HOLD function will automatically exit, and the vehicle will start smoothly.

Attention

- For MT vehicles, on flat roads, put into neutral and press the accelerator, and the AUTOHOLD function will automatically exit. Please pay attention to safety.
- pressure is detected after the brake pedal is released, the ESP will actively boost pressure to keep the vehicle stationary. ESP active supercharging will generate noise, which is the working sound of the ESP motor, which is normal;
- When "automatic parking system fault" is prompted on the combination instrument display, it indicates that the autohold function is invalid. Please contact the special dealer of BAIC for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

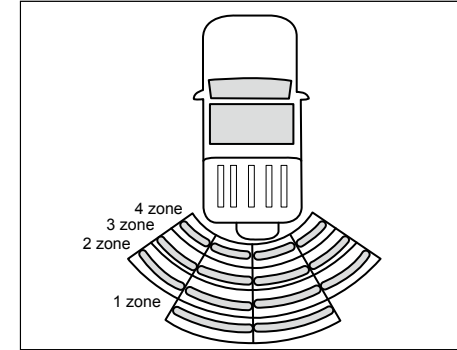
Park assistance system

Back-up sensor system description

Activation of parking sensor system

The four ultrasonic probes of the backup sensor system are installed on the rear bumper. When the reverse gear is engaged, the backup sensor system is automatically activated. After the system is activated, it will check the approximate distance to the obstacles at the rear of the vehicle, and display it on the information central control display screen according to the distance to the obstacles, and the speaker will sound the corresponding prompt tone.

The indicator bar on the central control display is displayed according to the distance and orientation of the obstacle at the rear of the vehicle, and the frequency of the sound signal will become faster and faster according to the distance between the obstacle and the vehicle. (The signal strength of the indicator bar in the picture above is an example and may not match the actual situation).



Sound signal

The sound alarm signal of the parking radar system is sent out by the speaker driven by the central control display;

It increases as the distance between the obstacle and the vehicle decreases, and the interval between the intermittent chirps decreases.

When the distance between the obstacle and the spare tire of the vehicle is less than 30 cm, it becomes a continuous beeping sound.

Display signal

The left, middle and right sensors all display the status of obstacles by four-layer indicator bars, each group of display bars independently displays the information of the detected obstacles, and the displays between groups are independent of each other;

3

When multiple obstacles are in the detection range at the same time, the nearest obstacle is displayed.

The display bar in zone 4 is red, which means that the obstacle is within a range of about 0 cm to 30 cm behind the vehicle;

The display bar in zone 3 is yellow, which means that the obstacle is within a range of about 30 cm to 60 cm behind the vehicle;

The display bar in zone 2 is yellow, which means that the obstacle is within a range of about 60 cm to 90 cm behind the vehicle;

The display bar in zone 1 is green, which means that the obstacle is within a range of about 90 cm to 150 cm behind the vehicle;

Detection range

The detection range of the sensor is limited to around the rear bumper, so be sure to determine a safe distance around the vehicle and drive slowly. The maximum detection distance of the sensor varies according to the size of the obstacle. The sensor can detect large obstacles up to 150 cm away, such as walls. However, for thinner obstacles, such as rod-shaped objects, the detection distance is less than 150 cm. The detection range of the rear corner is about 90 cm, and the detection range of the middle part of the rear is about 150 cm.

WARNING

- **When reversing, pay special attention to obstacles that are higher or lower than the reversing sensor.**
- **In some specific cases, some obstacles that are very close to the back of the vehicle will not be detected by the parking sensor system, which may cause damage to the vehicle or damage to obstacles, such as low tree stumps, flower beds, etc.**
- **Sensors that are damaged, soiled, or covered by ice or snow, or ultrasonic waves generated near the vehicle (for example, the air brakes of a large truck or a pneumatic hammer) can interfere with the normal operation of the sensor.**

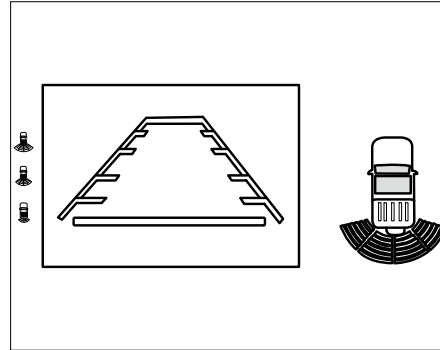
Backup rearview system *

General

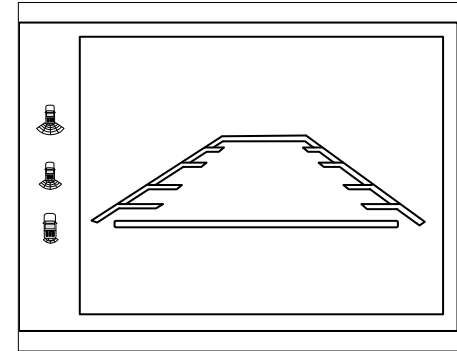
A back-up rearview camera on the rear bumper can assist the driver in reversing or manoeuvring. The original navigation system display shows the rear image captured by the back-up rearview camera. The back-up rear-view system is a system for displaying the environment behind the vehicle when the car is parked at low speed (such as entering a garage). The backup rear-view system is only a parking assistance system, which can not replace the objective analysis of obstacles by the driver.

System startup

When the vehicle is engaged in reverse gear ("R"), the back-up rear view system is automatically activated, and the DVD display switches to the back-up rear-view page. The backup sensor signal is superimposed on the backup rear-view screen to display.



The back-up rear-view screen displays the back-up sensor system screen in a superimposed manner. For details, please refer to "Backup Sensor System" on page 181.



The red line is 0.3 meters, and the yellow scales are 1 meter, 1.5 meters, 2 meters, 2.5 meters, and 3 meters in order from near to far.

For vehicles equipped with ESP: the track line swings left and right with the rotation of the steering wheel, indicating the driving track of the vehicle when reversing.

System exit

The back-up rearview system deactivates the system in two situations:

1. When the vehicle speed is greater than 15km/h, the DVD display shows a warning: "WARNING!!! The speed is too fast, the back-up safety assist system is turned off, please drive safely! ", and exit the back-up rear-view screen after 1s; when the vehicle speed is less than 15km/h again, enter the back-up rear-view screen again;
2. The vehicle exits reverse gear.

System fault

When the backup rear-view system fails, the backup rear-view screen has no image, and the DVD display screen appears with a text prompt "back-up rear-view camera failure". At this time, the backup rear-view system cannot work normally, so it should be repaired and tested at the licensed dealer of our company as soon as possible.

- When reversing, please do not be completely attracted by the rear-view screen, but also observe the surrounding traffic conditions at any time, including the traffic conditions in front of the vehicle.
- The rear-view camera cannot accurately judge the distance between the vehicle and the object, and it is necessary to judge the environmental conditions according to the actual situation.
- The back-up rearview system inevitably has a certain blind spot, and it is impossible to shoot things in the blind spot.
- The rear-view camera is blocked by ice, snow and debris, which will cause blurry or no image. Please keep the camera clean.

- In extreme weather, such as strong light, snow and ice, the display effect of the rear-view screen may be affected. Please adjust the driving mode accordingly.
- When backing up, the driver should be responsible to confirm that there are no people (especially children) and small animals in the operation area. During the reversing process, you cannot rely entirely on the back-up rearview system, and you should also pay attention to the surrounding environment, even if the speed during the operation is very low.

Precautions for the use of backup rear-view system

The backup rear-view system is only a parking assistance system, which can not replace the objective analysis of obstacles by the driver. Because the camera has a blind spot, some locations cannot be photographed.

Keep the camera clean and free from ice so that the camera can function properly. When cleaning your vehicle with a high-pressure washer, don't spray the camera for a long time. When spraying, the distance from the nozzle to the camera must be greater than 10cm.

Driving skills

Driving tips

Driving on paved roads

Compared with ordinary vehicles, this vehicle has a larger clearance from the ground in order to adapt to the driving on off-road roads. The special design makes this model taller than ordinary vehicles. When driving the vehicle, avoid sharp steering, so as not to cause the vehicle to lose control or even overturn.

Driving on off-road surfaces

During off-road driving, in order to obtain greater traction at low speed and improve the maneuverability in slippery or difficult areas, the transfer case should be engaged for low gear driving.

When the vehicle needs to be towed or controlled at a low speed on a snow covered road, shift the transmission to a low gear and the transfer case to a low gear if necessary. However, do not drive the vehicle in a low gear, which will cause excessive torque and wheel slip.

When driving on icy or slippery roads, do not use a gear that is too low, because the braking effect of the engine may cause the wheels to slip or lose control. For vehicles equipped with a limited-slip differential rear axle assembly, when cornering, the vehicle speed should be lower than that of vehicles with ordinary differentials, because under the action of limited-slip, high-speed cornering may cause wheel slip or loss of control.

When a vehicle equipped with a limited-slip differential rear axle assembly slips on one side of the rear wheel, the rear wheel may have a rapid impact rotation, which is caused by the structure of the limited-slip differential and is a normal phenomenon.

Attention

Although this car has off-road function, you still need to pay attention to the road conditions during driving to avoid accidents and personal injury.

Preparation before driving

It is a good idea to carry out a safety check before the vehicle leaves. The inspection only takes a few minutes but helps drive safely and enjoy driving. This inspection can be achieved with a general understanding of the vehicle's various parts.

WARNING

Drunk driving is one of the most common causes of accidents. Driving ability is greatly reduced by the increase of alcohol content in the blood. Please do not drive after drinking. Passengers should travel in vehicles driven by persons who are not drinking alcohol, or in taxis and other public transportation. After drinking, drinking coffee or taking a cold bath will also not keep you calm. Similarly, some prescription or over-the-counter drugs can affect a person's alertness, sensory sensitivity, and reaction time. Because of the effects of these drugs, it is important to check with your doctor or pharmacist if you are fit to drive a vehicle before driving if you have taken these drugs.

Before starting the engine

Tires: Check the tire pressure, and check for cuts, damage or excessive wear.

Wheel nuts: Make sure no nuts are missing or loose.

Lights: Make sure headlights, brake lights, high-mount brake light, tail lights, turn signal light and other lights all work properly. Inspect headlight lightening direction.

Seat belts: Make sure you and other passengers are seated and belted (children need to be seated in a specific child safety seat in the rear).

Move the driver's seat backwards as far as possible under the condition that the vision is good and the steering wheel, clutch pedal, brake pedal, accelerator pedal and other control components used in normal driving can be effectively controlled. Check whether there is fault display on the dashboard.

Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.

Ensure that infants and children are properly seated in accordance with regulations to ensure maximum protection in the event of an accident.

Instrument and controllers: in particular, make sure that the instrument indicator lights and defrosters are working properly.

Brake pedal: Make sure the brake pedal's free travel is enough.

All fluid levels: ensure that all fluid levels are normal.

12V battery conditions and cable: Inspect the condition of 12V battery according to the color of indicator light. Inspect whether there is corrosion or loosening on terminal and cracks on the shell. Inspect if the cable and connections are good.

After starting the engine

Fuel leakage: Park the vehicle for a while, and check the vehicle bottom for fuel, oil, water or other fluid leakages. If the air-conditioning drips after being used, this is normal.

In Driving

Instrument: Make sure the instrument is working properly.

Brakes: Check and make sure the vehicle does not pull to one side during braking on a safe road.

Other abnormalities: Check the parts for looseness and leakage, and listen to whether there are unusual noises.

Running-in period driving

To ensure your vehicle's service life, pay extra attention to how you drive at the initial stage before putting your vehicle into normal use. Specifications in running-in period:

- Drive on good roads under reduced load at limited speed.
- Avoid full-throttle starts and rapid acceleration.
- Do not brake sharply:
- Implement the operational regulations strictly and keep the engine at normal working temperature. Do not change the oil until the scheduled maintenance time.
- Do well in the routine vehicle maintenance work seriously, and always check and tighten the external fastening bolts and nuts. Pay attention to the sound and temperature changes of various assemblies during operation, and perform adjustment timely.

Run-in engine

A new engine must be run in for 1500 km.

Within the first 160km, the vehicle speed should be lower than 80km/h, and within the first 800km, the vehicle speed should be lower than 90km/h.

During the running-in period, the following should be observed:

- After a cold start, run for 15 seconds before starting to drive.
- During the initial driving period, you should avoid driving at full throttle, at the highest speed, at the same speed for a long time or running at high idle for a long time.
- During the first drive, it is generally not necessary to make adjustments to the engine.
- It is not necessary to change the oil or oil filter before the specified first service mileage is reached, unless the workload is very heavy.
- It is not necessary to change the oil or oil filter until the vehicle mileage has reached the specified first service mileage, unless the vehicle is under heavy duty.

At the early of break-in period, the internal frictional resistance of the engine is much greater than that after the break-in period. All the moving parts of the engine must be run in before achieving the best fit.

If the engine has been run in according to the above requirements, its service life can be prolonged and its fuel consumption can be reduced.

Breaking in tires and brake pads

To break in new tires, drive at moderate speeds within the first 500 km.

Be sure to break in new brake pads carefully for the first 200 km to achieve the optimal friction state.

WARNING

- **If new tires and brake pads had not been run in, they would not be provided with the best adhesion and friction. Be sure to drive carefully during the first 500km to run in the tires well to avoid accidents.**
- **You should also follow these recommendations when the brake pads are replaced.**
- **Keep an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance and try to avoid emergency braking while driving. This is because new tires and brake pads which have not been run in can cause accidents easily.**
- **If the brakes are affected with damp or frozen or you drive on salt roads, the braking effect can drop.**

WARNING

- **Heavy workload can cause your brakes overheat while going down a steep hill. We recommend you slow down by shifting to a lower gear so that you can get extra braking from the engine to reduce your brakes' workload.**
- **Always apply the brake according to the road and traffic conditions. Avoid unnecessary application of brake pedal. Doing so can cause brake overheating, resulting in a longer braking distance and excessive wear.**
- **Do not coast by turning off your engine. Since the brake booster is disabled, the braking distance will get extended greatly, resulting in accidents.**
- **Do not prolong the service time of the brake fluid. Be sure to replace the brake fluid according to the maintenance intervals.**

Driving Tips in Various Conditions

- In the lateral wind, you must drive at a low speed, so it is easy to control the vehicle.
- Maintain an appropriate angle to avoid driving at high, sharp-edged objects or other barriers on roads. Failure to do so may cause tire burst and other serious damage.
- When driving on bumpy roads or rough roads, reduce the speed, otherwise the corresponding impact and scratch will cause serious damage to the vehicle.
- Brake may be wet when the vehicle is washed or is running through deep water. Pay attention to the safety around, and then gently press the brake pedal. If there is no brake force, the brake may be wet. To make it dry, drive the vehicle at low speed while gently pressing the brake pedal when it is safe to do so. Drive your vehicle with care. If the brakes still cannot work properly. Park your vehicle on the roadside and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC for help.

WARNING

- **Before driving, make sure the parking brake is fully released.**
- **Do not put your foot on the brake pedal while driving, otherwise, the brake pad may be overheated and worn, resulting in fuel waste.**
- **When driving downhill, slow down the vehicle and shift to a low gear. If you overuse the brakes, they will overheat and not work properly.**
- **When driving on a smooth road, be careful when accelerating, upshifting, downshifting or braking. Sudden acceleration or engine braking can cause wheel slip or wheel spin.**
- **If the brakes are wet, the required braking distance will be longer than normal, and the vehicle may tilt to one side, and the parking brakes will not be able to brake the vehicle firmly.**

Driving in the Rain

When driving on slippery roads,

Use caution to drive when it is raining, because the visibility is poor, the windows may become foggy, and the road will be slippery.

- When it starts to rain, you should drive carefully because the road becomes slippery.
- Do not drive at high speed on the road when it rains, because the higher the speed, the easier it is to form a layer of water film between the tire and the road surface, which hinders the normal operation of the steering and brake system.

Driving on muddy road

After the vehicle runs on the mud road, the mud attached to the chassis shall be cleaned in time. Special attention should be paid to the vent plugs of the front and rear axles. If the mud is not cleaned in time, the vent plug cover will be pasted after it is dried, resulting in the failure of the vent plug to open normally for pressure relief, and eventually resulting in the leakage of the drive axle.

 **WARNING**

- **When driving on slippery roads, emergency braking, acceleration, and steering may cause tires to slip and reduce vehicle maneuverability, thus causing accidents.**
- **Rapid changes in engine speed, such as emergency engine braking, may cause the vehicle to slip and cause accidents.**
- **After driving through the puddle, please gently depress the brake pedal to ensure that the braking function is normal, and the wet brake pad cannot brake normally. If only one brake gets wet and does not work properly, it will affect the steering control and cause an accident. Do not drive on the road full of water after heavy rain, otherwise serious damage to the vehicle may occur.**

Traveling on water road

Although your vehicle has the function of wading, there are still some precautions to consider before this:

 **Attention**

When driving in water, the speed of the vehicle should not exceed 8 km/h. As a precaution, be sure to probe the water depth before driving the vehicle into the water, and check all fluids after passing through the water area. Damage that may result from driving the vehicle in water is not covered by the new vehicle warranty.

Take extra care when driving in water to ensure safety and prevent damage to your vehicle. If the vehicle must be driven in water, be sure to determine the water depth and submerged road conditions (and location of obstacles) before entering the water. Be careful when driving in deep water and maintain a steady control speed below 8 km/h to reduce the effects of water waves.

When a vehicle is driving in water, in addition to keeping a low speed, it should try not to stop, shift gears, recover the throttle or accelerate. It should pass at a constant speed with medium and high throttle in low gear, instead of passing quickly and splashing big waves or water.

After the vehicle leaves the accumulated water road surface, it should drive at low speed and lightly step on the brake pedal several times to dry the moisture in the brake pads.

If the car stalls in the water, do not start the engine immediately. Instead, shift the gear of the car to neutral as soon as possible and drag it to a safe place with less water.

Running water

If the water is flowing and the water level is rising (such as during a storm), you should avoid crossing and wait for the water level to recede and/or the flow rate to decrease before driving. If you have to drive through the water flow area, but you cannot drive in the water more than 20 cm deep. Running water will erode the riverbed and may cause vehicles to sink deeper into the water. Please determine the drive-in water position and drive-out water position in advance.

Still water

Do not drive the vehicle in still water more than 50 cm deep. When driving the vehicle in water below 50 cm depth, the maximum speed is not higher than 8 km/h to reduce the impact of water waves.

Maintenance

After driving your vehicle out of deep water, check your vehicle fluids and lubricants (engine oil, transmission fluid, axles, transfer case) to make sure the fluids are not contaminated. Contaminated fluid (creamy, foamy appearance) should be flushed/replaced as soon as possible to prevent damage to parts.

WARNING

Water entering the engine is a very serious problem. If you try to start the engine again at this time, the engine will be damaged.

After the vehicle is wading in water, the moisture in the brake pads should be removed in time, otherwise it may cause serious danger or accident due to loss of braking.

Essentials of driving in winter

The engine shall be fully preheated. After starting the engine, warm it up for a period of time to lubricate each cylinder with engine oil, and then drive the vehicle slowly. Drive at low speed at the beginning, so that the lubricating oil of transmission, transfer case and rear axle has enough time to lubricate all lubricating parts.

Check battery and cable condition

Check the battery, including connectors and wires. In particularly cold weather, the battery will be affected. Because more energy is required to start the vehicle and drive, the capacity of the battery will decrease. Before driving the vehicle, check whether the engine speed is normal. Check that the headlights are as bright as usual. Charge the battery or replace the battery if necessary. When the weather is particularly cold, the battery with very low capacity may freeze and the vehicle cannot be started normally.

Make sure the oil viscosity is suitable for driving in cold weather

In winter, if a large amount of summer oil remains in the engine, it may cause the vehicle to be difficult to start. If you are not sure which oil to use, please contact the nearest authorized dealer of BAIC for assistance.

3

Check the engine coolant

Coolant approved by our company must be used.

If the engine coolant is found to be insufficient, please replenish the coolant in time.

Avoid freezing the door lock

Spray some deicing agent or glycerin into the door lock hole to prevent freezing.

Use Windshield Washer Fluid with Anti-freeze

This product is sold at the authorized dealer of BAIC

Don't accumulate snow and ice under the fender

Ice and snow accumulate under the fender, which will make steering difficult. When driving in cold weather, stop frequently to check whether there is snow and ice under the fender.

According to different driving destinations, BAIC suggests to carry some necessary emergency supplies.

Items that may need to be placed on the vehicle include: Tire snow chains, window scrapers, sandbags or salt bags, signal flash devices, small shovels, jumper cables, etc.

Efficient use of vehicles

- Maintain correct tire pressure. Insufficient air pressure can cause tire wear and adversely affect fuel economy.
- Make sure the wheel alignment is accurate. Inaccurate wheel alignment can cause the tires wear out faster, increase the engine load and waste fuel.
- Avoid loading unnecessary weight in your vehicle. Excessive load will increase the engine load, resulting in a large amount of fuel consumption.
- Slowly accelerate speed, and avoid sudden start. Shift to a higher gear as soon as possible.
- Try to avoid traffic jam to prevent continuous acceleration and deceleration as well as stop-go which cause fuel Economical efficiency waste.
- Avoid unnecessary parking and braking and keep a stable vehicle speed. When driving with traffic lights, you can minimize the number of stops or drive on the main road without traffic lights. Keep a proper distance from other vehicles to avoid sudden braking. This will also reduce brake wear.

- Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal. This will cause excessive wear and overheating of the brake pads, resulting in a waste of fuel.
- Avoid hitting curbs while driving. Slow down when driving on rugged roads.
- Don't let the chassis stick mud. This can reduce self-weight of the car and prevent corrosion.
- Adjust the vehicle to keep it in the best working condition. Dirty air filter, improper valve clearance, dirty spark plugs, dirty oil and grease, etc., will reduce engine performance and waste fuel. To extend the service life of all components and reduce operating costs, be sure to perform scheduled maintenance. Maintain your vehicle more frequently if you often drive under a severe condition.

Fuel economy

Fuel economy is related to many factors. Personal driving habits will have an important impact on fuel consumption. The recommendations listed below help to achieve optimum fuel economy:

- After cold start, you can drive away slowly for several minutes. Do not accelerate until the engine warms up.
- Unload the unnecessary cargoes before driving.
- Keep the tire pressure properly.
- Try to drive on good roads.
- Avoid rapid acceleration. Press the accelerator pedal gently. Do not press the accelerator pedal hard when starting or press the brake pedal hard to stop.
- Do not drive at high speed with the windows open.
- Use the air-conditioning, audio system and other properly.
- Close all doors unnecessary to open.
- If you need to park your vehicle for an extended period of time, shut off the engine and prevent the engine from idling for a prolonged time.
- Drive on level road surfaces at economic speed.

- Always drive in an appropriate gear based on the running speed. Do not drive in a low gear at high speed.
- Be sure to maintain your vehicle as per the scheduled maintenance.
- When the vehicle starts again after it stops at the signal light or stop sign, it shall accelerate slowly and evenly.
- Plan your route to avoid unnecessary stops.
- Keep the tire pressure at the recommended pressure.
- Keep the air filter clean and maintain the vehicle according to the recommendations in the owner's manual.
- Keep the vehicle state adjusted. Improper engine adjustment will waste fuel and increase costs.

4. Maintenance

Safety maintenance.....	195
Fuel system.....	198
Interior maintenance.....	201
Exterior maintenance.....	204
Engine Compartment.....	211
Engine oil.....	219
Coolant.....	230
Brake fluid.....	234
Power steering fluid.....	237
Battery.....	239
Windshield washer fluid and wiper blades.....	243
Tire.....	246

Safety maintenance

The service items not mentioned in this chapter shall be completed by approved or other qualified technicians.

Important Safety Precautions

To eliminate potential hazards, read the instructions before you begin, and make sure you have the tools and skills required.

- Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the engine is off, and the parking brake is set.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not gasoline.
- Keep ignited cigarettes, sparks and open flames away from batteries and all related components of the fuel system.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.

WARNING

Incorrect vehicle maintenance or unresolved driving failures may cause traffic accidents, resulting in serious injury or death.

Potential Vehicle Hazards

- Carbon Monoxide: Carbon Monoxide from engine exhaust is poisonous. Be sure there is adequate ventilation whenever you operate the engine.
- Burns from hot parts: The engine, cooling system and exhaust system are very hot during operation, and this can cause scalding easily. Therefore, stop the vehicle for at least 30 minutes to let the engine, cooling system and exhaust system cool down before touching any parts.

Attention

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether or not you should perform a given task.

Regular Maintenance

The safety, reliability and good performance of a vehicle depend on how you maintain it. Because maintenance is the owner's responsibility, you must carry out routine maintenance, oil change, routine inspection and brake fluid and coolant change according to BAIC recommendations.

Maintenance record

The "Quality Guarantee" contains a maintenance record page, which can be used to record the oil change and inspection information of the vehicle. Beijing auto dealerships will also use maintenance record pages to record information such as changing brake fluid, replacing airbag modules and seat belt tightening devices.

After each oil change and inspection, you must have the signature and stamp of the authorized dealer of BAIC on the maintenance record page.

Replace the brake fluid

Brake fluid should be changed every 2 years, regardless of the mileage of the vehicle. BAIC authorized dealer will change the brake fluid at the same time as the oil change or inspection when the 2 years expire, so as to avoid you having to visit the authorized dealer of BAIC one more time for this.

Replace the coolant

Engine coolant should be changed at least every 2 years, regardless of the mileage the vehicle has driven. BAIC authorized dealer will change the coolant at the same time as the oil change or inspection when the 2 years expire, so as to avoid you having to visit the authorized dealer of BAIC one more time for this.

Exhaust Emission Control

Your vehicle is equipped with exhaust emission and evaporation devices that comply with national and legal regulations. You should know that it is illegal for the owner or motor vehicle maintenance personnel to replace, modify and adjust these devices without authorization, and they are responsible for all consequences.

Moreover, you can't make any adjustments to the engine settings. The purpose of these regulations is to ensure that your vehicle complies with strict emission regulations. Incorrect engine settings can have a negative impact on exhaust emissions, engine performance and fuel consumption, as well as high temperatures that can lead to damage to the three-way catalytic converter and the engine.

Maintenance of vehicle owner

1. Check coolant level
2. Check brake fluid level
3. Check power steering fluid level
4. Check the fluid level of windshield cleaner
5. Check tire pressure and status
6. Check the A/C effect

Special operation state

If your vehicle is often driven in a dusty environment or in extreme weather with extremely high or low ambient temperature, you should pay extra attention to maintenance. For details, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC.

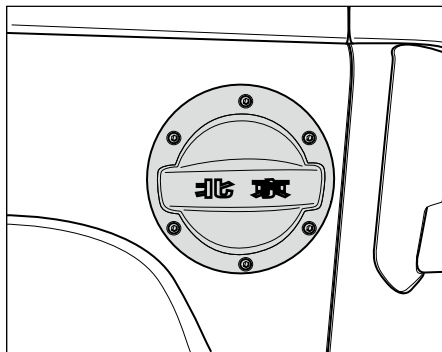
Safety during vehicle maintenance

After the engine stops running, the cooling fan may turn and continue to run for a period of time. Keep a distance from the fan when working in the engine compartment.

If maintenance of the vehicle is required, the following safety precautions should be observed:

1. Keep your hands, clothes, and drive belts and pulleys at a safe distance.
2. If the vehicle has just been used, do not touch the components of the exhaust and cooling system until the engine has completely cooled down.
3. Do not touch wires or electrical components while the engine is running or the start/stop button is in "RUN" mode.
4. Do not let the engine run in poorly ventilated places, because the exhaust gas is poisonous and may cause danger.
5. Do not work under a vehicle supported only by a jack for changing wheels.
6. Make sure the sparks stay away from the engine compartment.
7. Wear protective clothing at work and gloves made of impermeable materials if possible.
8. When working in the engine compartment, remove the watch and jewelry.
9. Do not let the tools or metal parts of the vehicle contact the terminal of the battery.

Fuel system

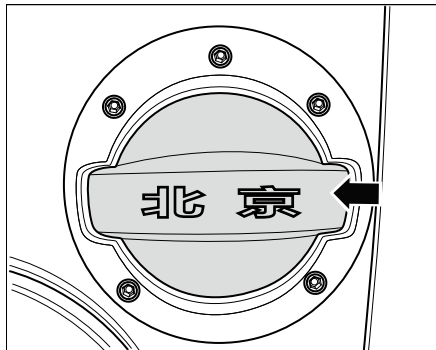


The fuel filler is located on the left rear side wall.

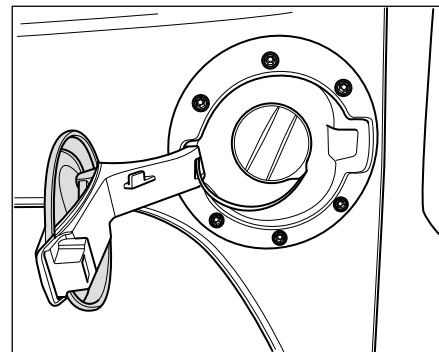
4

Fill the fuel

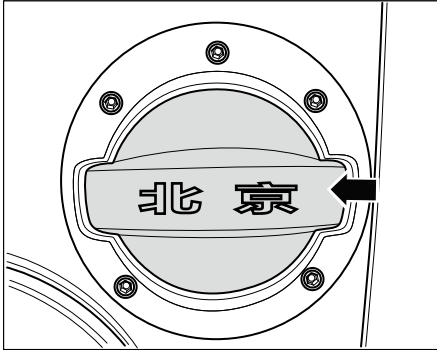
Please shut down the engine before refueling. Then perform the operation as per the following procedures:



1. After the central control is unlocked, press the arrow to indicate the area.



2. When the fuel filler door pops up, the fuel filler cap can be opened for fuel filling.
3. When filling fuel, pay attention to the holding mode of the fuel filling gun: do not make the filling gun skew. Insert the filler gun as deep as possible into the fuel tank filler line.
4. When the filling gun stops automatically, continue filling at a lower filling speed. When the refill gun stops for the second time, don't try to continue refilling.
5. Cover the filler cap and slowly twist it clockwise until you hear three "clicks".



6. After closing the filler cap, press the arrow to indicate the area and close the filler door.
7. When the door lock is locked, the filler door is locked.

⚠ WARNING

- As the fuel vapor is very flammable, smoking and sparks or open flames are prohibited in the vehicle refueling area,
- While opening up the fuel tank cap, never remove the cap immediately. On a hot day, if the fuel filler cap is suddenly removed, high pressure gas can be ejected from the filler and cause personal injury.
- Make sure the fuel filler cap is tightened to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.

👁 Attention

Please comply with the above regulations when refueling; For example, after the fuel gun stops automatically for the second time, the fuel tank is "full", so there is no need to continue refueling, otherwise, the expansion space in the fuel tank will be filled-the fuel may overflow when heated.

Wipe off the spilled fuel on the paint surface of the car body immediately.

Try not to run out of fuel on vehicles equipped with catalytic purifiers. Irregular fuel supply will lead to misfire, resulting in unburned fuel entering the exhaust device, which will overheat and damage the catalytic purifier.

Fuel

In order to ensure performance, it is necessary to use gasoline that conforms to the grade (see the technical data section for details).

Using low-grade or inferior gasoline will shorten the engine life.

Attention

If the gasoline octane number (RON) selected in emergency is lower than the octane number required by the engine, the engine can only run at medium speed and low load. Large load or high speed of engine at full accelerator will damage engine. Fill in fuel with specific research octane value as much as possible.

Vehicles equipped with catalytic converters can only use unleaded gasoline, once refilling leaded gasoline will damage the catalytic converter.

Interior maintenance

Attention

- Never clean the instrument panel and the airbag module surface with solvent-containing detergent.
- The detergent containing solvent will penetrate the surface of the cleaned parts, resulting in fine pores on the surface and loosening of the parts. When the airbag inflates, this can significantly increase the chances of damaging such loose plastic parts.
- Never treat the leather materials with solvents (such as gasoline, turpentine), floor waxes, shoe polish or the like.
- Do not expose your vehicle to intense sunlight for long periods of time to prevent leather or similar items from fading. If your vehicle needs to be parked outdoors for an extended period of time, be sure to cover the leather materials to prevent them being exposed to sunlight.

Attention

- Objects with sharp edges (such as zip-fastener, rivets, etc.) may leave permanent scratches or scratches on the leather surface.
- Do not remove the seat belt to clean it.
- Do not clean the seat belts with chemical cleaning agents, because the chemical cleaning agents will damage their fabrics.
- Seat-belts shall not be in contact with corrosive liquid.
- Check the seat belt conditions regularly. If any damage to the fabrics belts, seat belt connections, seat belt retractors and locking parts is detected, go to the authorized dealer of BAIC for repair.

Cleaning and maintaining the instrument and plastic parts

Clean the surfaces of the instrument and plastic parts with a clean soft cloth and fresh water.

Otherwise, use the special solvent-free plastic cleaning agent.

WARNING

It's forbidden to clean the dashboard and airbag system with the compartment spray and solvent detergent; otherwise, the surface may get loose and the airbag may be triggered, resulting in serious injury to passengers.

Cleaning and maintaining the carpet

Please frequently clean dust on the carpet with the cleaner

Periodically shampoo the carpet with the foam-type cleaner to keep it clean.

Attention

Follow the instructions that come with the cleaner.

It is strictly forbidden to add foam detergent into water. Make sure that the rug is dry.

4

Cleaning and maintenance of leather

1. Vacuum dirt and dust from the leather frequently.
2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with clear water.
3. Dry it with another dry soft cloth.
4. If the above work still can't clean the stains, you can use special leather washing soap or detergent to clean them.

Attention

After you wipe the leather using the special detergent, wipe it down as soon as possible with a soft, dry cloth.

Don't place a soft cloth dampened with detergent in any part of the interior for an extended period so as not to cause the resin or fiber of the interior braid to fade or break.

Cleaning and maintaining the seat belts

1. Pull out seat belt slowly and hold it.
2. Wipe off the stains on seat belts with soft brush and neutral soap water.
3. After seat belts become dry completely, retract the seat belts.

 **WARNING**

- Do not use chemical cleaning agents to clean the seat belts to avoid damage to the seat belt webbing, affecting its function.
- When replacing the belt, be sure to use a new belt of the same model and structure.
- Prevent foreign matter or liquids from entering the seat belt buckles. Failure to do so can cause the buckles and the belts to function abnormally.
- Do not remove or modify seat belt.
- Always check the condition of your seat belts regularly. In case of damage to the seat belt base, connecting device, winding mechanism or lock catch, it must be repaired and replaced at the authorized dealer of BAIC as soon as possible.

 **Attention**

- Only after seat belts become dry completely, retract the seat belts; otherwise, the seat belt retractor will be damaged.
- You should check the condition of your seat belts regularly to keep them clean and ensure they function properly.

Exterior maintenance

Attention

- To avoid damage to the braking function, always prevent the brakes from being damped or frozen.
- When you clean the bottom of the vehicle, the lower side of the fenders (wheel covers) and the wheel cover boards, be careful to prevent your hand from being scratched by sharp-edged metals.
- For automatic transmission model I, if the automatic vehicle washing device is used, the transmission must be put into "N" gear in advance, and the start/stop button should be put in "OFF" mode when cleaning the vehicle.
- For automatic transmission model II, if the automatic vehicle washing device is used, the transmission must be engaged in "N" gear, and care should be taken not to turn off the engine at this time.
- Do not use coarse sponge or corrosive cleaning products to clean the car body paint, the paint is in danger of damage!

- Do not cluster nozzles to clean tires! Even if the spray distance is large and the spray time is very short, the tires can be damaged.

Attention

- It is recommended to wax the vehicle after it has been driven for 6 months.
- Do not wax the vehicle windows.
- Do not clean the headlight surface with any sharp objects, which may damage the protective paint surface and form cracks in the headlight.
- Pay attention when cleaning wheels: damp, ice, and anti-skid salt scattered on the road will affect the braking effect.
- Do not install protective plates or apply anti-corrosion materials around high-temperature components such as exhaust mufflers, exhaust pipes, and catalytic converters. These substances may catch fire when the vehicle is running.

Vehicle Cleaning

Frequent washing helps preserve your vehicle's beauty.

Wash your vehicle in a shady area, not in direct sunlight. If the vehicle is parked in the sun, move it into the shade and let the exterior cool down before you start.

When cleaning vehicles through the automatic car washer, please follow the instructions of the car washer operator.

Attention

- Although the body paint is strong to withstand the flushing from the automatic car washer, pay attention to its impact on the paint. The washer structure, detergent, fresh water filtration, and type of wax solvent which do not meet the specified requirements are likely to cause damage to the paint.

- **For automatic transmission model I, if automatic vehicle washing device is used, the transmission must be put into "N" gear and the start/stop button should be put in "OFF" mode before vehicle washing.**
- **For automatic transmission model II, if the automatic vehicle washing device is used, the transmission must be engaged in "N" gear, and care should be taken not to turn off the engine at this time.**

Automatic vehicle washing device

The vehicle paint has certain durability. Generally, cleaning the vehicle in the automatic vehicle washing equipment will not affect the vehicle paint condition. Impact on vehicle paint largely depends on the structure of vehicle washing device and the type of vehicle washing water filter, detergent and maintaining agent, etc. If vehicle paint is not glossy and even has scratches after vehicle washing, point it out to operator of vehicle washing device immediately

For automatic transmission model II, if the automatic vehicle washing device is used, the transmission must be engaged in "N" gear, and care should be taken not

to turn off the engine at this time. If you need to move the vehicle with the engine off, be sure to shift the transmission forced unlock to the "N" gear by the emergency unlock mechanism of the transmission "P" gear ("Emergency unlock of transmission "P" gear on page 162). After washing the vehicle, the emergency unlocking mechanism of "P" gear of the transmission should be released, and the transmission should be put into "P" gear before starting the engine.

Manual cleaning of vehicles

1. Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with cool water to remove loose dirt.
2. Prepare a bucket of water and mix the water with special washing detergent.
3. Wash the vehicle, using a soft cloth, sponge or bristle brush. Start at the top and work your way down. Rinse frequently.
4. Finally, rinse the wheels, doorsills and others. When washing, replace the sponge or soft cloth.
5. After you finish scrubbing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly with a plenty of water.

6. When you have washed and rinsed the whole exterior, dry it with a soft towel or fur.

Attention

Check the body for road tar and other stains. Remove these stains with tar remover. Rinse it off immediately so it does not harm the finish. As you dry the vehicle, check it for chips and scratches. If found, it should be repaired at the authorized dealer of BAIC

Use extra care to wash the vehicle with a high-pressure washer. Follow the instructions and requirements which come on with the high-pressure washer. Pay particular attention to the operating pressure and the spray rinsing distance.

 **WARNING**

Water, ice and antiskid salt in the Brake system can cause reaction retardation of the brakes, resulting in a longer braking distance which is likely to lead to accidents.

- **Press the brake pedal gently to test the brakes before driving.**
- **Try to avoid emergency braking before removing the ice or antiskid salt from the brakes. Apply the brake with extra care to avoid traffic accidents.**

 **WARNING**

- **Be sure to read and follow the relevant information and warnings before using.**
- **When washing the vehicle, pay attention to personal safety, pay special attention to the bottom of the vehicle and the inside of the wheel cover, so as to prevent hands and arms from being hurt by sharp parts.**
- **When cleaning the vehicle, do not flush water directly into the engine compartment, otherwise the service life of various parts in the engine compartment will be affected.**

Waxing

Regular waxing helps protect your vehicle body's paint and keep the body bright and clean.

Waxing can only be carried out after drying the complete vehicle.

You should use a quality paint protective wax.

In order to protect body paint surface, it is suggested to high quality hard wax every year to protect paint surface from being corrosive due to poor environment and withstand light mechanical scratch.

High quality wax type

Body wax: Waxes used to protect paint surfaces from external environmental damage such as sun exposure and air pollution, generally used in new cars.

Polishes: Polishes can restore the shine to paint that has oxidized and lost some of its shine. They are mainly used to restore the shine to paint.

 **Attention**

Do not wax in a dusty environment.

Polishing

Polishing is needed only when vehicle paint becomes dim and more gloss can not be reached by using waxing materials. If the used polishing agent does not contain preservative composition, vehicle must be waxed subsequently.

Attention

Unpolished parts and plastic parts can not be treated with polishing agent or hard wax.

Vehicle paint damages

Slight vehicle paint damages, such as scrapes, scratches or stone bruises should be covered by vehicle paint before rusting.

If vehicle has been rusted already, thoroughly remove rust, Apply anti-corrosion primer and covering paint at the rusted position. These work should be carried out at the authorized dealer of BAIC.

Cleaning and maintaining the external plastic parts

In general, clean the external plastic parts with fresh water, soft cloth and bristle brush. If cleaning is needed further, use the recommended special solvent-free plastic cleaning agent.

Attention

Do not use solvent-containing cleaning materials when cleaning plastic parts, otherwise, it will easily cause damage to the plastic parts.

Maintenance of chromium-plated parts

Chromium-plated parts can be cleaned with a damp cloth, and then polished with a soft dry cloth. If the results are not good enough, use the maintenance agents for chromium.

The stain and dirt layer on the chromium-plated parts can be removed with the maintenance agents for chromium. Regular use of the maintenance agents for chromium can prevent the dirt layer from forming on the surface. When the maintenance agent for chromium is used, apply it onto the whole surface evenly and completely.

Window glass and rearview mirror cleaning

Clean the window glass and mirrors with alcoholic glass cleaner, and then dry glass surface with a clean, lint-free, soft cloth or leather.

Attention

Do not wipe the window glass and exterior mirrors with leather that has been brushed against the body paint, otherwise the residual wax on the leather will cause the glass surface to become blurred.

If there is residual rubber, grease and silicone on the glass, remove it using the special window cleaner or silicone cleaner.

After the body surface is maintained, remove the residual wax on the glass with the special cleaner and a clean cloth to protect the wipers from being scratched.

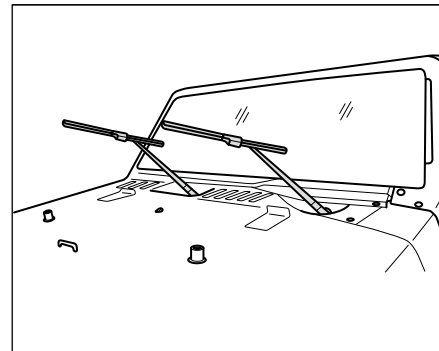
Remove the snows on the windows and mirrors using a bristle brush.

Deicing spray can be used to remove ice and ice removal shovels, but special care must be taken so as not to damage parts and remove ice in the same direction when used.

Attention

- **Do not scratch the window glass and rearview mirror back and forth.**
- **Do not use warm water or hot water to remove the ice and snow on the window glass and rearview mirror, otherwise the glass may burst.**

Front windshield wiper blade cleaning



Operation:

1. Lift the wiper arm away from the windshield.
2. Only hold the blade holder during operation.
3. Remove the dust and dirt from the blades with care with a soft cloth.
4. After cleaning, gently put the wiper arm to the original position.

 Attention

- **Replace the damaged blade in time.**
- **A new wiper blade surface is coated with a layer of graphite which can make the wiper blade to move smoothly without scratching noise. If the graphite layer is damaged, the wiping noise will rise, and replace the wiper in time.**
- **In winter or cold weather, check whether the wiper blades are frozen against the windshield before operating them. If so, first deicing treatment, otherwise it will cause damage to the wiper blade and wiper motor.**

Maintaining the sealing strips

Frequent and appropriate protection of the rubber sealing strips for the doors, windows and other parts can maintain their flexibility and prolong their service life. This can also improve the leakproofness, allow the door to be opened easily and reduce the impact sound of closing the doors. At the same time, it is not easy to be frozen in winter.

Maintenance operation:

1. Use a soft cloth to remove dust and dirt from the surface of the sealing strip.
2. Apply the special protective agent to the sealing strips regularly.

 Attention

Both sides of the front roof are designed as drainage channels. There will be a small amount of water after rain. After the front door is opened, a small amount of water may pop into the vehicle.

Cleaning and maintaining the wheels

Regular maintenance of wheels can keep beautiful, and at the same time, anti-skid salt and braking wear debris on wheels should be removed regularly, which can keep the smoothness of wheel surface and prolong its service life.

Regular operation**Every two weeks**

Remove the antiskid salt and wear debris from the wheels.

Clean the wheels with acid-free detergent.

Every three months

Apply the high-quality hard wax to the aluminum alloy wheels.

 **WARNING**

- **Be sure to clean the wheels with acid-free detergent.**
- **Do not clean the wheels with the auto polishing agent or other abrasive.**
- **If the protective clear-coat of the wheels is damaged, be sure to repair it in time.**
- **Using the high-pressure washer may cause permanent visible or invisible damage to the wheels, causing casualty.**
- **Never clean the tires with the cluster nozzles. Even a long-distance cleaning for a short period of time may cause damage to the tires, causing traffic accidents.**

Chassis Protection

The bottom of the vehicle has been protected to reduce the degree of chemical and mechanical damage. However, during driving, the protective layer damage is inevitable. It is recommended to check the protective layers of the vehicle bottom and chassis at regular intervals of time, preferably before the winter and in spring. If necessary, repair it. The BAIC authorized dealer can provide appropriate maintenance services.

 **WARNING**

- **If the user accidentally holds the bottom of the vehicle during use, please go to the nearby BAIC authorized maintenance station for maintenance immediately.**

Description of catalytic exhaust purifier

Because the exhaust gas after combustion will generate high temperature, additional heat shields are installed in the area of exhaust gas catalytic purifier.

Do not use any base plate protective layer on these heat shields, catalytic converters and exhaust pipes, and it is also not allowed to remove the heat shields.

Cavity anticorrosion treatment

All vehicle cavities susceptible to corrosion hazards have been durable protected by BAIC. Anticorrosive treatment requires neither inspection nor follow-up treatment. If hard wax drips from the cavity due to external high temperature, the hard wax can be removed by washing with a plastic scraper and gasoline.

Engine Compartment

Safety instructions for engine compartment

When operations such as checking and filling in operating fluid are carried out in engine or engine compartment, scalds or other injuries may occur, and risk of accidents and fires exist.

Therefore, attention must be paid to the following warning instructions and basic safety regulations.

When filling the working fluid, it must be ensured that the working fluid is not confused, otherwise serious functional failure will be caused.

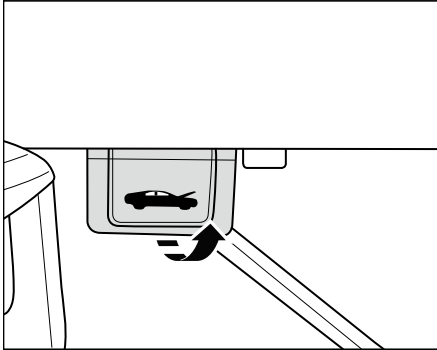
WARNING

- Do not open the engine hatch if you see steam or coolant escaping - there is a risk of burns! Do not open the engine hood until no steam or coolant has escaped and the engine has cooled down.
- Do not leak working liquid in high temperature engine or exhaust device, there is a fire hazard!
- Do not touch the cooling fan. The cooling fan is temperature controlled and may be switched on automatically after the vehicle is turned off.
- For safety reasons, the engine compartment hood must be locked during driving. Therefore, it is necessary to check whether the locking device has been locked after closing the engine compartment hood. If it is locked, the engine compartment hood should be flush with the surrounding components of the body.

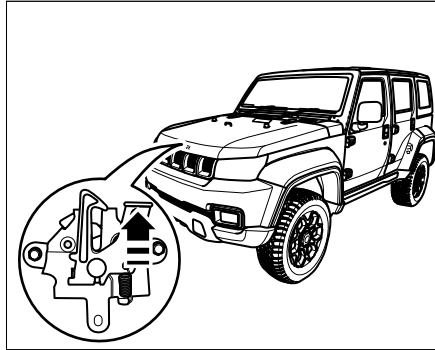
WARNING

- To protect your face, hands, and arms from hot steam and coolant, cover the lock cap with a wide, heavy cotton cloth when removing it.
- No items, such as cleaning cloths or tools, should be left in the engine compartment.
- When people operate or repair the vehicle under the vehicle, they should ensure that the vehicle will not move and be firmly supported by jack support frame. Vehicle jacks alone are not enough-there is a danger of injury!

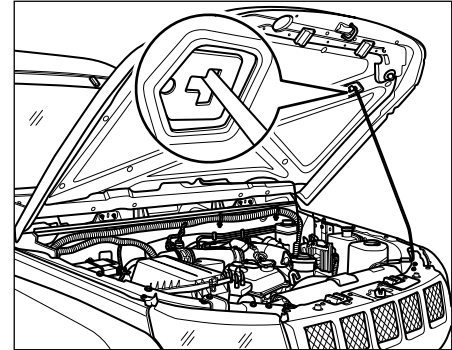
Engine compartment hood on and off



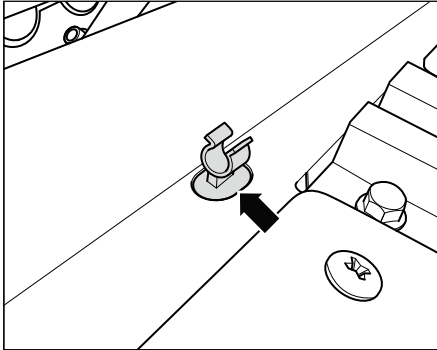
Park the vehicle, apply the parking brake, and pull the hood lock release handle from inside the vehicle. At this time, the hood master lock is opened, and the hood will bounce up slightly.



Lift the engine compartment hood gently, press the secondary lock opening handle upward with your fingers, and lift the engine compartment hood upward.



Support the engine compartment hood support rod at the front of the engine compartment and insert its upper end into the designated position on the engine compartment hood to ensure that the engine compartment hood is fixed at the limit position.

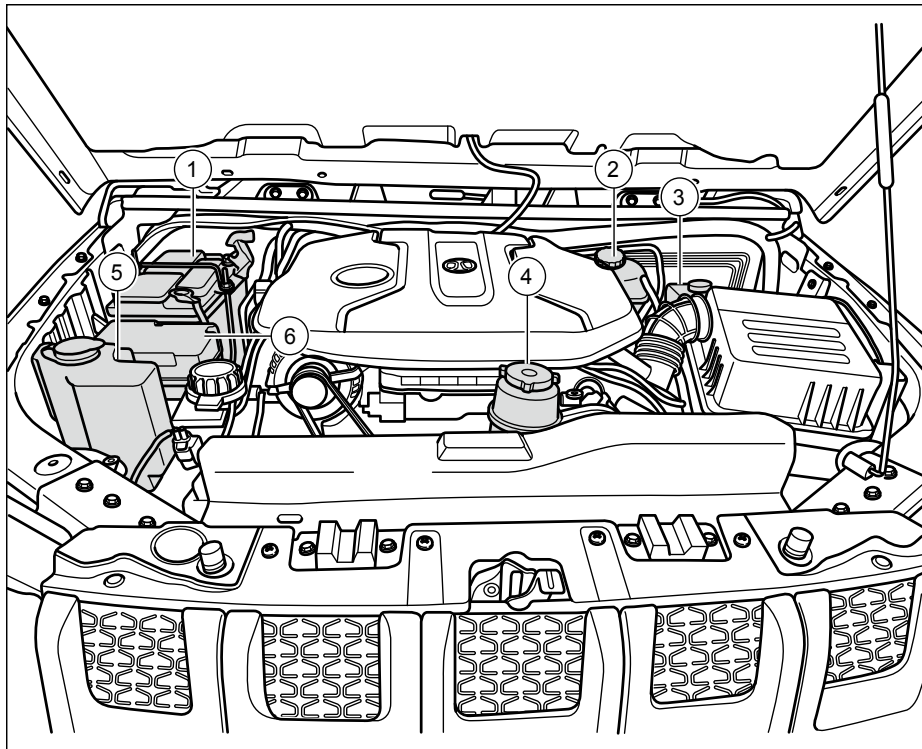


When closing the engine compartment hood, remove the support rod and put it back into the bracket at the front of the engine compartment. Lower the hood close to the fender and release the hood. After the engine compartment hood is closed, inspect whether the buckle is locked firmly.

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive the vehicle if the engine compartment hood is not securely closed.

Engine compartment layout (B201R/B231R gasoline models)

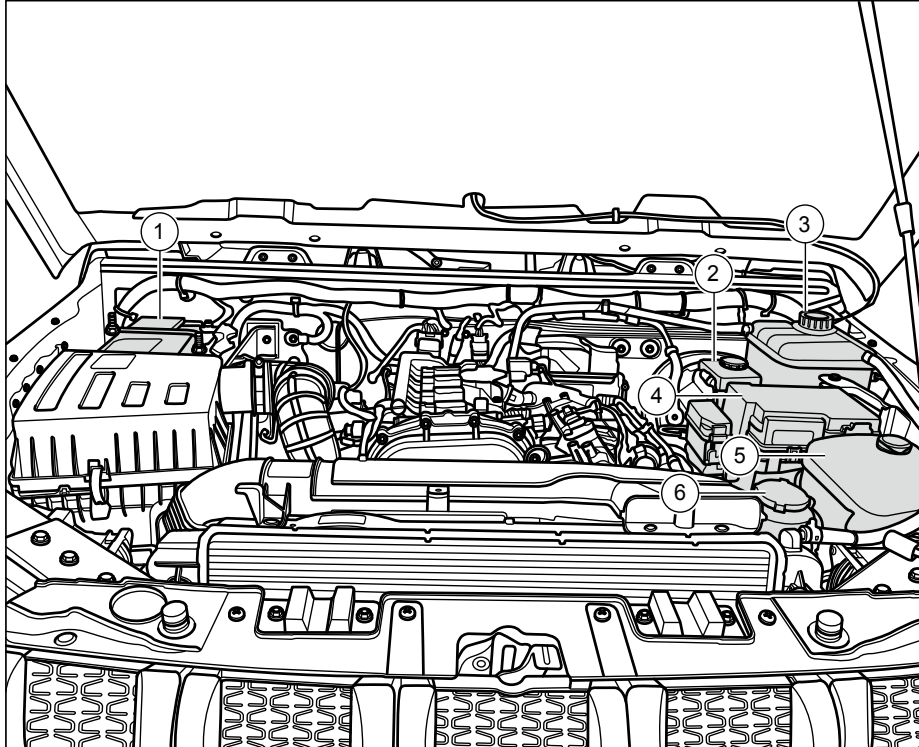


1. Battery
2. Engine coolant reservoir
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Power steering liquid reservoir
5. Washer fluid reservoir of windshield.
6. Fuse (located under the cover plate)

 Attention

Before the engine compartment hood is opened to the maximum position, it is necessary to remove the washing pipeline from the fastener to prevent the pipeline from being broken. Please reinstall the washing pipeline before closing the engine compartment hood.

Engine compartment layout (4G20T13 gasoline models)

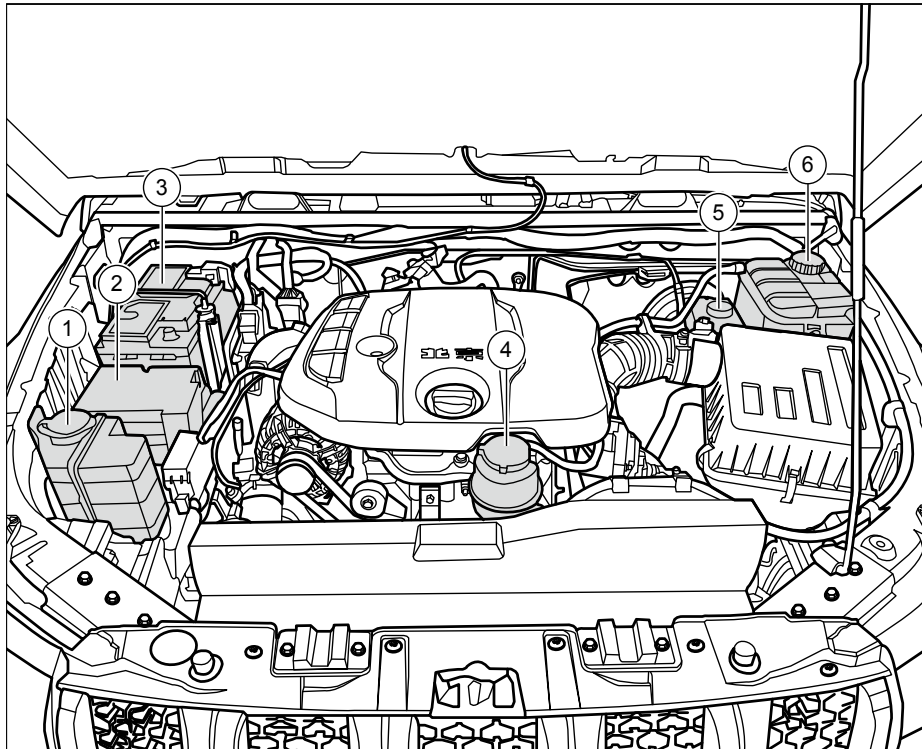


1. Battery
2. Brake fluid reservoir
3. Engine coolant reservoir
4. Fuse (located under the cover plate)
5. Washer fluid reservoir of windshield.
6. Power steering liquid reservoir

Attention

Before the engine compartment hood is opened to the maximum position, it is necessary to remove the washing pipeline from the fastener to prevent the pipeline from being broken. Please reinstall the washing pipeline before closing the engine compartment hood.

Engine compartment layout (B237R gasoline models)

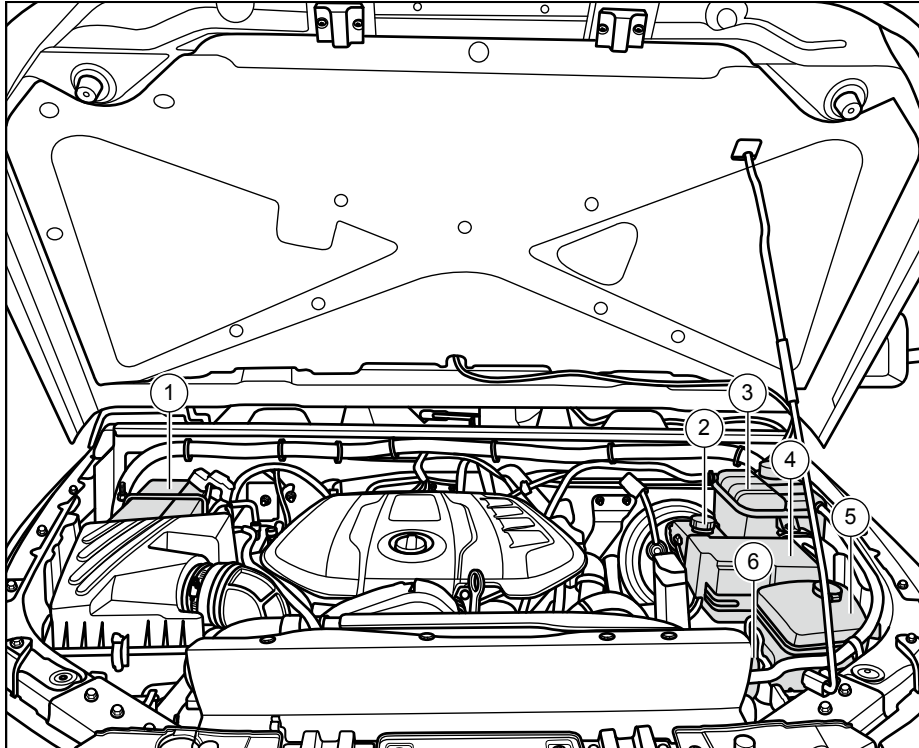


1. Washer fluid reservoir of windshield.
2. Fuse(box located under the cover plate)
3. Battery
4. Power steering liquid reservoir
5. Brake fluid reservoir
6. Engine coolant reservoir

Attention

Before the engine compartment hood is opened to the maximum position, it is necessary to remove the washing pipeline from the fastener to prevent the pipeline from being broken. Please reinstall the washing pipeline before closing the engine compartment hood.

Engine compartment layout (HY4C20B gasoline models)

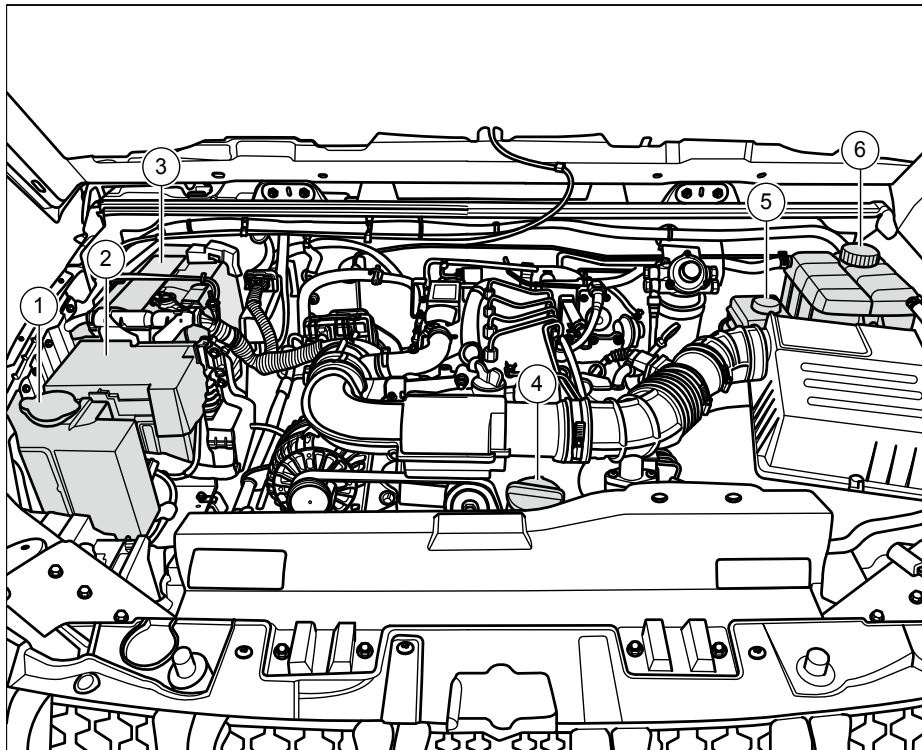


1. Battery
2. Brake fluid expansion tank
3. Coolant expansion reservoir
4. Fuse (located under the cover plate)
5. Washer fluid reservoir of windshield.
6. Power steering liquid reservoir

Attention

Before the engine compartment hood is opened to the maximum position, it is necessary to remove the washing pipeline from the fastener to prevent the pipeline from being broken. Please reinstall the washing pipeline before closing the engine compartment hood.

Engine compartment layout (diesel model)



1. Washer fluid reservoir of windshield.
2. Fuse (located under the cover plate)
3. Battery
4. Power steering liquid reservoir
5. Brake fluid reservoir
6. Engine coolant reservoir

 Attention


Before the engine compartment hood is opened to the maximum position, it is necessary to remove the washing pipeline from the fastener to prevent the pipeline from being broken. Please reinstall the washing pipeline before closing the engine compartment hood.

Engine oil

Check the engine oil level every week. If it is lower than the lower limit mark of the oil dipstick, stop the vehicle on the flat ground in time. When the engine is cooled, it is the best time to check the oil level. If the engine is running and warmed up, shut down the engine and wait for at least 15 minutes before checking the oil level.

Low oil pressure indicator

The oil pressure warning light is located in the display of the information center. When the start/stop button is in the "RUN" position (the engine is not started), the vehicle self-checks, the oil pressure warning light is on, and the warning light goes off when the engine is started.

If the warning light  flashes while driving, you must immediately shut down the engine, check the engine oil level, and add engine oil if necessary.

Do not continue to drive or let the engine idle if the low oil pressure indicator still stays on even if the oil level is normal. Contact the authorized dealer of BAIC as soon as possible to overhaul the system.

WARNING

Ignoring the low oil pressure indicator and the relevant warnings can cause serious accidents.

Engine oil level check

If the warning light in the information center display lights up, check the oil level immediately and add oil as required.

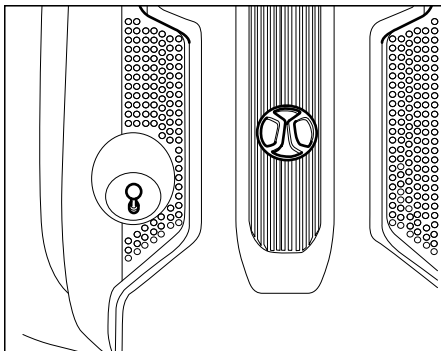
Check the engine oil level with the oil dipstick.

- The oil level near or below the lower mark can cause damage to the engine.
- The oil level above the upper mark can cause damage to the three way catalytic converters.

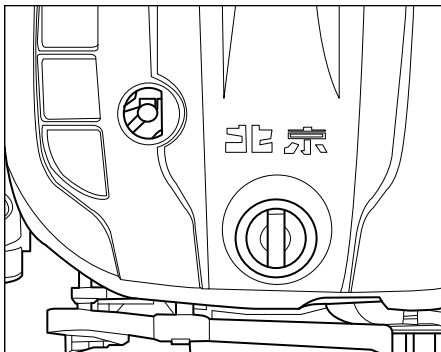
Attention

If inspecting engine oil level when the engine is in hot condition, please first stop the engine and wait for several minutes until the engine oil flows back to fuel pan, and then inspect engine oil level again. When the engine is in cooling condition, immediately inspect oil level.

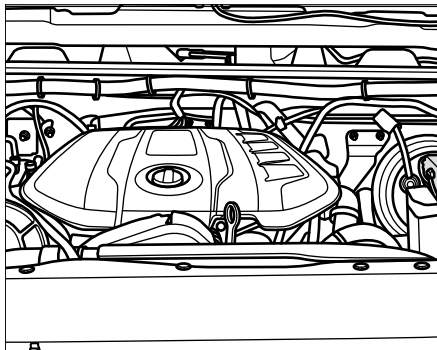
B201R/B231R gasoline models:



B237R gasoline models:



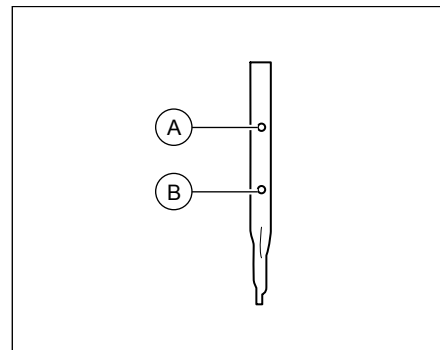
HY4C20B gasoline models:

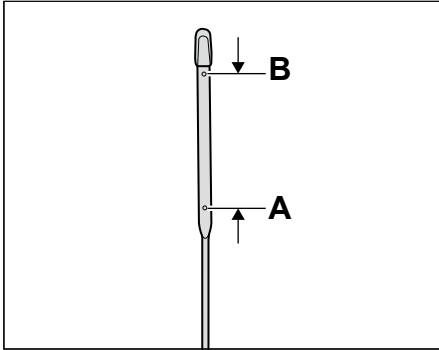


The specific steps are as follows (B201R/B231R/B237R/HY4C20B gasoline models):

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface and open the bonnet.
2. Place a rag under the end of the dipstick, and pull it out.
3. Wipe the oil dipstick off with a clean rag.
4. Insert the oil dipstick again

5. Place a rag under the end of the dipstick, and pull out the dipstick and check the oil level.
6. It is recommended that the number of consecutive inspections should not exceed 3 times. If the oil levels at both ends of the dipstick are not equal, the lower oil level shall prevail.

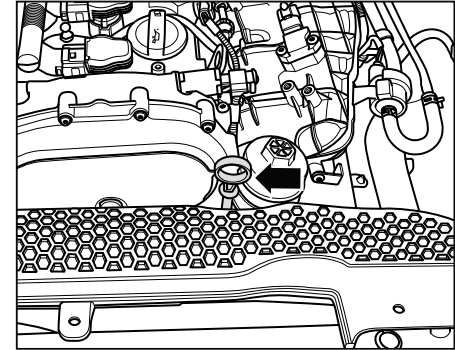




- The position indicated by the arrow - A - in the figure is the oil upper limit mark.
- The position indicated by the arrow - B- in the figure is the oil lower limit mark.
- The oil level should be between the upper limit mark - A - and the lower limit mark - B- in the illustration.

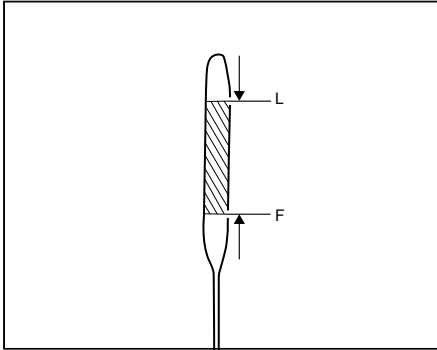
Every engine will consume a certain amount of oil which depends on the driving patterns and driving conditions. Therefore, regularly check the oil level. You'd better check the oil level while refueling and before long drive.

Do not let the oil level exceed the upper mark when the engine running in harsh conditions when the vehicle driving a long distance on a highway in summer, or towing a trailer, or traveling along a mountain road.



The specific steps are as follows (4G20T13 gasoline engine model):

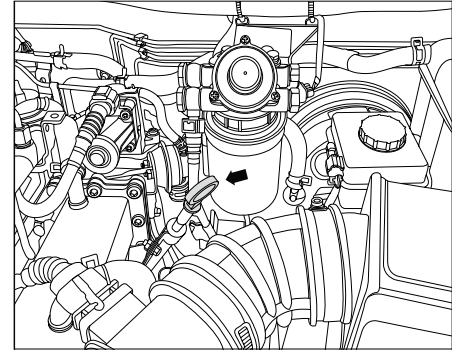
1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Open the engine compartment hood and remove the engine trim cover. How to remove the engine trim cover: Hold both sides of the front edge of the engine trim cover with both hands and pull up.



Every engine will consume a certain amount of oil which depends on the driving patterns and driving conditions. Therefore, regularly check the oil level. You'd better check the oil level while refueling and before long drive.

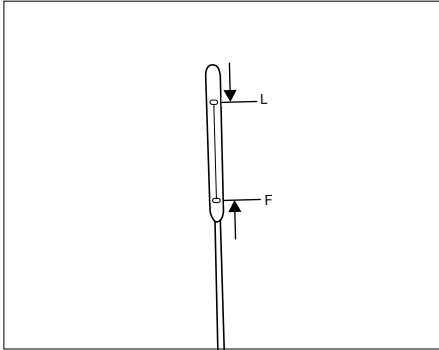
Do not let the oil level exceed the upper mark -F- when the engine running in harsh conditions when the vehicle driving a long distance on a highway in summer, or towing a trailer, or traveling along a mountain road.

3. Pull out the oil dipstick.
4. Use a clean rag to wipe off the oil stains on the dipstick, insert it into the engine oil dipstick port, and be sure to insert it in place.
5. Pull out the oil dipstick again, check the oil level, and refill oil according to the oil level.
 - -F- indicates upper mark.
 - -L- indicates lower mark.
 - The oil level should be between the lower mark and the upper mark.



The specific steps are as follows (Diesel engine model):

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Open the engine compartment hood and remove the engine trim cover. How to remove the engine trim cover: Hold both sides of the front edge of the engine trim cover with both hands and pull up.



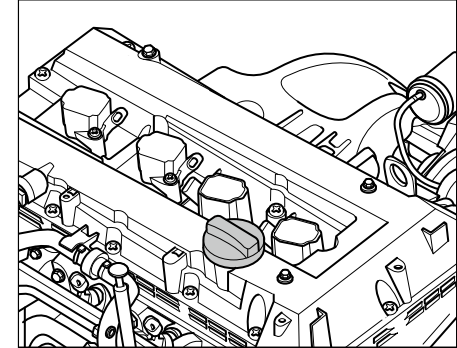
3. Pull out the oil dipstick.
4. Use a clean rag to wipe off the oil stains on the dipstick, insert it into the engine oil dipstick port, and be sure to insert it in place.
5. Pull out the oil dipstick again, check the oil level, and refill oil according to the oil level.
 - -F- indicates upper mark.
 - -L- indicates lower mark.
 - The oil level should be between the lower mark and the upper mark.

Every engine will consume a certain amount of oil which depends on the driving patterns and driving conditions. Therefore, regularly check the oil level. You'd better check the oil level while refueling and before long drive.

Do not let the oil level exceed the upper mark - F - when the engine running in harsh conditions when the vehicle driving a long distance on a highway in summer, or towing a trailer, or traveling along a mountain road.

Engine oil refill (B201R/B231R gasoline models)

When adding engine oil, pour in the oil slowly and carefully by several stages.



1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Open the engine compartment hood.
3. Press the oil filler cap and open it by turning it counterclockwise.
4. To avoid filling above the upper mark, add a little oil each time and recheck the oil level until you bring it to the upper mark.

5. Once the oil level reaches the upper mark, please stop adding oil, reinstall and tighten the oil filler cap.

⚠ WARNING

- Read and follow the relevant warnings before starting operation.
- Engine oil is a type of highly combustible material. Always add oil with extra care. Pour in the oil slowly and carefully so you do not spill any on the hot engine components or exhaust system.
- Always keep the oil fill cap tightened securely to prevent the oil from spilling when the engine operating, resulting in a fire.
- Only use the oil applicable to your engine.
- If other specifications of oil are used, the engine may be damaged, which may cause accidents

👁 Attention

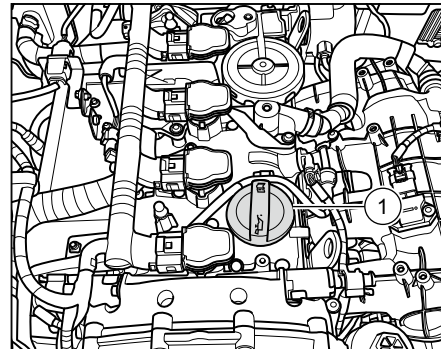
If the oil level exceeds the upper mark, do not start the engine, otherwise the catalytic converter and engine may be damaged.

👁 Attention

- It shall be filled with engine oil conforming to SN grade or higher in API grade.
- The premium-grade oil in the engine at the delivery of the vehicle can be used for a whole year except in an extremely cold climate.
- Engine oils of different brands can not be mixed.

Engine oil refill (4G20TI3 gasoline models)

When adding engine oil, pour in the oil slowly and carefully by several stages.



1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Open the engine compartment hood.
3. Press the oil filler cap and open it by turning it counterclockwise.
4. To avoid filling above the upper mark, add a little oil each time and recheck the oil level until you bring it to the upper mark.

5. Once the oil level reaches the upper mark, please stop adding oil, reinstall and tighten the oil filler cap.

⚠ WARNING

- Read and follow the relevant warnings before starting operation.
- Engine oil is a type of highly combustible material. Always add oil with extra care. Pour in the oil slowly and carefully so you do not spill any on the hot engine components or exhaust system.
- Always keep the oil fill cap tightened securely to prevent the oil from spilling when the engine operating, resulting in a fire.
- Only use the oil applicable to your engine.
- If other specifications of oil are used, the engine may be damaged, which may cause accidents

👁 Attention

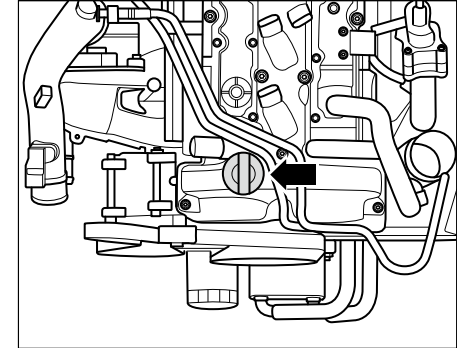
If the oil level exceeds the upper mark, do not start the engine, otherwise the catalytic converter and engine may be damaged.

👁 Attention

- It shall be filled with engine oil conforming to SN grade or higher in API grade.
- The premium-grade oil in the engine at the delivery of the vehicle can be used for a whole year except in an extremely cold climate.
- Engine oils of different brands can not be mixed.

Engine oil refill (B237R gasoline models)

When adding engine oil, pour in the oil slowly and carefully by several stages.



1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Open the engine compartment hood.
3. Press the oil filler cap and open it by turning it counterclockwise.
4. To avoid filling above the upper mark, add a little oil each time and recheck the oil level until you bring it to the upper mark.

5. Once the oil level reaches the upper mark, please stop adding oil, reinstall and tighten the oil filler cap.

⚠ WARNING

- Read and follow the relevant warnings before starting operation.
- Engine oil is a type of highly combustible material. Always add oil with extra care. Pour in the oil slowly and carefully so you do not spill any on the hot engine components or exhaust system.
- Always keep the oil fill cap tightened securely to prevent the oil from spilling when the engine operating, resulting in a fire.
- Only use the oil applicable to your engine.
- If other specifications of oil are used, the engine may be damaged, which may cause accidents

👁 Attention

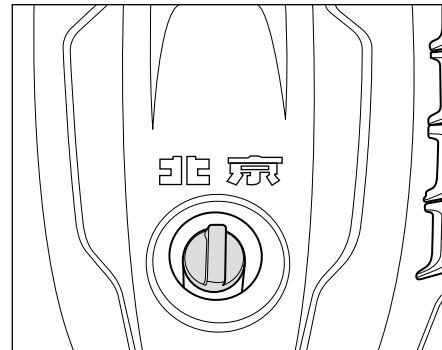
If the oil level exceeds the upper mark, do not start the engine, otherwise the catalytic converter and engine may be damaged.

👁 Attention

- It shall be filled with engine oil conforming to SN grade or higher in API grade.
- The premium-grade oil in the engine at the delivery of the vehicle can be used for a whole year except in an extremely cold climate.
- Engine oils of different brands can not be mixed.

Engine oil refill (HY4C20B gasoline models)

When adding engine oil, pour in the oil slowly and carefully by several stages.



1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Open the engine compartment hood.
3. Press the oil filler cap and open it by turning it counterclockwise.
4. To avoid filling above the upper mark, add a little oil each time and recheck the oil level until you bring it to the upper mark.

- Once the oil level reaches the upper mark, please stop adding oil, reinstall and tighten the oil filler cap.

⚠ WARNING

- Read and follow the relevant warnings before starting operation.
- Engine oil is a type of highly combustible material. Always add oil with extra care. Pour in the oil slowly and carefully so you do not spill any on the hot engine components or exhaust system.
- Always keep the oil fill cap tightened securely to prevent the oil from spilling when the engine operating, resulting in a fire.
- Only use the oil applicable to your engine.
- If other specifications of oil are used, the engine may be damaged, which may cause accidents

👁 Attention

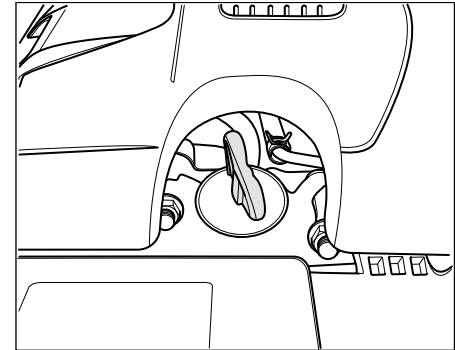
If the oil level exceeds the upper mark, do not start the engine, otherwise the catalytic converter and engine may be damaged.

👁 Attention

- It shall be filled with engine oil conforming to SN grade or higher in API grade.
- The premium-grade oil in the engine at the delivery of the vehicle can be used for a whole year except in an extremely cold climate.
- Engine oils of different brands can not be mixed.

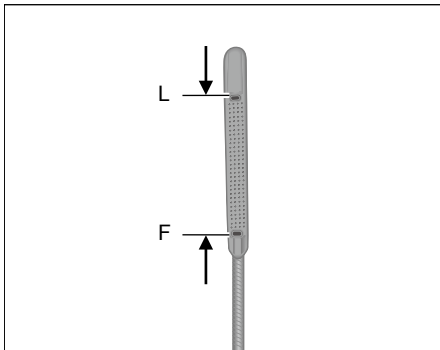
Engine oil refill (diesel models)

When adding engine oil, pour in the oil slowly and carefully by several stages.



1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Open the engine compartment hood.
3. Press the oil filler cap and open it by turning it counterclockwise.
4. To avoid filling above the upper mark, add a little oil each time and recheck the oil level until you bring it to the upper mark.

5. Once the oil level reaches the upper mark, please stop adding oil, reinstall and tighten the oil filler cap.



4

⚠ WARNING

- Read and follow the relevant warnings before starting operation.
- Engine oil is a type of highly combustible material. Always add oil with extra care. Pour in the oil slowly and carefully so you do not spill any on the hot engine components or exhaust system.
- Always keep the oil fill cap tightened securely to prevent the oil from spilling when the engine operating, resulting in a fire.
- Only use the oil applicable to your engine.
- If other specifications of oil are used, the engine may be damaged, which may cause accidents

👁 Attention

If the oil level exceeds the upper mark, do not start the engine, otherwise the catalytic converter and engine may be damaged.

👁 Attention

- CJ-4 or AECE standard A3/B4 or higher grade diesel engine oil should be used.
- According to the different ambient temperature, choose the oil with different viscosity grades (brands) according to the table below.
- The premium-grade oil in the engine at the delivery of the vehicle can be used for a whole year except in an extremely cold climate.
- Engine oils of different brands can not be mixed.

Replace of Engine Oil

The engine oil must be changed at the intervals specified in the Quality Certificate. Only when the engine oil is maintained and changed according to the regulations can the service life of the engine be guaranteed. The engine oil will be replaced by the authorized dealer of BAIC.

If you drive your vehicle in severe conditions, or use the fuel of high sulphur content or frequently drive a short distance, or let your engine idle for a long time (e.g., taxi), or drive in dusty areas, or often drive your vehicle to tow a trailer, or drive your vehicle in cold areas, be sure to increase the number of maintenance times for some maintenance items between periodic maintenances, or narrow the maintenance period.

Additives in the engine oil may change the new oil color fade. This is normal. There is no need to change the oil in advance.

WARNING

Unless you have the knowledge and proper equipment, you should have the oil changed by a skilled mechanic.

- **Make sure the engine is cool before operating. Hot oil may seriously scald you.**
- **When unscrewing and removing the oil drain plug, be sure to place your arm horizontally to prevent the oil from flowing along it.**
- **If you get oil on your skin, be sure to rinse it thoroughly.**
- **Drain the used oil into a special container which is large enough.**
- **Do not store the used oil in a food container or other non-original container to avoid confusing, resulting in poisoning.**
- **As engine oil is toxic, before disposal of waste oil, please first put it on safe place to prevent children from touching it.**

Attention

No lubricant should be added into engine oil; otherwise, it may damage engine. Any fault caused by addition of lubricant isn't included in quality guarantee.

If the vehicle is parked below -35°C for a long time or often moves in such an area, it is recommended to replace the oil model more suitable for the area (the oil circuit cleaning should be paid attention to during the oil change process) to reduce the difficulty of cold start of the vehicle and the damage to the engine.

Attention

- **Do not dispose of waste oil by yourself unless you have the professional knowledge and special tools. Therefore, it is suggested that the operation should be carried out by the authorized dealer of BAIC.**
- **Improper disposal of engine oil can be harmful to the environment and water source. Do not discard it in a sewer line or dump it on the ground. Otherwise, it will be very expensive to treat the soil polluted by the used oil.**

Coolant

Coolant function

The correct use of coolant can prevent corrosion, cavitation and leakage, prevent the radiator from boiling, prevent scale and freeze, etc., make the cooling system always in the best working state, and ensure the normal working temperature of the engine.

Glycol based coolant has been added to the cooling system when the vehicle leaves the factory.

Tip

Coolant conforming to specifications should be used all year round whether antifreeze is needed or not.

It is necessary to improve the antifreeze ability of coolant in the severe cold season. please replace with a coolant suitable for the local minimum temperature.

WARNING

- The coolant must be contained in a closed container and must be placed beyond the reach of children.
- Do not store the coolant in a food container or other non-original container to avoid confusing, resulting in poisoning, The discharged waste coolant should also be treated as such.
- In severely cold climates, to ensure the antifreeze ability of coolant, the appropriate coolant should be replaced according to the ambient temperature, otherwise, the coolant may freeze and cause vehicle damage. At the same time, due to the failure of the heating system, the driver and passengers are exposed to the severe cold, which may cause frostbite to others.

Attention

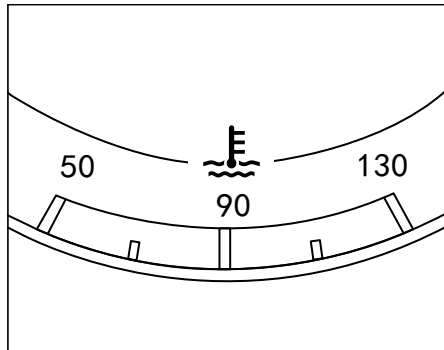
Do not add any other manufacturer's coolant into the coolant.

- The coolant shall not be mixed with any other coolant not approved by the company, otherwise it may seriously damage the engine and cooling system.
- If the coolant in the reserve tank becomes faded and the coolant is not mixed with other coolant of other color, change the coolant regularly as required.

Tip

Waste coolant must be collected and disposed of in accordance with environmental protection regulations.

Coolant temperature



When the start / stop button is in the "RUN" position, the coolant temperature gauge displays the engine coolant temperature. Under normal driving conditions, the instrument scale shall be located at the middle position of about 90° position. When engine runs at heavy load and the ambient temperature is high, the coolant temperature may rise and the scale reading increases. When the coolant temperature is too high, the blue light band of the thermometer extends to the right and the engine coolant warning light is on, it indicates that there is a fault in the vehicle. At this time, stop at a safe place immediately, shut down the engine, and

check the coolant level after the coolant cools down.

If the coolant level is normal, the system overheating may be caused by the radiator fan failure. Check whether the radiator fan fuse is blown. Replace the fuse as needed.

If the coolant temperature warning light lights up again after a short distance driving, you must immediately stop at a safe place, shut down the engine, and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC as soon as possible to overhaul the system.

WARNING

Be sure to operate inside the engine compartment with extra care.

- **Read and follow the relevant warnings before starting operation.**
- **As engine compartment is a dangerous area, before opening engine hood, please carefully read and comply with relevant warnings and instructions.**
- **If you can see the vapor or coolant escape from the engine compartment, to avoid scalding, do not open the engine hood. Wait until no vapor or coolant escapes from the engine compartment before opening the hood.**

Coolant Level Check and Fill

Whether the coolant level is normal or not is crucial to the proper operation of the engine cooling system.

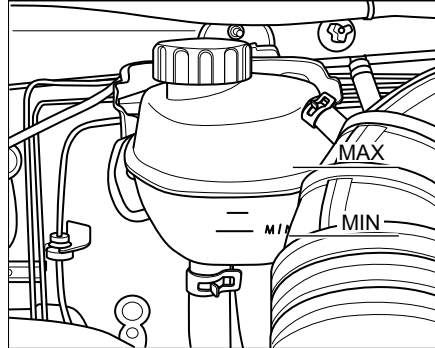
Park the vehicle on level ground before opening the engine hood. Be sure to read and follow the relevant warnings.

i Tip

Coolant Specifications: Glycol based coolant.

4

Coolant level check

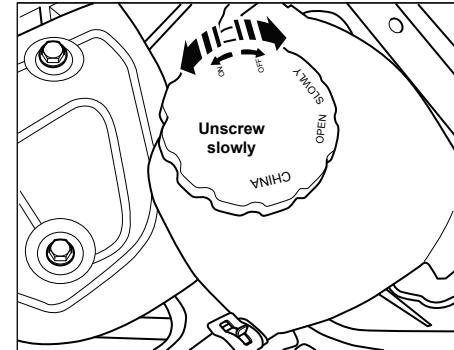


When the engine is cold, it is the best time to check whether the coolant level is within the marked range on the side of the expansion tank.

- MAX—UPPER MARK
- MIN—LOWER MARK
- The coolant level should be between the MAX and MIN marks.

If the coolant level is at or below the LOW mark, add coolant.

Opening of the coolant expansion tank cover



The engine must be stopped.

To avoid scalding, wrap the reserve tank cap with a big and thick cloth, and then unscrew the expansion tank cover counterclockwise according to the arrow.

i Tip

Open the coolant expansion tank cover when the engine is cold.

Coolant refilling

Only add new coolant!

After filling, the coolant level must be between the "MIN" mark and the "MAX" mark.

Attention

Make sure the coolant level is at or below the MAX mark.

Coolant expansion tank cover closed

Install and tighten the expansion tank cover.

Tip

When the engine is cold, the coolant level may exceed the MAX mark slightly.

Attention

It is suggested to fill the coolant when the engine is cold, but the coolant level shall not exceed the "MAX" mark, otherwise the excessive coolant will overflow when the engine becomes hot.

If the coolant is needed to be added, only add new coolant. The coolant must be compliant with this manual. If a suitable coolant cannot be purchased for the time being, other types of coolant shall not be added. If necessary, add pure water temporarily, but add coolant as soon as possible as required.

If the coolant loss is large, the cold coolant can be added after the motor is cooled, otherwise the engine may be damaged. If too much coolant is consumed, it indicates that the system has leakage. At this moment, please inspect cooling system at the authorized dealer of BAIC to avoid damage of engine.

Brake fluid

Function of brake fluid

The brake fluid is used to transfer power in the hydraulic brake system.

⚠ WARNING

Brake fluid is corrosive. Keep the container sealed and out of reach of children. If you find accidental swallowing of brake fluid, please seek medical advice immediately.

The skin or eyes shall not contact with the brake fluid. In case of contact, please wash immediately with plenty of water.

Do not splash the brake fluid on the hot engine, otherwise it may cause a fire.

4

During use, the fluid level in the brake reservoir may drop slightly due to the wear of the brake friction pad. If such a situation is found, the brake fluid level can be used to decide whether to add it or not. If the brake pedal stroke unexpectedly lengthens or the brake fluid level drops obviously, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC for inspection immediately. If the brake fluid level is lower than the minimum mark of the reservoir, do not continue driving the vehicle.

👁 Attention

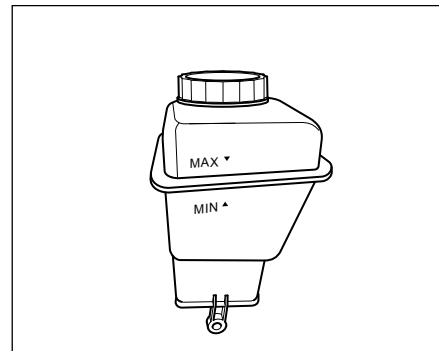
The brake fluid must be completely changed every two years.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to change the brake fluid within the specified time may lead to failure of the brake system, which may lead to serious accidents and personal injury.

Brake fluid level

The brake fluid level must be checked at the intervals specified in the Quality Certificate.



When the engine is cold, it is the best time to check whether the brake fluid level is within the marked range on the side of the reservoir.

- MAX—UPPER MARK
- MIN—LOWER MARK
- The brake fluid level should be between the MAX and MIN marks.


If the fluid level is at or below the MIN mark, add fluid.

Read and follow the warnings before opening the engine hood.

The vehicle's brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment. The brake fluid reservoir cap is yellow.

Due to the wear of brake friction plates, the vehicle brake system will automatically adjust the brake pad, so the brake fluid level will drop slightly, which is a normal phenomenon, so there is no need to worry.

However, if the brake fluid level drops significantly, this indicates the brake system leaks. In this case, immediately stop your vehicle in a safe place. Do not continue to drive. Contact the authorized dealer of BAIC as soon as possible to thoroughly check the braking system.

 **WARNING**

- **Read and follow the warnings before opening the engine hood.**
- **If the brake system warning light does not go out or lights up during driving, it may be that the brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir is too low. In order to avoid accidents, stop immediately, do not continue driving, and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC for inspection and repair as soon as possible.**

Brake fluid replacement

The brake fluid is absorbent and absorbs moisture from the surrounding air. Excessive moisture content in the brake fluid will corrode the brake system, greatly reduce the boiling point of the brake fluid and reduce the braking effect.

The brake fluid used in this vehicle is specially developed by BAIC for the braking system of this vehicle. To ensure the normal operation of the braking system, it is recommended that the special dealer of BAIC replace the standard brake fluid for you.

 **Tip**

Brake fluid specification: DOT4.

 **WARNING**

- Incorrect maintenance will cause brake failure and injury accidents.
- Before filling brake fluid, it is necessary to remove oil stains and dust from the fluid reservoir. Contaminated brake fluid may lead to brake failure and serious accidents.
- Only use brake fluid that meets the requirements. Different brands of brake fluid have different additives, and chemical reactions occur between them. Do not mix brake fluids of different brands.
- The fluid reservoir in which the brake fluid is stored must be clean, as any small amount of other fluids or
- After normal maintenance and inspection, the brake fluid level should not drop quickly, otherwise, you should immediately go to the authorized dealer of BAIC for overhaul.

 **WARNING**

Using the used brake fluid or non-genuine one will greatly reduce the braking effect, or even cause the brake system failure!

- Brake fluid packaging containers are marked with brake fluid specifications, and brake fluid meeting the correct specifications must be used.
- The brake fluid is toxic.
- Do not store the brake fluid in a food container or other non-original container to avoid confusing, resulting in poisoning! Store the brake fluid in its original sealed container and store it in a safe place. Keep it clear out of the reach of children! Avoid poisoning.

 **Attention**

Due to corrosive effect, the brake fluid spilled on the body paint should be timely removed.

 **Tip**

Be sure to collect and dispose of the used brake fluid in accordance with the environmental regulations.

 **WARNING**

The brake fluid must be changed according to the cycle specified in BAIC Quality Certificate, because if the brake fluid stays inside the system for a long time, air lock will be produced inside the pipeline of braking system. In this case, it will reduce brake effect and driving safety, and even cause complete failure of braking system and accidents.

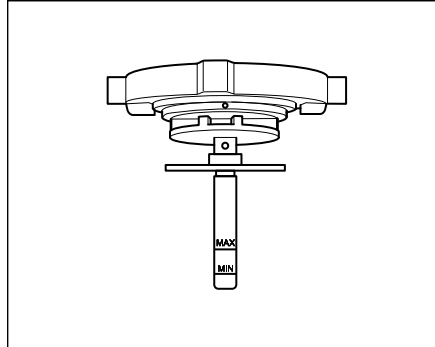
Power steering fluid

Steering fluid is filled into hydraulic steering system and used to pass power and achieve steering assistance.

⚠ WARNING

- **The power steering fluid is corrosive. Please keep the container sealed and put it away from children. If you find accidental swallowing of power steering fluid, please seek medical advice immediately.**
- **If the power steering fluid comes into contact with skin or eyes, please wash it immediately with plenty of water.**

Steering fluid level check



To prevent dust from entering the reservoir, please wipe the filler cap before inspection, unscrew the filler cap in the figure for liquid level inspection:

- “MAX” means the upper limit of steering fluid level.
- “MIN” means the lower limit of steering fluid level.
- Steering fluid level should be between the upper limit and lower limit.

If the level is lower than "MIN", fill steering fluid.

Power steering fluid Refill

Add the power steering fluid slowly and carefully. Do not exceed the upper limit mark, so as not to affect the power steering effect and avoid the overflow of the power steering fluid.

It is suggested that the power steering fluid should be refilled by the authorized dealer of BAIC.

i Tip

The power steering fluid will damage the paint surface. For the parts with power steering fluid, immediately use an absorbent cloth to absorb the splashed fluid and use vehicle cleaning agent mixed with clean water for cleaning.

i Tip

The steering assist fluid that meets the specifications of ATF III H or Pan-Dongxing hydraulic transmission oil CHF 202 and is approved by BAIC can be used.

 Attention

- **Don't worry, the color of the available commercial steering fluid will vary from the color of the steering fluid that was filled into the system during the manufacturing process.**
- **If you use a steering assist fluid other than specified or mix the two fluids, it will cause seal failure, resulting in failure of the steering assist or damage to parts.**

Emergency operation






If there is frequent loss of power steering fluid, it should be checked by the authorized dealer of BAIC.

In any case, when the steering fluid level is lower than the "Min" mark or rapid and obvious steering fluid leakage is detected, the vehicle shall not be driven. If it is confirmed that the power steering fluid leaks slowly, the power steering fluid can be added to the "Max" marking line to ensure that the vehicle can drive a short distance to the authorized dealer of BAIC.


If the power steering fluid level is lower than the Min mark, fill the steering fluid before starting the engine, otherwise the steering pump will be damaged.

Battery

Alert symbols and descriptions for operation of the battery


	1. Always wear goggles when operating!
	2. The battery electrolyte is corrosive. Be sure to wear protective gloves and goggles when operating!
	3. Make sure the workplace is free of open flames, sparks, un-covered lights and smoke!
	4. The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during charging!
	5. Children shall keep away from electrolyte and the battery!

Unless you know the operational process and have proper equipment, do not do any operations on the vehicle electrical system. If there is no absolute certainty, relevant operations shall be carried out by the authorized dealer of BAIC.

 **WARNING**

Hazards of injury, corrosion, accident, and fire when operating on vehicle batteries and electricity!

- Do not let acid or lead particles fall into eyes, skin or clothes.
- The acid in the battery is highly corrosive, so be sure to wear protective gloves and glasses during operation. Battery can not be turned over, or else acid liquor may flow out from exhaust vent. If acid splashes into your eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water, and then go to see a doctor immediately. If the acid splashes on the skin or clothes, it should be neutralized with concentrated soap immediately, and then washed with plenty of water. If you drink acid liquor by mistake, go to see a doctor immediately.
- Flammable and explosive gas mixture will be produced during battery charging, so the battery should be placed in a well ventilated place during charging.

 **WARNING**

- Open flame, electric spark, strong light and smoking are prohibited. When cables and electrical equipment are handled and static charges are discharged, avoid the generating electric sparks. Do not short circuit the battery terminal, otherwise, the high-energy spark generated by the short circuit may injure the operator.
- When battery is dismantled, dismantle negative cable first and then positive cable.
- Keep the children away from acid liquor and battery.
- Before battery is reconnected, turn off all electrical equipment. Connect the positive cable first, then the negative cable. Do not connect the wrong cables, otherwise there is a risk of fire!
- It is forbidden to disassemble and install the battery without permission, because in some cases, such operation will cause serious damage to the battery and fuse box. For operation, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC.

Inspection of battery power

1. Check whether the battery is well fixed.
2. Check whether the positive and negative cable connectors of the battery are loose and corroded.
3. Check whether the insulation layer of the positive and negative cables of the battery is damaged.
4. Keep the battery surface dry and clean to prevent blocking the battery vent.

In case of the following conditions or situation, electric quantity of the battery shall be checked regularly.

- Long mileage vehicles.
- Driving in a hot country or area.
- The battery is too old.
- Driving in cold countries and regions.

WARNING

- **Before operation, carefully read and comply with relevant safety warning and instructions about the operation of battery.**
- **Do not open the battery. Beware of chemical burns and battery explosion.**
- **Damaged or leaked battery isn't allowed to connect. Damaged or leaked battery should be recovered according to law of environment protection.**
- **Make sure the workplace is free of open flames, sparks, un-covered lights and smoke. When operating cables and electrical equipment, attention must be paid to prevent electric sparks and static electricity, and do not short circuit the battery terminal, otherwise, the high-energy electric sparks generated by the short circuit may injure the operator.**

Operation in Winter

There are particularly strict requirements for the use of on-board battery in winter, because the starting power provided by the battery at low temperature is lower than that at normal temperature. Therefore, we suggest that before the beginning of the cold season, it is best to check the on-vehicle battery at the authorized dealer of BAIC, and charge or replace it if necessary.

If the vehicle is parked in an extremely cold environment for several weeks, you should remove the on-vehicle battery and store it in a room with normal temperature to protect the battery from damage.

Battery charging and battery replacement

Do not perform operation on the battery unless you are professional enough.

If you often drive for short distances or store your vehicle for an extended period of time, maintain your battery more frequently.

If the battery is damaged or capacity is insufficient, it may be very difficult to start a car. If this happens, it is recommended to charge or replace the battery at the authorized dealer of BAIC.

Notice

Only electrical equipment that meets the national electromagnetic compatibility specifications and is approved by the authorized dealer of BAIC can be used.

Battery charging

If the battery is used for a long time, it may not be able to maintain the charging efficiency in a new state; If the vehicle is used too frequently or too many short starts, or operates in a cold environment, the battery needs to be regularly charged.

Check the battery condition before charging.

WARNING

- **When the battery is connected to the vehicle, do not charge the battery, which may seriously damage the electrical system of the vehicle.**
- **Do not attempt to charge the battery if the battery monitoring indicator is colorless.**
- **If the battery is frozen, do not try to charge the battery.**

During charging, the battery will generate corrosive acid volatile gas and current that will cause serious damage to the electrical system. Therefore, observe the followings during charging:

- Before charging, it is necessary to disconnect the terminal from the vehicle and remove the battery. Charging the battery with connected wires will damage the electrical system of the vehicle.
- Before turning on the charger switch, make sure that the wire of the battery charger is safely connected to the terminal of the battery. Once the charger is turned on, do not move the wire.
- Pay attention to protect your eyes when charging.
- Keep a good ventilation environment around the top of the battery and avoid strong light near the battery (the battery will generate flammable hydrogen before and after charging). When the color in the battery monitoring indicator window is green, please stop charging, otherwise it will cause The battery is overcharged.
- After charging is complete, turn off the battery charger before disconnecting the wires from the battery terminals.

If the start/stop button remains in "RUN" mode for a long time after the engine is turned off, or if lighting equipment such as headlights is turned on for a long time, the battery may discharge rapidly, causing the battery to lose power.

 Attention

In cold conditions, batteries take longer to charge. After charging, the battery needs to be left for more than 1 hour before putting on the vehicle again, the purpose is to dissipate flammable gases to minimize the risk of fire and explosion.

4

Replacement of Battery

Only the same type of battery can be replaced and conform to the original specifications. Other batteries may have different dimensions or different terminal positions, which may lead to battery damage, leakage, or fire.

When replacing the battery, make sure that the battery is installed correctly. Ensure that the battery tray and pressure plate are properly fixed to prevent the battery from moving in accident or emergency braking.

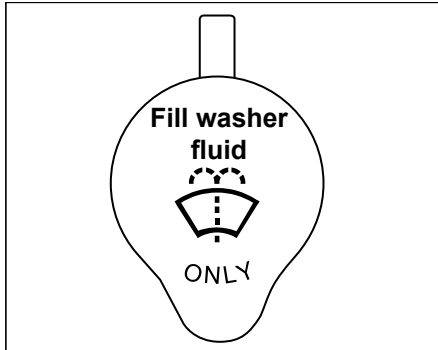
BAIC Motor's original battery can meet the requirements of vehicle maintenance, vehicle performance and safety.

 Attention

Read and follow the safety warnings related to operating the battery before starting work.

Windshield washer fluid and wiper blades

Windshield washer fluid refill



Both the front and rear windscreen washers are supplied with cleaning fluid from the washer fluid reservoir in the engine compartment. If the liquid level of cleaning fluid is found to be too low, add cleaning fluid to the liquid storage tank in time.

It is difficult to thoroughly clean the front and rear windshields with pure water, and there is freezing phenomenon in a cold environment, so please use windshield washer fluid that complies with BAIC Motor's regulations.

WARNING

Be sure to operate inside the engine compartment with extra care.

- Read and follow the relevant warnings before starting operation.
- Never add coolant or any other additives into the windshield cleaning solution, otherwise stains will be left when cleaning the glass, which will seriously affect the front vision, causing accidents.

Windshield wiper blade replacement

Attention

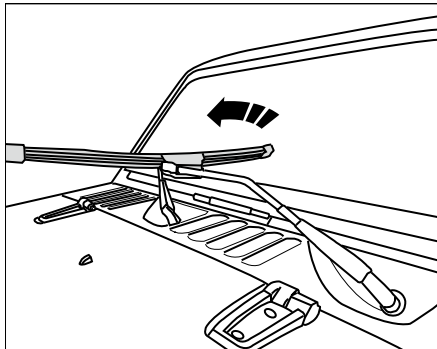
- The wiper blades must be kept in good condition, which is very necessary to maintain a clear view.
- To prevent schlieren, wiper blades should be cleaned regularly with a windshield cleaning solution. If the windshield is very dirty, such as insect residues, the wiper blades can be wiped with a sponge and cloth.
- If the weather is cold, check whether the wiper blades are frozen before opening the windshield washer every time. The windshield washer can be operated only when the front and rear wiper blades are free of interference and obstruction.

If the wiper blade makes a friction sound, it may be caused by the following reasons:

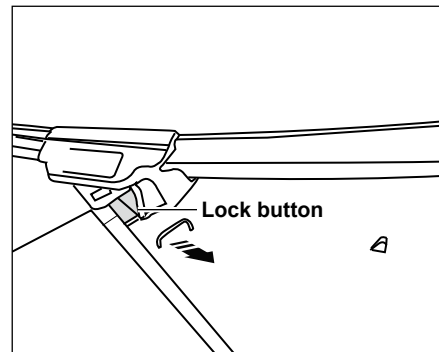
- When washing the car in the automatic car washing equipment, hard wax residue is consolidated on the windshield. Such hard wax residue can only be cleared away with dedicated detergent. This friction sound can be eliminated by adding windshield cleaner which can dissolve paraffin wax. Ordinary cleaning solution, which can only dissolve grease, cannot remove this deposit.
- If the wiper blade is damaged, it can also cause friction sound, so replace the wiper blade.
- If the positioning angle of the wiper arm is incorrect, please go to the special dealer of BAIC to check and adjust the positioning angle.

The wiper blade must be checked regularly and replaced as required, otherwise the front and rear windshield will be damaged.

Replace the front wiper blade



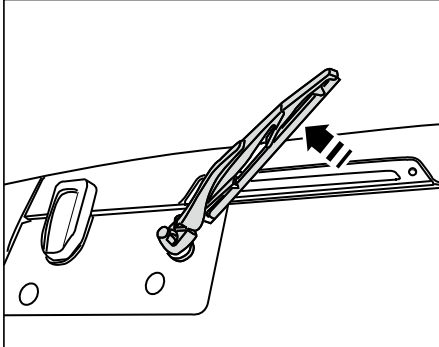
Pull up the wiper arm and turn the wiper blade to the position shown in the figure in the direction of the -arrow-.



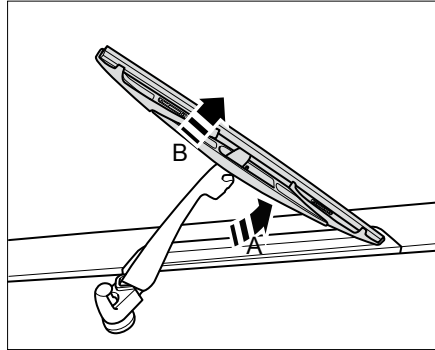
Pull up the wiper arm and turn the wiper blade to the position shown in the figure in the direction of the - arrow -.

Install a new wiper blade in the reverse order of removing the wiper blade.

Replace the wiper blade



Pull up the rear wiper arm - arrow -.



Turn the rear wiper blade to the position as shown in the figure in the direction of - arrow A- to separate it from the fixing groove on the rear wiper arm, and then remove the rear wiper blade in the direction of - arrow B-.

Install a new wiper blade in the reverse order of removing the wiper blade.

WARNING

All window glasses should maintain a good view during driving!

- Clean the wiper blades and all window glasses regularly.
- The wiper blade should be replaced once or twice a year.
- Please try to avoid direct wiping on the windshield by the wiper blade, so as to avoid the aging and wear of the weatherstrip and the fuzzing of the window, which will affect the driving safety.

Tire

Defective tires are very dangerous! Do not drive if the tire is damaged, excessively worn or under improper pressure.

Please pay close attention to the state of the tire when driving, and regularly check whether the tread and sidewall are deformed (bulge), whether there are scratches, abnormal wear, cracks, iron nails, etc.

4

The most common causes of tire defects:

- Striking or rubbing the shoulder;
- Drive through the deep pit on the road;
- The air pressure is lower or higher.

Attention

Beware of tires being attacked by oil, grease, gasoline and other vehicle fluids.

Tire Storage Conditions

Make a mark on the tire to indicate the direction of rotation before removing the tire. Re-install the tire according to the mark to keep the direction of rotation of the wheel and the dynamic balance state unchanged.

Store the removed wheel and tire in a cool and dry place. You'd better store them in a shaded place without direct sunlight.

Let the tire uninstalled to the wheel sit upright.

Tire pressure

Correct tire pressure can prolong the service life of tires, and at the same time ensure the best coordination of driving comfort, economy, and road handling.

When the tire pressure is too low, it will aggravate tire wear, which will greatly affect the road handling and economy of vehicles, and increase the danger of tire failure. Excessive tire pressure will lead to unstable driving and uneven tire wear, thus reducing the service life of tires.

Check the tire pressure (including the spare tire) at least once a week, and the tires must be at room temperature when checking - as long as you have driven 1.6km, the tires can heat up enough to affect the tire pressure.

The pressure in a hot tire is bound to rise; if the tire pressure must be checked while the tire is hot (after the vehicle has been driven for a while), the pressure should rise by around 0.2 to 0.5 bar. In this case, do not deflate the tire to bring the tire pressure to the standard.

Cold tire pressure, see Wheel Specifications on page 294 for details.

When to check tire pressure

Check tires at least once a week. Do not forget to check the spare tire pressure, which should be 220kpa.

How to check tire pressure

In addition to using the tire pressure monitoring system, a high-quality pocket tire pressure gauge can also be used to check the tire pressure. It is impossible to determine whether the tire pressure is normal only by visual inspection. The radial tire looks normal even if it is underinflated. Check the inflation pressure of the tire when it is cold. Cold state means that the vehicle stops driving for more than three hours or does not run for more than 1.6km.

Remove the valve cap from the tire valve core and press the tire pressure gauge firmly on the valve to display the tire pressure. If the cold tire inflation pressure meets the recommended pressure value on the tire and loading information label, no adjustment is required. If the pressure is too low, inflate it to the recommended value; If the pressure is too high, air can be released by pressing the valve core until it meets the recommended pressure value.

After inspection, be sure to install the valve cap back on the valve core. The valve cap prevents dust and moisture from entering the inside of the tire.

Tire puncture

Your vehicle is equipped with tubeless tires. If the tires are punctured by sharp objects, the tires may not have obvious air leakage. If you find this happening, slow down immediately and drive carefully, and replace the spare tire or repair it.

This type of puncture will cause the tire pressure to decrease, so it is very important to check the tire pressure regularly. Punctured or damaged tires must be repaired immediately or replaced as soon as possible.

Hidden damage

Damage to tires and rims is often difficult to be found. If abnormal vibration or deviation of vehicles is found during driving, it may be the fault of a tire. In this case, you should go to the special dealer of BAIC for tire inspection as soon as possible.

WARNING

You cannot get the adhesion from a new tire during the first 500 km, so, drive your vehicle at a moderate speed with care to avoid accidents.

- The tire which has not been run in or has been damaged provides insufficient adhesion, directly affecting the braking effect.
- Do not continue driving after the tire is damaged, otherwise it is very likely to cause accidents, because the damaged tire may burst during driving, resulting in traffic accidents, injury, even death.
- Tire pressure must comply with specifications; otherwise, it may cause accidents. If the tires are underinflated, continuous high-speed driving will exacerbate tire deflection, resulting in tire overheating which may lead to tire peeling off or burst.

- Do not use any tire which is damaged or worn down to its wear indicators. Be sure to replace it timely.
- Try to avoid using a tire more than six years old. If necessary, be sure to drive at low speed with extra care.
- Do not use any old wheel and tire of dubious background under any circumstances. Such wheel and tire, which can be damaged invisibly, will cause loss of control while driving, resulting in accidents.
- When the vehicle is running, if you feel it vibrates abnormally or pulls to one side, be sure to stop the vehicle in a safe place immediately and check the tires for damage.

Inflating valve

Keep the valve cap firmly tightened to prevent dust from entering the valve. When checking tire pressure, check the valve for air leakage (it is best to use the soap method to see if there are bubbles).

i Tip

Add an appropriate amount of household detergent in water and apply it on the valve to observe whether there are bubbles. If there are gas bubbles, it indicates that there is air leakage.

Tire inspection and transposition

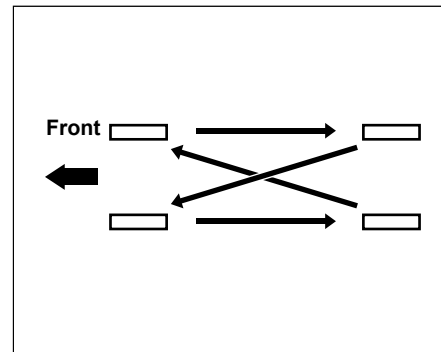
It is recommended that the tires should be rotated every 12000km or more frequently as required.

Rotate tires as soon as possible and check wheel alignment provided that abnormal wear is found. Meanwhile, also check whether tires or wheels are damaged.

In addition, the tightening torque of wheel nuts should be checked regularly, and the corrected torque should reach (140 ± 10) N·m. It is recommended to check the tightening torque of each nut when the vehicle travels 1500km, 5000km, and 8000km, and tighten the wheel in strict accordance with the torque requirements every time it is disassembled in the future.

i Tip

Regular tire rotation is aimed at making all vehicle tires be evenly worn.



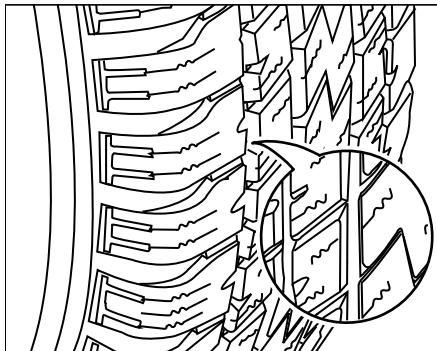
When tires are rotated, make sure to follow correct rotation mode as shown in figure below.

After tires are rotated, adjust inflation pressure of front and rear tires according to tire and load information volume label. Make sure all wheel nuts are correctly tightened.

⚠ WARNING

Corrosion or dirt on wheels or wheel connectors will make wheel nuts loose after a certain period of time, which will lead to wheel falling off and traffic accidents. Therefore, when replacing the wheel, any rust or dirt at the connection between the wheel and the wheel must be removed. In case of emergency, it can be removed with a cloth or paper towel, but if necessary, it is also necessary to remove all rust or dirt with a scraper or wire brush. In addition, the tightening torque of wheel nuts should be checked regularly, and the corrected torque should reach (140 ± 10) N·m. It is recommended to check the tightening torque of each nut when the vehicle travels 1500km, 5000km, and 8000km, and tighten the wheel in strict accordance with the torque requirements every time it is disassembled in the future.

When should a new tire be replaced



There are wear indication marks on original tires, which are located in narrow strips in tread grooves and distributed on the circumference of tires. There are small triangles on the sidewall of the tire to indicate the position of the mark. When the tread pattern wears to the indication mark, the tire should be replaced in time.

i Tip

If the tire is worn unevenly (only on one side of the tire) or excessively, go to the authorized dealer of BAIC for wheel alignment inspection.

If one of the following conditions occurs, the tire needs to be replaced:

- Tire wear indicator marks have been worn.
- You can directly see the cord or cord fabric in the tire rubber.
- The tread or sidewall is cracked, and the crack is deep enough to see the cord fabric or cord.
- The tire is bulged, swelled or layered.
- The tire is punctured, scratched or otherwise damaged, and the size and location of the damage are difficult to repair.

Wheel balance

The tires were properly balanced by the factory. The balance of your tires is dependent on many factors which can cause wheel imbalance and front-wheel shimmy.

You should timely treat and balance the unbalanced tires. Failure to do so can cause the steering system, suspension system and tires to wear out faster.

The dynamic balance of wheels must also be recalibrated after replacing tires.

Wheel dynamic balance standard: cumulative $\leq 10\text{g}$.

Incorrect Wheel Alignment

Misalignment of wheel alignment will lead to uneven tire wear, thus reducing driving safety. If uneven tire wear is found, wheel alignment inspection should be carried out at the authorized dealer of BAIC as soon as possible.

Replacement of rim

Rims that are bent, cracked or severely rusted or corroded should be replaced. If the wheel nut is often loose, replace the wheel and wheel nut. If the tire leaks, it should be replaced (except for some repairable aluminum wheels). In case of any of the above situations, repair should be carried out at the authorized dealer of BAIC.

The authorized dealer of BAIC knows which kind of rim should be used. The load capacity, diameter, width, and eccentricity of the new rim should be the same as those of the original wheel, and the installation method should be the same.

If you need to replace the rim, you should only use the original new accessories of BAIC to replace it, to ensure that the rim matches your vehicle.

WARNING

It is very dangerous to use improper rims, which will affect the braking and handling performance of the vehicle, causing tire leakage, thus resulting in the vehicle out of control. It may cause an accident and cause injury to you or others.

The use of rims with inconsistent specifications will also cause problems in bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer or odometer calibration, headlight aiming, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance, and the clearance between tires or tire chains and the body and chassis.

It is also dangerous to replace the vehicle with used rims. You can't know how old rims have been used and how many miles they have traveled, and they may suddenly break down and cause accidents. If you need to replace the rim, you must use the new original rim of BAIC.

In the event of a puncture

Tire burst is not common during driving, especially when tires are maintained. If the tire runs out, it is likely to leak slowly. However, in case of tire burst, the phenomena and suggested corresponding measures are as follows:

If one of front wheels has punctured, the drag effect of the flat tire will cause the vehicle to run off to that side. At this time, release the accelerator pedal immediately and hold the steering wheel tightly. Turn the vehicle to stay in the original lane, and lightly press the brake to stop the vehicle in the emergency lane or a safe position.

If the rear wheel has a flat tire, release the accelerator pedal. Turn the steering wheel in the direction you want the vehicle to travel to maintain control of the vehicle. It may be bumpy and noisy, but you can still control the steering, gently press the brake to stop, and park the vehicle in the emergency lane or a safe position.

Snow chain

Do not install anti-skid chains without permission of BAIC, which may cause damage to braking components.

Improper snow chains can damage vehicle tires, rims, suspension, brakes or body. Only use anti-skid chains recommended by authorized dealer of BAIC and tested by BAIC. When using, please pay attention to the following requirements:

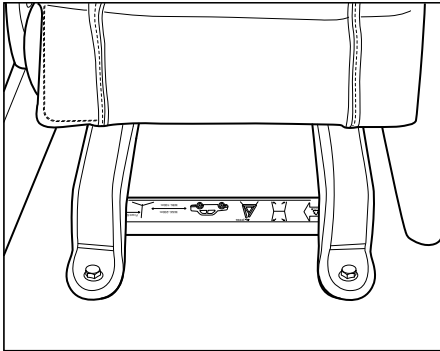
1. The snow chains can only be installed on the drive wheels;
2. Please observe the tensioning instructions for the installation of anti-skid chains and the speed limits for different road conditions;
3. The vehicle speed should not exceed 50km/h.
4. To avoid tire damage and excessive tire chain wear, remove the chains as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.

5. Accident Handling

Warning triangle	255
Spare tire and in-vehicle tool	256
Fuse replacement.....	264
Replace the bulbs.....	279
Emergency start	279
Emergent traction.....	281

Warning triangle

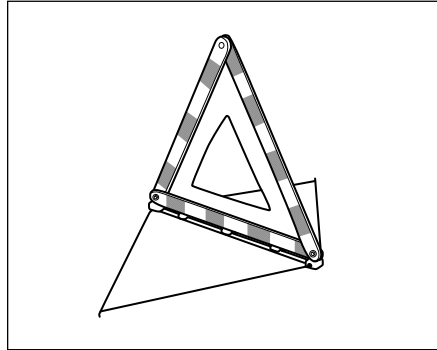
Warning triangle



i Tip

The warning triangle is located under the driver's seat.

If the vehicle breaks down on the road, park the vehicle in the emergency lane or a safe position, turn on the hazard warning light, take out and unfold the triangle warning sign from the driver's seat, and place it at the specified position so that other vehicles can find the danger as soon as possible and slow down to avoid passing.



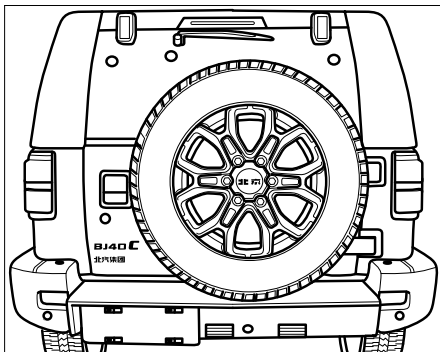
The triangle warning sign shall be placed at the rear of the driving direction of the vehicle in accordance with relevant national laws and regulations. When setting up triangle warning signs on ordinary highways during the day, the warning signs should be set at about 50-100 meters in the direction of incoming vehicles. If on expressways, they should be set at least 150 meters in the direction of incoming vehicles. At night, the distance should be increased according to the actual situation.

 Attention

Please use the warning triangle correctly according to the corresponding national laws and regulations.

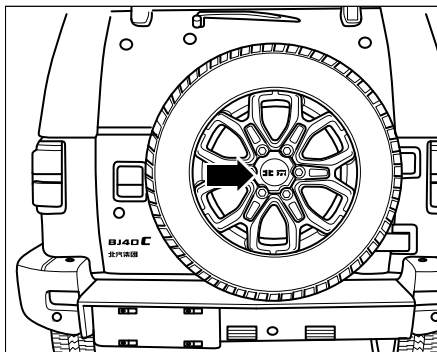
Spare tire and in-vehicle tool

Spare wheel

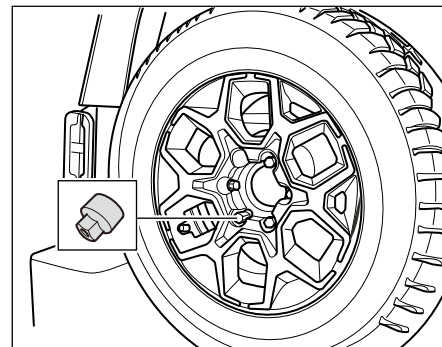


The spare wheel is located on the spare wheel carrier of the tailgate. Please take it out according to the following steps.

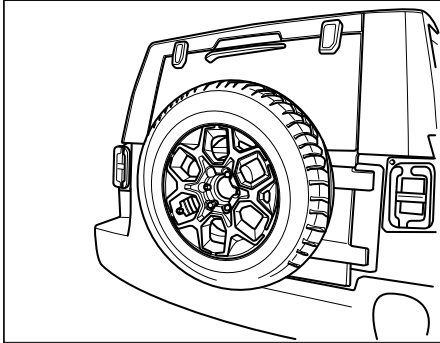
1. Take out the wheel lock button and wheel nut wrench from the on-vehicle tool.



2. Pull out the spare wheel trim cover in an axial direction.



3. Insert the wheel lock button on the wheel lock nut at the correct angle, and remove the wheel lock nut by rotating the wheel lock button; then remove the other three ordinary wheel nuts in turn.



4. Align the center hole of the replaced wheel with the stud of the spare wheel carrier.
5. First pre-tighten 4 nuts by hand, then tighten 3 ordinary wheel nuts with a tightening torque of (110 ± 5) N·m, and finally insert the wheel lock button into the wheel lock nut at the correct angle and tighten it with a tightening torque of (50 ± 3) N·m.
6. Align the catch of the spare tire wheel cover with the catch of the aluminum wheel, press hard in the axial direction, and press all the six catches in to complete the assembly.

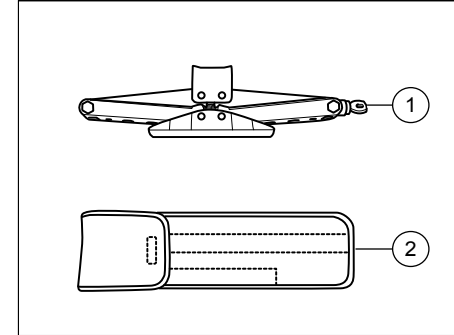
⚠ WARNING

- Do not use the spare wheel which has been damaged or wears down to the wear indicators.
- If your spare wheel is over six years old, only use it in emergency with extra care.
- Check the tire pressure as soon as possible after installing the spare wheels to make it within the specified range.

i Tip

The tire pressure of spare wheel is 220kPa.

In-vehicle tool



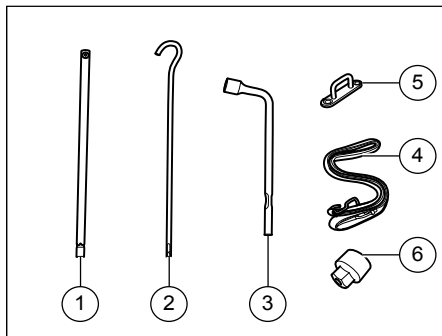
i Tip

The vehicle is equipped with on-vehicle tools located under the rear seats.

In-vehicle tools include:

1. Jack
2. On-vehicle tool kit

The jack is fixed to the floor of the vehicle by locking bolts, and the on-vehicle tool kit is located behind the jack.



The on-vehicle tool kit includes:

1. Special wrench for jack
2. Special wrench extension rod for jack
3. Wheel assembly removal wrench
4. Front windshield fixing strap
5. Front windshield fixing strap fixing ring
6. Wheel lock button

(The reflective vest is arranged in the on-vehicle tool bag and on the second row of seat carpet)

⚠ WARNING

- Using the jack improperly can cause serious injury.
- Only place the jack on solid and level ground.
- Only use your jack to jack up your vehicle. Do not use your jack to jack up other weight or vehicle.
- Do not start the engine when using the jack, otherwise, an accident will occur.
- To lessen the risk of personal injury, do not put any part of your body under the vehicle when the vehicle is on the jack.
- Place the appropriate protective support under the vehicle before getting under the vehicle.

👁 Attention

After using the jack, put it back in place, and pay attention to the supporting angle of the jack, so as to avoid failing to put the jack into the installation box.

⚠ WARNING

- The wheel nuts must be tightened correctly according to the specified tightening torque, otherwise, the nuts may loosen when the vehicle is running, which will easily lead to traffic accidents.
- Fasten the wheel nut with the wheel assembly disassembly wrench provided with the vehicle, but the torque value cannot be guaranteed. Control the vehicle speed reasonably during driving to avoid rapid acceleration and emergency braking, and go to a professional place as soon as possible to check and ensure that the wheel fixing nut reaches the tightening torque. The torque of the wheel nut is 140 ± 10 N·m.

Replacement of flat tire

The rim size and tire size of the emergency spare wheel of the vehicle are the same as those of the damaged wheel.

When the emergency spare wheel is installed, the handling of the vehicle will change. Please control the vehicle speed reasonably to avoid sudden acceleration and emergency braking.

Never use more than one emergency spare wheel while driving.

Preparation

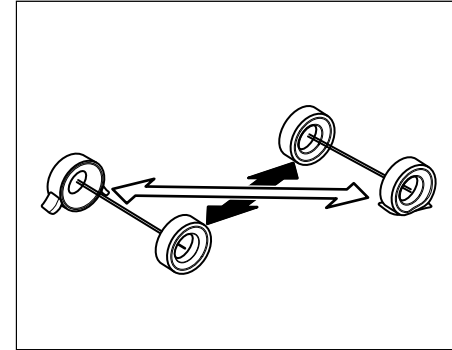
If you find a flat tire, drive slowly to a flat and safe place to avoid further damage to the tire and rim. and place a triangle warning sign at a proper place behind the vehicle and turn on the hazard warning light.

WARNING

There is a danger when changing wheels. The vehicle may slide off the jack, roll over or press on you or others, causing serious injury or death. Please find a safe flat place to replace the tire. Relevant regulations must be strictly followed. All passengers must leave the vehicle and wait in a safe position.

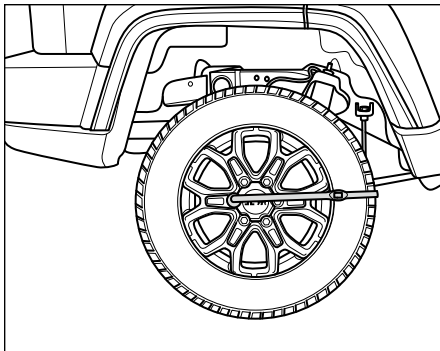
To prevent vehicle movement, the following measures shall be taken:

1. Apply parking brake..
2. The shift lever is pushed in neutral position
3. Turn off the engine and do not start the engine while the vehicle is being lifted.
4. Do not leave passengers in the vehicle.



To further ensure that the vehicle does not move, you can place blocks in front of and behind the wheel farthest from the wheel being changed (the wheel that is diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed).

Loosen the wheel nuts



Before jacking up the vehicle, be sure to loosen the nuts on the wheels.

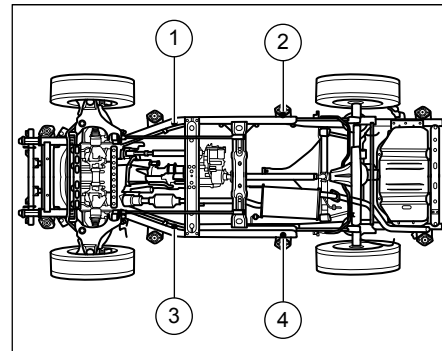
Turn the wheel nuts anticlockwise to loosen them. In order to obtain the maximum torque, insert the nut into the wrench as shown in the figure above, hold the end of the wrench handle and pull it upward. Be careful not to let the wrench disengage the nut.

Do not remove the nuts yet; just unscrew them by one cycle.

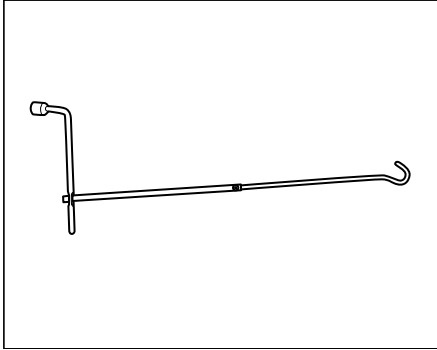
i Tip

- Only loosen each wheel nut 1 turn when the vehicle is on the jack.
- It can be loosened with the wheel assembly wrench provided with the vehicle.

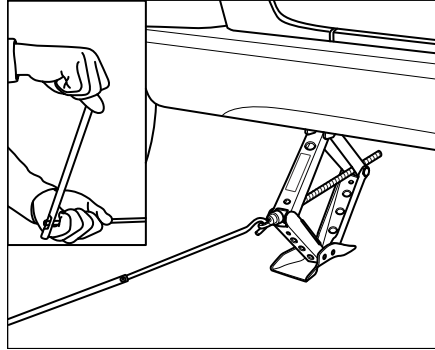
Vehicle lifting



Place the jack at the correct jacking point. Make sure the jack is placed on level and solid ground.



First assemble the special wrench for Jack, extension rod for special wrench for Jack and wheel assembly wrench as shown in the figure.



Rotate the jack clockwise to lift the vehicle by the assembled tool until the flat tire leaves the ground.

First remove the wheel nuts, and then remove the flat tire. Be careful when handling the wheel nuts, because the wheel nuts may become very hot due to driving. After removing the flat tire, place it on the ground with its outer surface facing up.

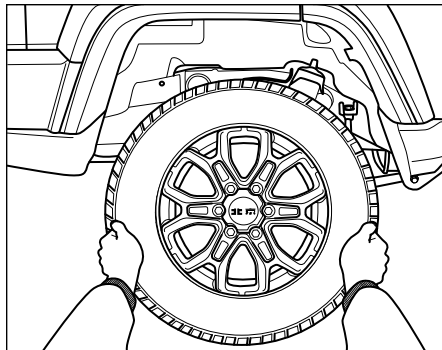
Attention

Only after loosening the nut of the replacement wheel can the lifting and subsequent replacement be carried out.

WARNING

- Make sure the jack is on firm and level ground.
- Make sure the jack is placed under the proper jacking point.
- Follow the precautions for operating the jack.
- Disconnect your vehicle from the trailer (if equipped).
- When you raise the vehicle, continually observe the condition of the vehicle. If you observe the vehicle inclines obviously, stop raising it and find out the cause before trying again.

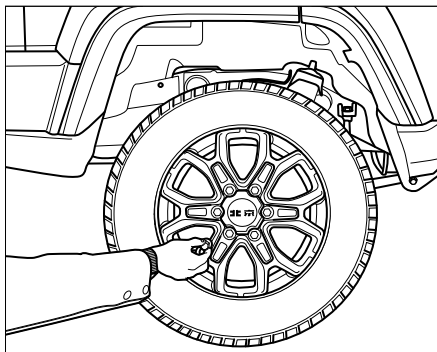
Spare tire installation



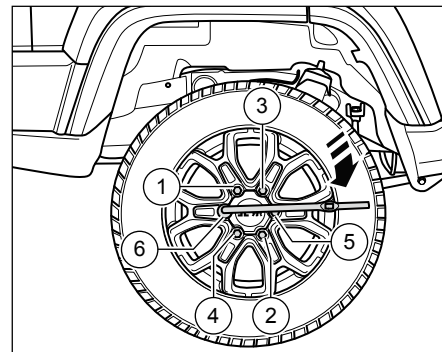
Align the mounting hole of the spare wheel with the mounting hole on the brake disc.

Attention

Before installing the wheel, please clear all corrosive substance off the installation surface with a wire brush.



When installing the wheel nuts, tighten the wheel nuts by hand as far as possible. Try to push the wheel backward to see whether it can be tightened further.



Turn the jack handle clockwise to lower the vehicle.

Tighten the wheel nut by the wheel assembly wrench. Do not use other tools or any lever tools other than hands, such as hammers, pipes or feet, and make sure the wrench is tightly fitted to the nut.

Tighten the wheel nuts evenly in the order shown in the figure.

 Attention

- Tighten the wheel nuts evenly in the order shown in the figure.
- After installing the wheels, check the tightening torque of wheel nuts at the authorized dealer of BAIC as soon as possible.
- If the nut is corroded or difficult to screw when replacing the wheel, the nut must be replaced when checking the tightening torque of the wheel nut and the bolt thread must be cleaned.

 WARNING

Threads on wheel nuts and hubs must be kept clean, and there must be no attachments such as grease.

Instructions for wheel replacement

- Install the flat tire into the flat tire well timely.
- Clean the tools and store the tools in the tool kit case.
- Check the wheel nuts torque as soon as possible.
- The damaged wheel must be repaired as soon as possible.

 Attention

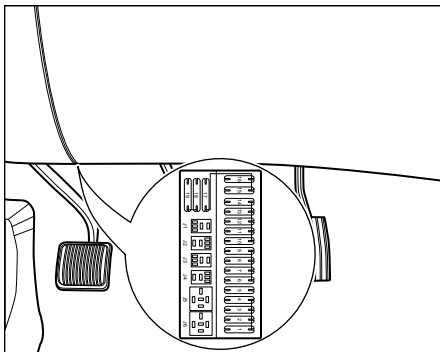
The emergency spare wheel or the replaced wheel must be reliably fixed on the spare wheel rack.

 WARNING

- If your spare tire is over six years old, only use it in emergency with extra care.
- Check the tire pressure as soon as possible after installing the spare wheels to make it within the specified range.

Fuse replacement

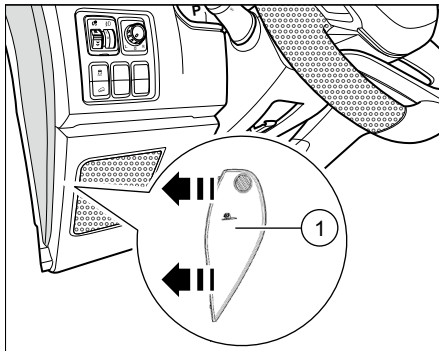
Interior fuse box



i Tip

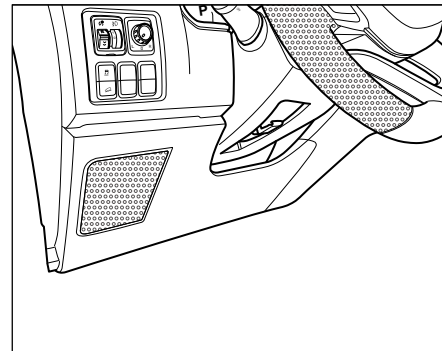
The interior fuse box is located on the left side of the lower steering column of the dashboard and behind the knee protection cover plate, and the knee pad should be removed for easy viewing during inspection or maintenance.

Removing cover for left section of dashboard



Disengage the left dashboard end cover assembly from the dashboard in the direction of the arrow using a plastic pry board.

Removing knee protection cover plate

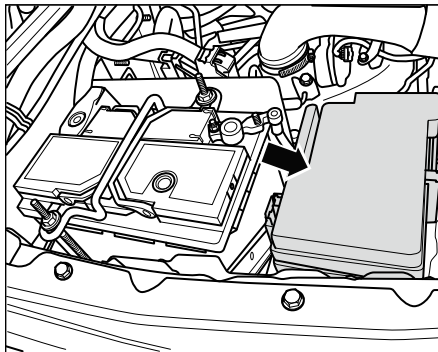


1. Remove the fixing screw on the left side of the knee protection cover plate;
2. Remove knee protection cover plate with plastic pry plate

Installing the knee protection cover plate

1. Installing the knee protection cover plate
2. Install the fixing screw on the left side of the knee protection cover plate;

Engine compartment power distribution center



i Tip

The engine compartment power distribution center is located in front of the battery or in front of the left expansion tank.

Check and replace the fuse.

If an electrical device on the car stops working, first check whether it is caused by fuse damage. It can be determined which fuse or fuses control the component according to the diagram in the "engine compartment power distribution center layout" or the location diagram on the fuse box cover. Before you can't determine whether the damaged fuse is the cause of the fault, you can replace all the damaged fuses and check whether the electrical equipment can work normally. If there is still a fault, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC.

Pull out the fuse that shuts down the electrical equipment and check it.

Check for the blown wire in the fuse. If the fuse has blown (the fuse shown in the figure has been disconnected), replace it with a spare fuse with the same or lower ampere value.

If there is no spare fuse for replacement, making the vehicle unable to move, the fuse with the same or lower ampere value can be removed from other circuits for replacement. However, it must be confirmed that you do not use this circuit temporarily, such as cigarette lighter or radio. Make sure that removing the fuse will not affect

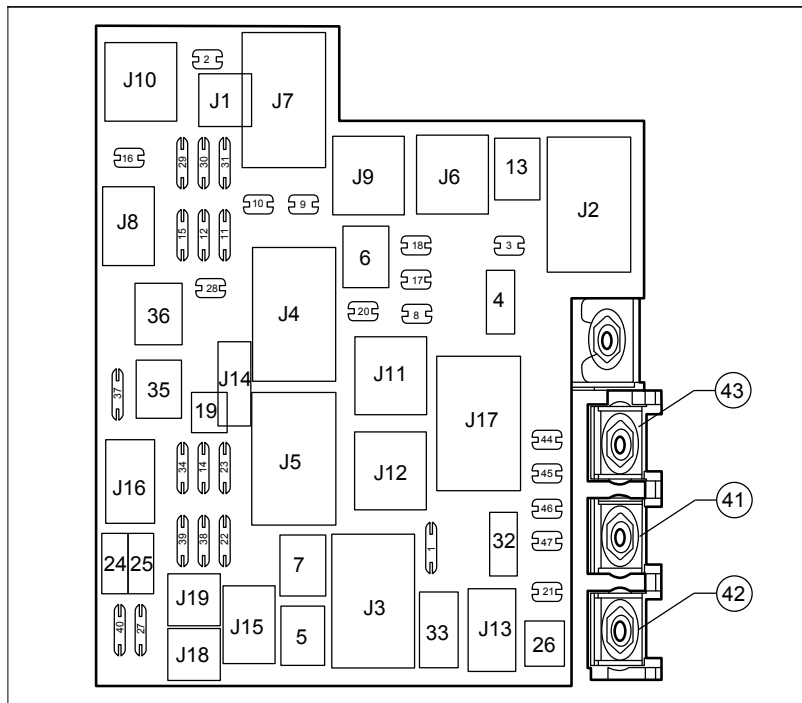
the vehicle driving.

If the replaced fuse with the same rated value is blown again in a short time, it indicates that there may be serious electrical failure in the vehicle, at this time, leave the blown fuse on the circuit and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC.

 **Attention**

If you replace a blown fuse with a spare fuse with a lower ampere value, it may blow again. If troubleshooting, it should also be replaced with fuses with correct rating as soon as possible.

Engine compartment power distribution center layout



Specifications and functions of engine compartment power distribution center (B201R/B231R/B237R gasoline vehicles)

Position	Specification	Function
1	10A	EMS
2	15A	A/C compressor
3	5A	PEPS/BCM ST
4	30A	Starter excitation
5	—	Reserve
6	40A	Fan 1 low speed
7	40A	Fan 2 low speed
8	15A	Fuel Pump
9	10A	Main Relay 2
10	10A	Blower relay coil
11	15A	Fuel injectors, sensors
12	15A	Ignition coil, brake switch
13	30A	Main relay
14	25A	ABS/ESP B+
15	—	Reserve
16	15A	Vacuum Pump (Special for National V)
17	15A	Left headlight
18	15A	Right headlight
19	—	Reserve

Position	Specification	Function
20	20A	Front wiper
21	15A	Left front fog light
22	15A	Right front fog light
23	15A	Horn
24	—	Reserve
25	30A	BCM
26	30A	BCM
27	25A	BCM
28	25A	BCM
29	20A	Ignition switch IG
30	15A	TCU/Gear switch IG
31	10A	EMS/ABS/Steering angle, yaw angle sensor IG
32	20A	220V Power
33	40A	Blower
34	5A	TCU B+
35	40A	ABS/ESP B+
36	—	Reserve
37	—	Reserve
38	—	Reserve
39	—	Reserve
40	—	Reserve
41	80A	Cab fuse box power supply
42	175A	Alternator
43	80A	High speed fan fuse
44	5A	Spare fuses

Position	Specification	Function
45	10A	Spare fuses
46	15A	Spare fuses
47	20A	Spare fuses
J1	HFKA	Compressor relay
J2	V4	Starter relay
J3	V7	Reserve
J4	V7	Fan 1 low speed
J5	V7	Fan 2 low speed
J6	V9	Fuel pump relay
J7	V4	Main relay
J8	V11	Vacuum pump delay(Special for National V)
J9	V9	Low-beam headlight relay
J10	V9	Reserve
J11	V9-Z	Low-speed relay of front wiper
J12	V9-Z	High-speed relay of front wiper
J13	V11	Left front fog light relay (for fog light bulb only)
J14	HFKA	Horn relay
J15	V11	Right front fog light relay (for fog light bulb only)
J16	HFKA	Reserve
J17	V4	Blower relay
J18	HFKA	Reserve
J19	HFKA	Reserve

Engine compartment power distribution center specifications and functions (4G20T13 gasoline model)

Position	Specification	Function
1	10A	EMS
2	15A	A/C compressor
3	5A	PEPS/BCM ST
4	30A	Starter excitation
5	—	Reserve
6	40A	Fan 1 low speed
7	40A	Fan 2 low speed
8	15A	Fuel Pump
9	10A	Main Relay 2
10	10A	Blower relay coil/EMS
11	15A	Fuel injectors, sensors
12	15A	Ignition coil, brake switch
13	30A	Main relay
14	25A	ABS/ESP B+
15	—	Reserve
16	15A	Pump
17	15A	Left headlight
18	15A	Right headlight
19	—	Reserve
20	20A	Front wiper
21	15A	Left front fog light

Position	Specification	Function
22	15A	Right front fog light
23	15A	Horn
24	—	Reserve
25	30A	BCM
26	30A	BCM
27	25A	BCM
28	25A	BCM
29	20A	Ignition switch IG
30	15A	TCU/Gear switch IG
31	10A	EMS/ABS/Steering angle, yaw angle sensor IG
32	20A	220V Power
33	40A	Blower
34	5A	TCU B+
35	40A	ABS/ESP B+
36	—	Reserve
37	—	Reserve
38	—	Reserve
39	—	Reserve
40	—	Reserve
41	80A	Cab fuse box power supply
42	175A	Alternator
43	80A	High speed fan fuse
44	5A	Spare fuses
45	10A	Spare fuses
46	15A	Spare fuses

Position	Specification	Function
47	20A	Spare fuses
J1	HFKA	Compressor relay
J2	V4	Starter relay
J3	V7	Reserve
J4	V7	Fan 1 low speed
J5	V7	Fan 2 low speed
J6	V9	Fuel pump relay
J7	V4	Main relay
J8	V11	Water pump relay
J9	V9	Low-beam headlight relay
J10	V9	Reserve
J11	V9-Z	Low-speed relay of front wiper
J12	V9-Z	High-speed relay of front wiper
J13	V11	Left front fog light relay (for fog light bulb only)
J14	HFKA	Horn relay
J15	V11	Right front fog light relay (for fog light bulb only)
J16	HFKA	Reserve
J17	V4	Blower relay
J18	HFKA	Reserve
J19	HFKA	Reserve

Engine compartment power distribution center specifications and functions (diesel models)

Position	Specification	Function
1	—	Reserve
2	15A	A/C compressor
3	5A	PEPS/BCM ST
4	30A	Starter excitation
5	—	Reserve
6	40A	Fan 1 low speed
7	40A	Fan 2 low speed
8	25A	Coarse filter heating
9	10A	Main Relay 2
10	10A	Engine management system
11	15A	Fuel injectors, sensors
12	15A	Ignition coil, brake switch
13	30A	Main relay
14	25A	ABS/ESP B+
15	—	Reserve
16	—	Reserve
17	15A	Left headlight
18	15A	Right headlight
19	—	Reserve
20	20A	Front wiper
21	—	Reserve

Position	Specification	Function
22	—	Reserve
23	15A	Horn
24	—	Reserve
25	30A	BCM
26	30A	BCM
27	25A	BCM
28	25A	BCM
29	20A	Ignition switch IG
30	15A	TCU/Gear switch IG
31	10A	EMS/ABS/Steering angle, yaw angle sensor IG
32	20A	220V Power
33	40A	Blower
34	—	Reserve
35	40A	ABS/ESP B+
36	60A	Intake preheating
37	—	Reserve
38	—	Reserve
39	—	Reserve
40	—	Reserve
41	80A	Cab fuse box power supply
42	175A	Alternator
43	80A	High speed fan fuse
44	5A	Spare fuses
45	10A	Spare fuses
46	15A	Spare fuses

Position	Specification	Function
47	20A	Spare fuses
J1	HFKA	Compressor relay
J2	V4	Starter relay
J3	V7	Reserve
J4	V7	Fan 1 low speed
J5	V7	Fan 2 low speed
J6	V9	Coarse filter heating relay
J7	V4	Main relay
J8	V11	Reserve
J9	V9	Low-beam headlight relay
J10	V9	Reserve
J11	V9-Z	Low-speed relay of front wiper
J12	V9-Z	High-speed relay of front wiper
J13	V11	Reserve
J14	HFKA	Horn relay
J15	V12	Reserve
J16	HFKA	Reserve
J17	V4	Blower relay
J18	HFKA	Reserve
J19	HFKA	Reserve

Engine compartment power distribution center specifications and functions (HY4C20B gasoline model)

Position	Specification	Function
1	10A	EMS
2	15A	A/C compressor
3	5A	PEPS/BCM ST
4	30A	Starter excitation
5	—	Reserve
6	—	Reserve
7	—	Reserve
8	15A	Fuel Pump
9	10A	Main Relay 2
10	15A	Blower relay coil / engine management system sensor
11	15A	EMS
12	15A	Ignition coil
13	30A	Main relay
14	25A	ABS/ESP B+
15	—	Reserve
16	—	Reserve
17	15A	Left headlight
18	15A	Right headlight
19	—	Reserve
20	20A	Front wiper

Position	Specification	Function
21	15A	Left front fog light
22	15A	Right front fog light
23	15A	Horn
24	—	Reserve
25	—	Reserve
26	—	Reserve
27	—	Reserve
28	25A	BCM
29	—	Reserve
30	—	Reserve
31	—	Reserve
32	20A	220V Power
33	40A	Blower
34	10A	TCU B+ (only for AT)
35	40A	ABS/ESP B+
36	30A	Cab fuse power supply
37	—	Reserve
38	—	Reserve
39	—	Reserve
40	—	Reserve
41	80A	High speed fan fuse
42	175A	Alternator
43	60A	Low speed fan fuse
44	5A	Spare fuses
45	10A	Spare fuses
46	15A	Spare fuses

Position	Specification	Function
47	20A	Spare fuses
J1	HFKA	Compressor relay
J2	V4	Starter relay
J3	—	Reserve
J4	—	Reserve
J5	—	Reserve
J6	V9	Fuel pump relay
J7	V4	Main relay
J8	—	Reserve
J9	V9	Low-beam headlight relay
J10	—	Reserve
J11	V9-Z	Low-speed relay of front wiper
J12	V9-Z	High-speed relay of front wiper
J13	V11	Left front fog light relay
J14	HFKA	Horn relay
J15	V11	Right front fog light relay
J16	HFKA	Reserve
J17	V4	Blower relay
J18	HFKA	Reserve
J19	HFKA	Reserve

i Tip

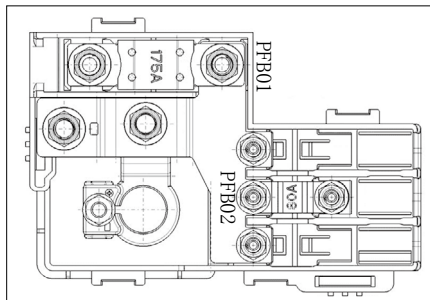
As shown in the picture, there is a spare fuse in the engine compartment power distribution center, which can be replaced with a spare fuse if the fuse on your vehicle is damaged.

i Tip

The fuse contents described above are not guaranteed to apply to each vehicle model. If you need to know the purpose of the fuse in detail, please check the real vehicle. The fuses depend on the vehicle model.

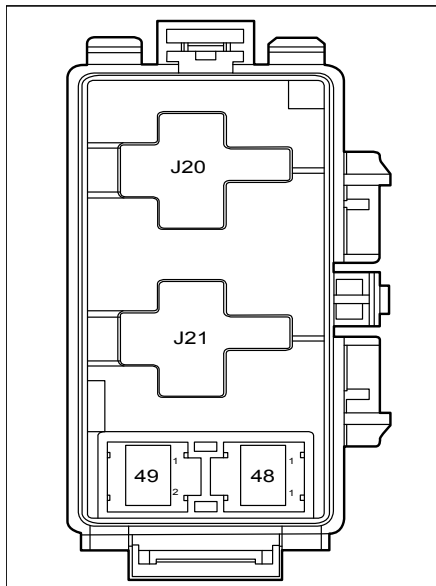
An electrical device may be equipped with several fuses, or several electrical devices share one fuse.

Battery positive electrode fuse box



Position	Specification	Function
PFB01	MEGA 175A	UEC
PFB02	MIDI 80A	IEC

High-speed fan fuse box layout in the engine room



Position	Specification	Function
48	50A	High-speed fan 1
49	50A	High-speed fan 2
J20	V7	High-speed fan 1
J21	V7	High-speed fan 2

i Tip

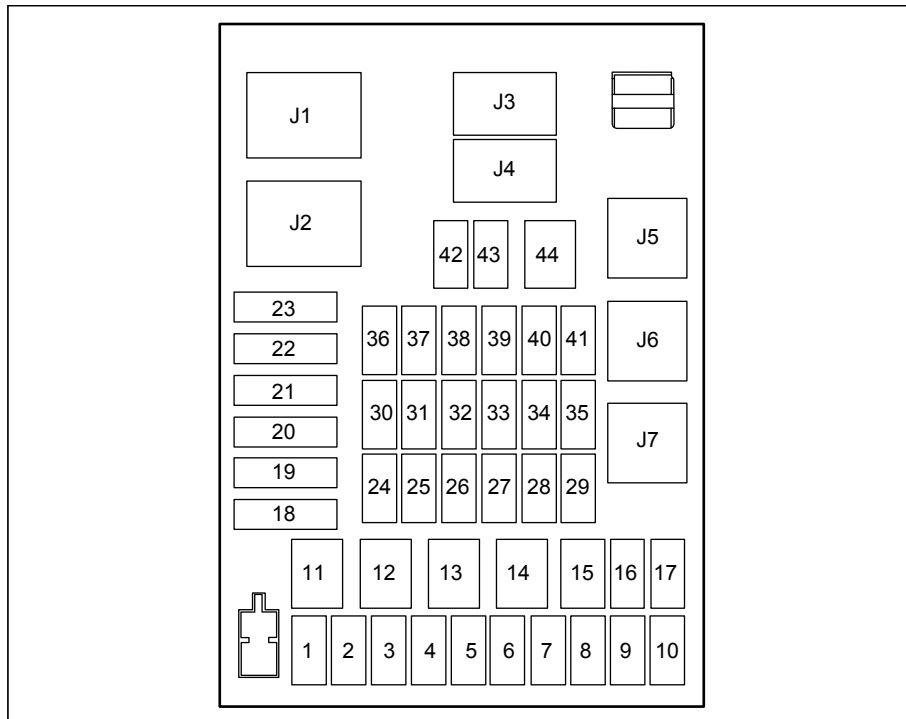
As shown in the picture, there is a spare fuse in the engine compartment power distribution center, which can be replaced with a spare fuse if the fuse on your vehicle is damaged.

i Tip

The fuse contents described above are not guaranteed to apply to each vehicle model. If you need to know the purpose of the fuse in detail, please check the real vehicle. The fuses depend on the vehicle model.

An electrical device may be equipped with several fuses, or several electrical devices share one fuse.

In-vehicle fuse box layout



In-vehicle fuse functions and specifications (B201R/B231R/B237R gasoline models)

Position	Specification	Function
1	30A	ACC relay
2	30A	IG1 Relay
3	20A	Four-wheel drive controller
4	30A	Right EPB motor
5	30A	Left EPB motor
6	20A	Driver seat heating
7	20A	Front passenger seat heating
8	—	Reserve
9	—	Reserve
10	—	Reserve
11	30A	Left front/left rear door module
12	30A	Right front/right rear door module
13	30A	Driver's seat adjustment
14	30A	Adjustment of front passenger seat
15	10A	OBD/GW/ host /A/C/A/C panel
16	10A	Rear fog light relay

Position	Specification	Function
17	10A	Glove Box Lights / Trunk Lights / Ceiling Lights
18	10A	Gauge /ESCL/ Off-Road Information
19	5A	PEPS power 1
20	5A	PEPS power 2
21	10A	Streaming media / Defrost relay /EPB switch / USB charging port
22	10A	Brake switch
23	5A	Vehicle data recorder
24	—	Reserve
25	—	Reserve
26	—	Reserve
27	—	Reserve
28	—	Reserve
29	—	Reserve
30	10A	Four-door module/four-wheel drive controller/BCM/back-up sensor/back-up camera
31	10A	Off-Road Information/EPB Controller/PEPS/Instrument
32	5A	Airbag
33	10A	GW/TPMS/A/C/panel/shift mechanism

Position	Specification	Function
34	10A	Driver and Front Passenger Seats / Streaming Media /EPB Switch / Inside Rear View Mirror / Headlight Height / Backlight Adjustment
35	5A	Rain sensor
36	10A	PEPS/BCM
37	10A	USB/Host/220V/AV switch
38	15A	Cigar light
39	—	Reserve
40	—	Reserve
41	—	Reserve
42	—	Reserve
43	—	Reserve
44	30A	Rear defrost
J1	V4	Reserve
J2	V4	Defroster relay
J3	V6	Rear fog light relay
J4	—	Reserve
J5	V4	ACC relay
J6	V4	IG1 Relay
J7	V4	Reserve

In-vehicle fuse functions and specifications (4G20T13 gasoline model)

Position	Specification	Function
1	30A	ACC relay
2	30A	IG1 Relay
3	20A	4WD Controller (Only for BorgWarner)
4	30A	Right EPB motor
5	30A	Left EPB motor
6	20A	Driver seat heating
7	20A	Front passenger seat heating
8	30A	Four-wheel drive controller (only for Dymos)
9	—	Reserve
10	—	Reserve
11	30A	Left front/left rear door module
12	30A	Right front/right rear door module
13	30A	Driver's seat adjustment
14	30A	Adjustment of front passenger seat
15	10A	OBD/GW/ host /A/C/A/C panel
16	10A	Rear fog light relay

Position	Specification	Function
17	10A	Glove Box Lights / Trunk Lights / Ceiling Lights
18	10A	Gauge /ESCL/ Off-Road Information
19	5A	PEPS power 1
20	5A	PEPS power 2
21	10A	Streaming media / Defrost relay /EPB switch / USB charging port
22	10A	Brake switch
23	5A	Vehicle data recorder
24	10A	Gear shift control mechanism
25	—	Reserve
26	—	Reserve
27	—	Reserve
28	—	Reserve
29	—	Reserve
30	10A	Four-door module/four-wheel drive controller/ BCM/back-up sensor/ back-up camera
31	10A	Off-Road Information/ EPB Controller/PEPS/ Instrument
32	5A	Airbag
33	10A	GW/TPMS/ A/C / Panel

Position	Specification	Function
34	10A	Driver and Front Passenger Seats / Streaming Media /EPB Switch / Inside Rear View Mirror / Headlight Height / Backlight Adjustment
35	5A	Rain sensor
36	10A	PEPS/BCM
37	10A	USB/Host/220V/AV switch
38	15A	Cigar lighter
39	—	Reserve
40	—	Reserve
41	—	Reserve
42	—	Reserve
43	—	Reserve
44	30A	Rear defrost
J1	V4	Reserve
J2	V4	Defroster relay
J3	V6	Rear fog light relay
J4	—	Reserve
J5	V4	ACC relay
J6	V4	IG1 Relay
J7	V4	Reserve

In-vehicle fuse functions and specifications (diesel models)

Position	Specification	Function
1	30A	ACC relay
2	30A	IG1 Relay
3	30A	Four-wheel drive controller
4	30A	Right EPB motor
5	30A	Left EPB motor
6	20A	Driver seat heating
7	20A	Front passenger seat heating
8	20A	Defroster relay
9	—	Reserve
10	—	Reserve
11	30A	Left front/left rear door module
12	30A	Right front/right rear door module
13	30A	Driver's seat adjustment
14	30A	Adjustment of front passenger seat
15	10A	OBD/GW/ host /A/C/A/C panel
16	10A	Rear fog light relay
17	10A	Glove Box Lights / Trunk Lights / Ceiling Lights

Position	Specification	Function
18	10A	Gauge /ESCL/ Off-Road Information
19	5A	PEPS power 1
20	5A	PEPS power 2
21	10A	Streaming media / Defrost relay /EPB switch / USB charging port
22	10A	Brake switch
23	5A	Vehicle data recorder
24	—	Reserve
25	—	Reserve
26	—	Reserve
27	—	Reserve
28	—	Reserve
29	—	Reserve
30	10A	Four-door module/four-wheel drive controller/ BCM/back-up sensor/back-up camera
31	10A	Off-Road Information/ EPB Controller/PEPS/ Instrument
32	5A	Airbag
33	10A	GW/TPMS/A/C/panel/ shift mechanism

Position	Specification	Function
34	10A	Driver and Front Passenger Seats / Streaming Media /EPB Switch / Inside Rear View Mirror / Headlight Height / Backlight Adjustment
35	5A	Rain sensor
36	10A	PEPS/BCM
37	10A	USB/Host/220V/AV switch
38	15A	Cigar light
39	—	Reserve
40	—	Reserve
41	—	Reserve
42	—	Reserve
43	—	Reserve
44	—	Reserve
J1	V4	Reserve
J2	V4	Defroster relay
J3	V6	Rear fog light relay
J4	—	Reserve
J5	V4	ACC relay
J6	V4	IG1 Relay
J7	V4	Reserve

Functions and specifications of in-vehicle fuses (city version: B237R/4G20T13 gasoline model and ring tower model: B237R)

Position	Specification	Function
1	30A	ACC relay
2	30A	IG1 Relay
3	20A/30A	Four-wheel drive controller (30A is only for 4G20T13)
4	30A	Right EPB motor
5	30A	Left EPB motor
6	20A	Driver seat heating
7	20A	Front passenger seat heating
8	30A	Power amplifier power supply
9	—	Reserve
10	—	Reserve
11	30A	Left front/left rear door module
12	30A	Right front/right rear door module
13	30A	Driver's seat adjustment
14	30A	Adjustment of front passenger seat
15	30A	B+

Position	Specification	Function
16	15A	Steering wheel heating
17	10A	Glove Box Lights / Trunk Lights / Ceiling Lights
18	10A	Combination instrument/ off-road information module B+
19	5A	PEPS power 1
20	5A	PEPS power 2
21	10A	Streaming media / Defrost relay / EPB switch / USB charging port
22	10A	Brake switch
23	5A	Vehicle data recorder
24	10A	Shifting mechanism (for 4G20T13 only)
25	—	Reserve
26	—	Reserve
27	10A	OBD / Host / A/C Panel / A/C Controller
28	5A	GW
29	10A	Rear fog light relay
30	10A	Four-door module/four-wheel drive controller/ BCM/back-up sensor/ back-up camera
31	10A	Off-Road Information/ EPB Controller/PEPS/ Instrument

Position	Specification	Function
32	5A	Airbag controller
33	10A	GW/TPMS/A/C/panel/ shift operating mechanism
34	10A	Driver and Front Passenger Seats / Streaming Media / EPB Switch / Interior Rear View Mirror Headlight height adjustment and backlight adjustment switch
35	5A	Rain sensor / steering wheel heating
36	10A	PEPS/BCM
37	10A	USB/Host/220V/AV switch
38	15A	Cigar light
39	—	Reserve
40	—	Reserve
41	—	Reserve
42	—	Reserve
43	—	Reserve
44	30A	Rear defrost
J1	V4	Reserve
J2	V4	Rear defroster relay
J3	V6	Rear fog light relay
J4	—	Reserve
J5	V4	ACC relay

Position	Specification	Function
J6	V4	IG1 Relay
J7	V4	Reserve

In-vehicle fuse functions and specifications (HY4C20B gasoline model)

Position	Specification	Function
1	30A	ACC relay
2	30A	IG1 Relay
3	30A	Four-wheel drive controller
4	30A	Right EPB motor
5	30A	Left EPB motor
6	20A	Driver seat heating
7	20A	Front passenger seat heating
8	30A	Power amplifier power supply
9	—	Reserve
10	—	Reserve
11	30A	Left front/left rear door module
12	30A	Right front/right rear door module
13	30A	Driver's seat adjustment
14	30A	Adjustment of front passenger seat
15	20A	BCM
16	15A	Steering wheel heating

Position	Specification	Function
17	10A	Glove Box Lights / Trunk Lights / Ceiling Lights
18	10A	Gauge /ESCL/ Off-Road Information
19	15A	BCM
20	5A	PEPS power 2
21	10A	Streaming media / Defrost relay /EPB switch / USB charging port
22	10A	Brake switch
23	20A	BCM
24	10A	Shift operation mechanism
25	10A	ABS/ESP/YAW/SAS
26	10A	PEPS/BCM
27	10A	USB/Host/220V/AV switch
28	15A	Cigar lighter
29	—	Reserve
30	10A	Four-door module/four-wheel drive controller/BCM/back-up sensor/back-up camera
31	10A	Off-Road Information/EPB Controller/PEPS/Instrument
32	5A	Airbag
33	10A	GW/TPMS/ A/C / Panel

Position	Specification	Function
34	10A	Driver and Front Passenger Seats / Streaming Media /EPB Switch / Inside Rear View Mirror / Headlight Height / Backlight Adjustment
35	5A	Rain sensor / steering wheel heating
36	10A	Shift mechanism
37	15A	OBD/main unit
38	10A	GW
39	10A	Rear fog lights/ambient lights
40	5A	Driving Recorder / A/C Panel / A/C Controller
41	5A	PEPS power 1
42	—	Reserve
43	—	Reserve
44	30A	Rear defrost
J1	V4	Reserve
J2	V4	Defroster relay
J3	V6	Rear fog light relay
J4	—	Reserve
J5	V4	ACC relay
J6	V4	IG1 Relay
J7	V4	Reserve

i Tip

As shown in the picture, there is a spare fuse in the engine compartment power distribution center, which can be replaced with a spare fuse if the fuse on your vehicle is damaged.

i Tip

The fuse contents described above are not guaranteed to apply to each vehicle model. If you need to know the purpose of the fuse in detail, please check the real vehicle. The fuses depend on the vehicle model.

An electrical device may be equipped with several fuses, or several electrical devices share one fuse.

Replace the bulbs

Usually, it is impossible to replace bulbs without removing other vehicle parts first, especially for bulbs that can only be operated from the front engine compartment. So this job requires professional skills.

Therefore, we recommend that you go to the authorized dealer of BAIC to replace the bulb.

⚠ WARNING

- **Pay special attention when working in the engine compartment!**
- **The bulb is pressurized and may explode when replaced-pay attention to the danger of injury!**

Emergency start

If the engine of the vehicle cannot be started due to battery discharge, the battery of other vehicles can be used to start by jumper cable, and the following points must be paid attention to:

- The rated voltage of the power supply battery must be 12V, and its capacity (Ah) must not be lower than that of the discharged automobile battery.
- Only jumper cables with large enough cross-sections can be used and pay attention to the instructions of the cable manufacturer.
- only jumper cables with insulating electrode clights can be used.

i Tip

The battery capacity of this car is 70Ah.

⚠ WARNING

Never charge a frozen battery-explosion danger! Even if the battery is thawed, the acid solution of the battery may overflow during charging, causing corrosion damage, so the frozen battery must be replaced.

👁 Attention

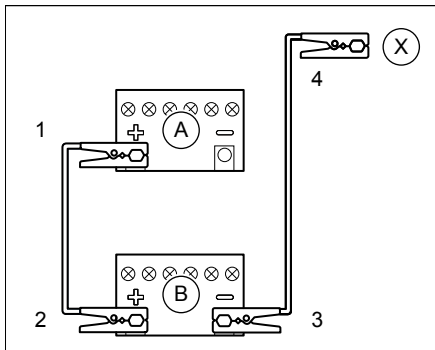
When jump starting, protect the disabled vehicle from contacting the booster vehicle. Otherwise, once the positive poles of the two batteries are connected, the current will be connected immediately, which will cause danger.

Read and follow the relevant warnings before operating the batteries.

5

Jumper cable

When jumpstarting a battery, the positive terminal must be connected first, and then the negative terminal.



1. Wear protective glasses and remove metal accessories such as watches and bracelets to prevent electric shock;
2. Put the start/stop button in the "OFF" position.
3. Connect one end of the red cable -1- to the positive (+) of the dead battery "A".
4. The other end -2- is connected to the positive (+) side of the power supply battery "B".

5. Connect one end of the black cable -3- to the negative pole (-) of the power supply battery "B", and the other end -4- to the engine block of the depleted battery "A" or the metal part that is fixedly connected to the engine block..
6. Start the vehicle with the power supply battery installed, let it run at idle speed, and then start the engine of the vehicle with the power shortage battery, which needs to run for a period of time, so that the generator can charge the power shortage battery.
7. Remove the cables in the reverse order of the above. When disassembling, be careful not to be hurt by the rotating belt or fan.

 Attention

- Place the jumper cables in position to prevent them from touching the moving parts of the engine.
- When removing the jumper cable, it is necessary to turn on the blower or the rear windshield heater of the vehicle with a dead battery, which can reduce the voltage peak generated when removing the cable.
- In order to ensure successful jumper, the engine should be in idle running state during disassembly.

 WARNING

A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

- The engine compartment is a dangerous area. Improper operation may cause injuries or deaths.
- Do not connect the negative cable directly to the negative terminal of the battery without electricity, otherwise sparks will be generated when the cable is connected. The combustible gas produced by the battery may be ignited by sparks, causing explosion accidents.
- Do not connect the negative cable to the components of the fuel system or the brake pipeline, which may cause fire.
- Do not lean over the battery during operation to avoid being burned by acid.
- Do not touch open flame, otherwise it may cause explosion

Emergent traction

The front and rear of the vehicle are equipped with traction rings for traction. When your vehicle breaks down or an accident occurs, you can use the front or rear traction rings as traction points to tow your vehicle.

 Attention

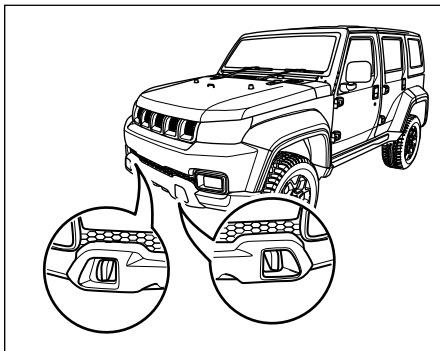
Towing rings should not be used to tow other vehicles, and should never be used to tow trailers.

The best traction method is to use a special tractor. If suspension traction (front wheel lifting) is required or the vehicle must be towed with four wheels on the ground at the same time, attention shall be paid to:

- When the start / stop button is in the "RUN" position, turn on the hazard warning light.
- The transmission shift lever shall be placed in neutral or "N" position, and the transfer case shall be placed in 2H position.

- For the automatic transmission model II, if you need to tow the vehicle, please be sure to put the transmission in the "N" gear through the "P" gear unlocking mechanism (the "P gear emergency unlocking of the transmission" on page 162).

Front drag



The vehicle has two front traction rings, which are symmetrically distributed on the left and right sides of the lower part of the vehicle's front bumper as shown in the figure.

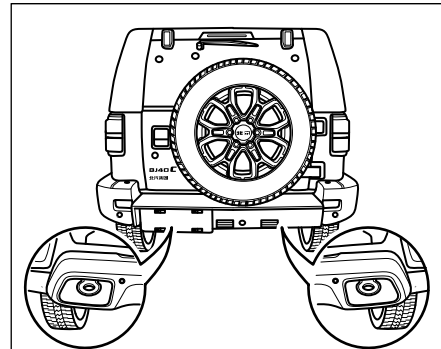
⚠ WARNING

- Unless you have the experience, do not tow other vehicle to avoid accidents.**

👁 Attention

- The driver in the towed vehicle must turn on the hazard warning lights and follow the local laws and regulations.**
- Be sure to strain the tow rope.**

Rear towing



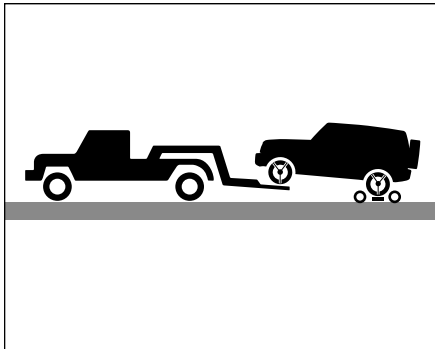
The rear traction ring (as shown in the figure) is installed on the welding plate at the rear of the vehicle

Vehicle towing

If the vehicle needs to be towed, it is recommended that you entrust the authorized dealer of BAIC or a commercial trailer company to handle it. When you contact them, you must tell them which method you need to use to drag the vehicle.

Using proper equipment in towing can prevent damage to the vehicle. Personnel of commercial trailer companies are familiar with national / provincial and local Trailer laws and can seek their help!

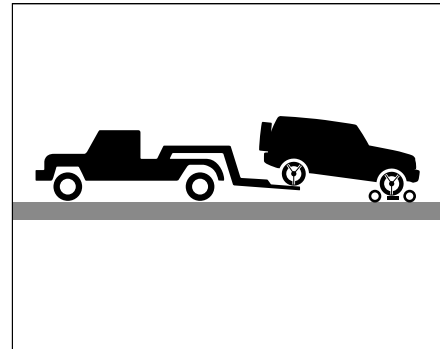
Drag from the front



Attention

Do not drag the vehicle from the front with the rear wheels on the ground. When lifting the wheel, pay attention to make sure that the other end opposite to lifting end has proper leaving-off ground clearance. Otherwise, the bumper or body base plate may be damaged in towing.

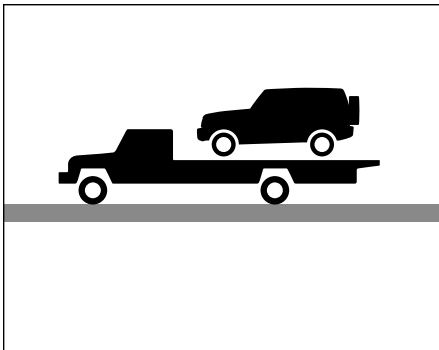
Drag from the rear



Attention

Don't tow the car from the rear when the front wheel is on the ground, because this may cause serious damage to the transmission.

Use a platform truck



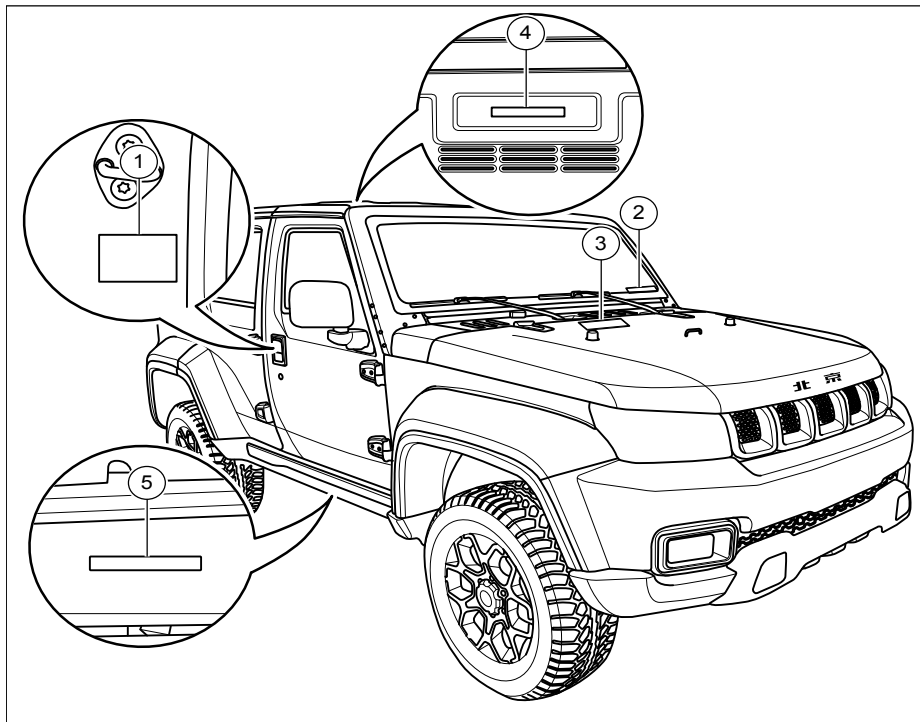
 Attention

Pay attention to exert parking brake and fix four wheels, to prevent vehicle from moving during emergent braking.

6. Technical Data

Identification number.....	286
Complete vehicle parameters	291

Identification number



The vehicle identification number (VIN) is marked in 5 places on the vehicle, which are located on the vehicle data plate -1-, on the bottom of the windshield on the left side -2-, and on the body between the two hinges of the bonnet (requires completely open the engine hood) -3-, inside the tailgate -4-, and on the right frame cross member -5-.

In addition to marking the vehicle identification code on the vehicle, you can also connect the vehicle with the diagnostic tester by the vehicle OBD interface, select the engine controller EMS according to the model, and read the vehicle identification number VIN of the controller. The vehicle data nameplate is affixed to the middle and lower part of the right B-pillar, and the data plate of some models is riveted to the façade on the right side of the engine compartment.

Purchase channels and contact information of the diagnostic tester.

At this stage, the diagnostic tester has two systems:

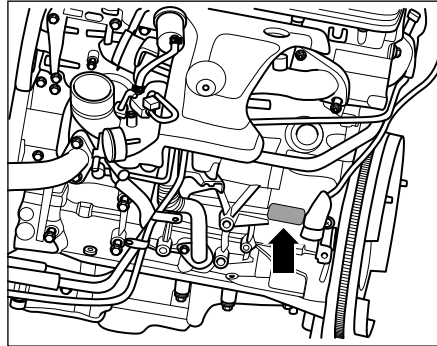
Accessory coding: T11200001

Accessory Name: BAIC diagnostic system

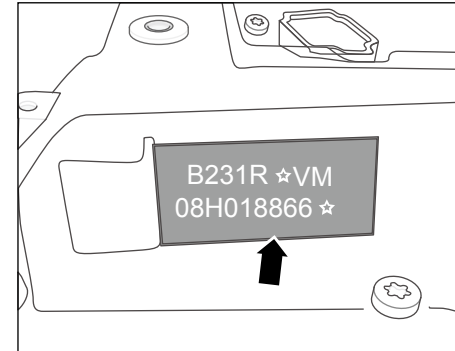
Accessory coding: T19900010

Accessory name: PAD diagnostic tester kit

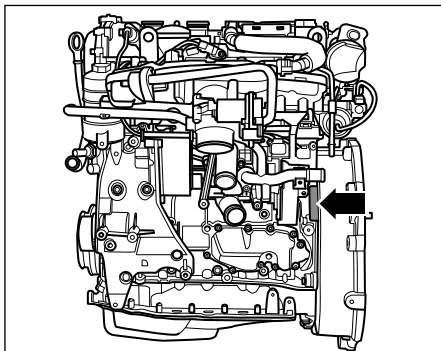
Engine, Transmission and Transfer Case Coding



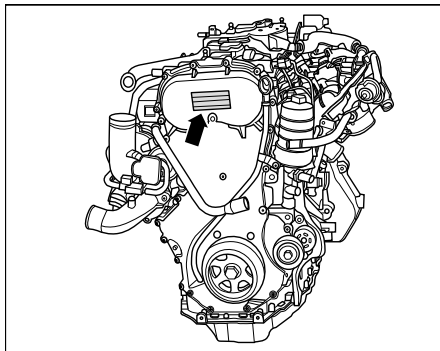
The engine code of B201R/B231R gasoline models is engraved on the engine block.



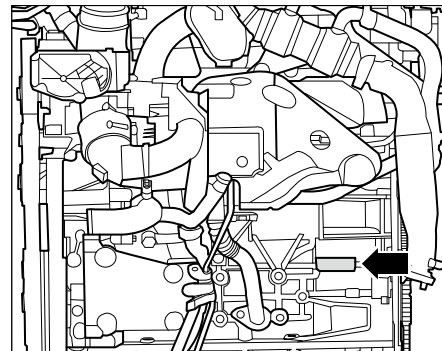
The engine code for B201R/B231R gasoline models is affixed to the hood.



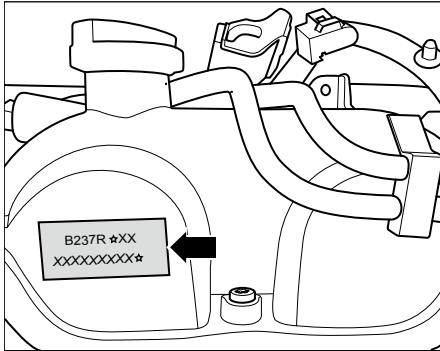
The engine code of the 4G20T13 gasoline model is engraved on the engine.



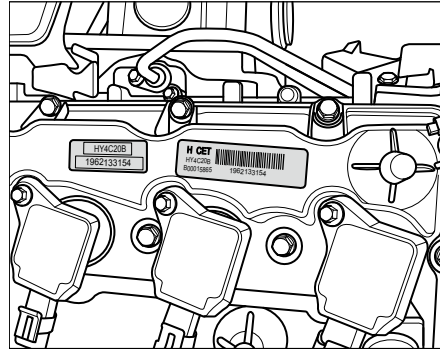
The engine code of the 4G20T13 gasoline model is affixed to the engine block.



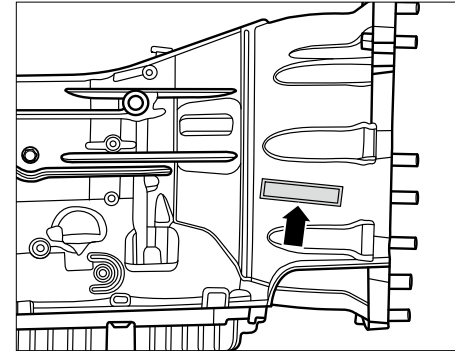
The engine code of the B237R gasoline model is engraved on the engine block.



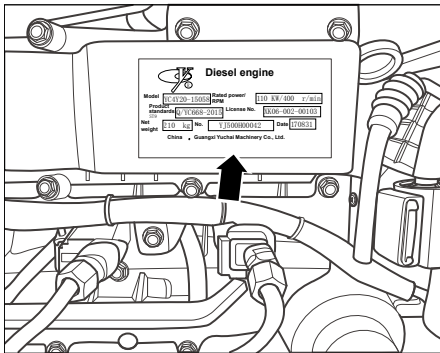
The engine code of the B237R gasoline model is affixed to the engine block.



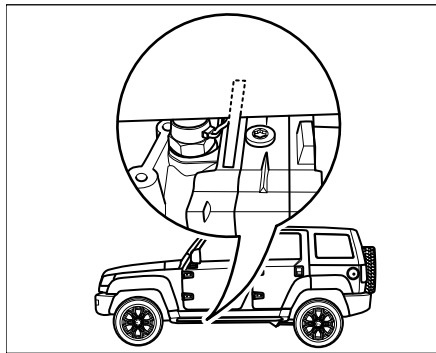
The engine code of the HY4C20B gasoline model is affixed to the engine block.



The transmission code of HY4C20B gasoline model is affixed to on the transmission case.



The engine model number and code for diesel engine models are affixed to the hood.



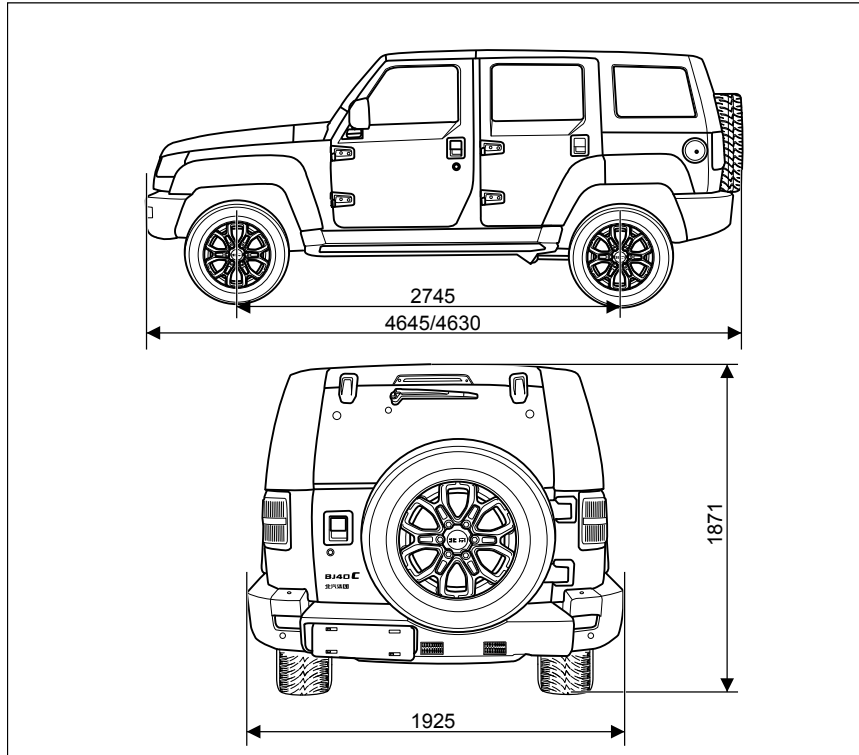
The transmission code is engraved on the transmission housing.

Vehicle data nameplate

The product label is located at the middle and lower part of the B pillar at the front passenger's side. The following information can be read on the product label:

1. Vehicle Identification Number
2. Brand, complete vehicle model;
3. Engine model, maximum net engine power
4. Engine displacement, maximum allowable gross mass
5. Number of passengers, year of manufacture
6. Name of manufacturer
7. Country of manufacture

Complete vehicle parameters



Item	Dimension
Total length (mm)	4645/4630
Total width (mm)	1925
Total height (mm)	1871
Wheelbase (mm)	2745
Minimum ground clearance/mm	≥210
Front wheelbase (mm)	1610
Rear wheelbase (mm)	1610

The name of the part that is not included in the outer dimensions of the vehicle according to GB1589: exterior rearview mirror.

The exterior mirrors are located in the front center of the left and right front doors and above the door hinges.

Main models and technical parameters

Vehicle models	BJ2021F7VA3B	BJ2022F7VM3B	BJ2024F7VM1E	BJ2025F7VAB	BJ2030F7VAH	BJ2030F7VMH
Engine model	B231R	B201R	YC4Y20-15058	4G20TI3	B237R	B237R
Drive Type	AWD	AWD	AWD	AWD	AWD	AWD
Ex-factory emission levels	National V	National V	National V	National V	National VI (6b)	National VI (6b)
Length (mm)	4645	4645	4645	4645	4645	4645
Width (mm)	1925	1925	1925	1925	1925	1925
Height (mm)	1871	1871	1871	1871	1871	1871
Wheelbase (mm)	2745	2745	2745	2745	2745	2745
Front wheelbase (mm)	1610	1610	1610	1610	1610	1610
Rear wheelbase (mm)	1610	1610	1610	1610	1610	1610
Minimum ground clearance (mm)	≥210	≥210	≥210	≥210	≥210	≥210
Passengers	5	5	5	5	5	5
Minimum Turning Diameter (m)	12.5	12.5	12.5	12.5	12.5	12.5
Approach Angle (°)	37	37	37	37	37	37
Departure Angle (°)	31	31	31	31	31	31
Curb weight (kg)	2095	2055	2140	2110	2115	2080
Axle load front/rear (repair state)	1099/996	1078/977	1140/1000	1097/1013	1117/998	1098/982
Total mass (kg)	2520	2480	2565	2535	2540	2505
Axle load front/rear (full load status)	1184/1336	1166/1314	1225/1340	1186/1349	1194/1346	1177/1328
0-100km/h starting continuous shifting acceleration time (s)	≤13	≤15	≤16	≤13.5	≤13.0	≤12.5
Maximum speed (Km/h)	≥160	≥160	≥150	≥160	≥160	≥160
Maximum gradeability (%) on dry hard cement road	≥60	≥60	≥60	≥60	≥60	≥60
Fuel consumption for comprehensive working conditions L/100km	≤10.0	≤9.4	≤9.2	≤10.1	≤10.6	≤9.7
90Km/h constant speed fuel consumption L/100km)	≤11	≤10.5	≤9.5	≤10.0	≤10.0	≤10.0

Main models and technical parameters

Vehicle models	BJ2032F7VAK	BJ2032F7VA1K	BJ2032F7VZK
Engine model	HY4C20B	HY4C20B	HY4C20B
Drive Type	AWD	AWD	2WD
Ex-factory emission levels	National VI (6b)	National VI (6b)	National VI (6b)
Length (mm)	4630	4630	4630
Width (mm)	1925	1925	1925
Height (mm)	1871	1871	1871
Wheelbase (mm)	2745	2745	2745
Front wheelbase (mm)	1610	1610	1610
Rear wheelbase (mm)	1610	1610	1610
Minimum ground clearance (mm)	≥210	≥210	≥210
Passengers	5	5	5
Minimum Turning Diameter (m)	12.5	12.5	12.5
Approach Angle (°)	37	37	37
Departure Angle (°)	31	31	31
Curb weight (kg)	2080	2080	1960
Axle load front/rear (repair state)	1092/988	1092/988	1009/951
Total mass (kg)	2505	2505	2505
Axle load front/rear (full load status)	1202/1303	1202/1303	1140/1365
0-100km/h starting continuous shifting acceleration time (s)	≤13.0	≤13.0	≤11.5
Maximum speed (Km/h)	≥160	≥160	≥160
Maximum gradeability (%) on dry hard cement road	≥60	≥60	≥40
Fuel consumption for comprehensive working conditions L/100km	≤10.1	≤9.9	≤9.4
90Km/h constant speed fuel consumption L/100km)	≤10.0	≤10.0	≤10.0

Structure parameter

Minimum turning diameter (along the center of the front outer wheel) (m)	12.5
Approach Angle (°)	≥37
Departure Angle (°)	≥31
The number of seats (including driver)	5

Parameters for front wheel alignment

Front wheel camber	0°±30'
Kingpin caster angle	5°30'±30'
Kingpin inclination angle	13°24'±20'
Toe-in of front wheel (single side)	0°9'±3'

Wheel parameter

Item	Front wheels	Rear wheel	Spare tire
Tire pressure (cold state) (kPa)	220	220	220
Specification 1 of Rims and Tires	17X8J, 265/65R17		
Specification 2 of Rims and Tires	17X7.5J, 245/70R17		
Wheel Nut Torque (N·m)	140±10	140±10	110±5
Wheel dynamic balance alignment	Single residual unbalance amount≤ 10g		

Brake clutch system

Brake pedal idle travel (mm)	10~20
Free stroke of clutch pedal (mm)	10~20
Service limit of front friction plate (excluding back plate thickness) (mm)	2
Service limit of rear friction plate (excluding back plate thickness) (mm)	2

Electrical

Battery type	Maintenance-free
20h rate capacity	70AH
Voltage and Electrodes	12V, negative (-) grounding
Alternator output rating	13.5V / 140A (gasoline vehicle) 14V / 180A (HY4C20B) 14V / 120A (diesel vehicle)
Starter motor power	1.4kW (gasoline vehicle) 12V / 2.2kW (diesel vehicle)

Engine parameters

Model	B201R (2.0T)	B231R (2.3T)	4G20TI3	YC4Y20-15058	B237R-MT model (2.3T)	B237R-AT model (2.3T)	HY4C20B
Type and category	Four-stroke, in-line, water cooling, super-charged with intercooling	Four-stroke, in-line, water cooling, super-charged with intercooling	Four-stroke, in-line, water cooling, super-charged with inter-cooling, direct injection	Four-stroke, in-line, water cooling, super-charged with intercooling	Four-stroke, in-line, water cooling, super-charged with intercooling	Four-stroke, in-line, water cooling, super-charged with intercooling	Four-stroke, in-line, water cooling, super-charged with intercooling
Emissions standards	National V	National V	National V	National V	National VI	National VI	National VI
Fuel type and model	Gasoline/92# unleaded gasoline and above	Gasoline/95# unleaded gasoline and above	Gasoline/95# unleaded gasoline and above	Diesel/-35#-0# Diesel	Diesel/95# unleaded gasoline and above	Diesel/95# unleaded gasoline and above	Gasoline/92# unleaded gasoline and above
Cylinder bore x stroke (mm)	90X78	90X90	82X93.8	85X88.1	90X90	90X90	82.5X92
Displacement (L)	1.985	2.29	1.981	1.999	2.29	2.29	1.967
Compression ratio	8.8:1	9.3:1	10:01	16.5:1	10:01	10:01	9.6:1
Rated power (RPM) kW/(r/min)	150/5500	184/5300	160/5500	110/4000	155/5200	170/5200	165/5500
Maximum net power (RPM) kW/(r/min)	145/5500	170/5300	160/5500	107/4000	146/5200	160/5200	160/5500
Maximum torque (speed) N·m (r/min)	280/1900-4500	350/1900-4300	320/1750-4500	350/1800-2800	330/1900- 4000	345/1900- 4000	380/1800- 3600
Idle speed (r/min) (when the A/C is not working) (under sufficient warm-up conditions)	750±50	750±50	750±50	700±50	700±50	700±50	700±30
Idle speed (r/min) (when the A/C is working) (under sufficient warm-up conditions)	750±50	750±50	750±50	700±50	700±50	700±50	750±30

Dosage and filling capacity (gasoline models)

	Dosage and filling capacity (L)	Brand No.
Fuel tank	75	92# unleaded gasoline and above (2.0T/HY4C20B engine); 95# and above unleaded gasoline (2.3T engine, 4G20T13)
Engine Oil (B201R/B231R)	5.5	Caltex TITAN EM 5C 530 SAAB/API SN 5W-30
Engine oil (B237R)	5.5	Shell fully synthetic oil API SN 5W-30
Engine oil (4G20T13)	5	Brand: Fox; Grade: SM grade and above; Model: 5W-40
Engine oil (HY4C20B)	5.5	Brand: Total Grade: When the ambient temperature is $> -30^{\circ}\text{C}$, use SN/GF-5 5W-30; when the ambient temperature is $\leq -30^{\circ}\text{C}$, use C2 0W-30
MT transmission oil	2.6	GL-4, 75W/90
AT transmission oil		Maintenance-free
BW47-45 electronically controlled transfer case	1.5	DEXRON III
Coolant	7.66	-35
Windshield cleaning agent	2.3	-

Power steering fluid	1	ATF III H or PanDongxing hydraulic transmission oil CHF 202
Low temperature resistant power steering fluid (recommended when the ambient temperature is lower than -20°C)	1	Pandongxing hydraulic transmission oil CHF202
Front axle gear oil	1	GL-5 SAE80W-90
Gear oil of rear axle	2	GL-5 SAE80W-90
TF170E2 electronically controlled transfer case	1.8	Yuchai GL-4 75W/85

Dosage and filling capacity (diesel models)

	Dosage and filling capacity (L)	Brand No.
Fuel tank	75	Diesel/-35#-0# Diesel
Engine oil	5	Diesel engine oils of CJ-4 or AECE standard A3/B4 or above
MT transmission oil	2.55±0.05	GL-4, 75W/90
TF170E2 electronically controlled transfer case	1.8	Yuchai, GL-4 75w/85
Coolant	7.66	-35
Windshield cleaning agent	2.3	-
Power steering fluid	1	ATF III H or PanDongxing hydraulic transmission oil CHF 202

Low temperature resistant power steering fluid (recommended when the ambient temperature is lower than -20 °C)	1	Pandongxing hydraulic transmission oil CHF 202
Brake fluid	0.6	HZY4 (DOT4)
Front axle gear oil	1	GL-5 SAE80W-90

Light source

Name	Model	Specifications
Front combination light (including high beam and low beam, position light, front turn signal light)	LED	—
Front combination light (including position light, brake light, backup light and turn signal light)	LED	—
High-mounted brake light	Ceiling light	—
Daytime running light (high configuration)	LED	—
Trunk light	LED	—
Footwell lighting	LED	—
Atmosphere light	LED	—
Front fog light (high configuration)	H8	12V35W
Rear fog light (high configuration)	P21W	12V21W
Ceiling light	C10W	12V10W
Glove box light	C5W	12V5W

7. Breakdown Call

Breakdown Call 299

Breakdown Call

BAIC provides rescue services 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. When your vehicle breaks down and cannot be handled by yourself, you can get help through the following methods:

- Call the local authorized dealer of BAIC:
- We will arrange rescue teams to implement rescue services in the shortest time.
- For the breakdown that occurred during the warranty period, the vehicle rescue service within the scope of warranty claim is a free rescue (including out-of-charge fare and towing fee), except for the following circumstances:
- Rescue activities without the prior consent of BAIC and its service providers;
- Vehicles already in the workshop;
- As a result of accident, robbery or man-made damage, and any damage caused by them;
- Loss caused by intentional or negligent behavior;
- Damage caused by participating in racing cars or other activities involving driving at extreme speed;
- Damage caused by installing parts not approved by BAIC or modifying vehicles without permission of BAIC.

For the vehicle rescue service that fails during the warranty period but is not within the scope of the claim, the customer shall pay for it at his own expense, including the fare, towing fee, working hours fee, and material fee.

8. Maintenance information

Maintenance Specifications	301
---	------------

Maintenance Specifications

There are two kinds of maintenance specifications for this vehicle. Please carry out corresponding maintenance regularly according to the specifications.

"Class A maintenance specification" stipulates the maintenance interval under normal use conditions; If your vehicle is frequently used under the following conditions, it should be maintained in accordance with the Class B Maintenance Code:

- Frequent short-distance driving not exceeding 8km;
- Often driving in dusty environment;
- Often used as a trailer;
- Idle for a long time;
- In the environment above 32 °C, driving at high speed for more than 50% of the time;
- Off-road driving
- Driving in the desert.

In addition, please check the engine oil level every time you stop to refuel, and refill as needed;

- Check windshield washer and refill as needed.
- The following maintenance and inspections should be carried out monthly:
- Check tire pressure and wear;
- Check the voltage, clean the battery electrodes, and tighten them if necessary;
- Check the liquid level of coolant, brake fluid and power steering fluid, and refill if necessary;
- Whether all the lights and electrical' on the car work normally, and if there is any abnormality, they should be repaired immediately;
- Check the exhaust system every time the engine oil is changed;
- Check the brake hose;
- Check the engine coolant level, pipes and clips;
- Check whether there is oil leakage on the outer surface of the transmission and transfer case;
- Lubricate the sliding splines as required;
- After driving off-road, the bottom of the vehicle should be thoroughly inspected and loose parts should be tightened.

Attention

Inspection and maintenance should be carried out at any time when a component fails or when a component is suspected of not functioning, and a record of the repairs made should be kept.

Attention

- **If the vehicle is in stock for more than 3 months, the engine must be run once for not less than 20 minutes.**
- **If the vehicle is driven in harsh environment and working conditions for a long time, please carry out maintenance in advance. For details, please consult the local authorized dealer.**

Class A Maintenance Specifications (B201R/B231R Gasoline Models)

Maintenance time Maintenance Items	First maintenance 5000km/6 months (subject to the purchase invoice), whichever comes first	Regular maintenance 7500km/6 months, whichever comes first	Additional maintenance
Engine oil	•	•	Replace every 7500km/6 months Whichever comes first
Engine oil filter	•	•	Replace every 7500km/6 months Whichever comes first
Engine accessory driving belt	○(Replace if necessary)	○(Replace if necessary)	—
Throttle body and idle valve	—	—	Check throttle body and idle bypass airway for sludge every 20000km/12 months (whichever comes first) and clean if necessary
Power steering fluid	○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 60000km/36 months Whichever comes first
Manual transmission oil	•	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 40000km/24 months Whichever comes first
Automatic transmission oil	Maintenance-free	Maintenance-free	Maintenance-free
Sparking plug	—	○(adjust if necessary)	Replace every 40000km
Air filter element	○(clean if necessary)	○(clean if necessary)	Replace every 20000km/12 months Whichever comes first
A/C filter element	○(clean if necessary)	○(Replace if necessary)	Replace every 20000km/12 months (whichever comes first) Check every 7500km (replace if necessary)
Fuel Filter	—	—	Replace every 40000km/24 months Whichever comes first
Engine coolant	○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 40000km/24 months Whichever comes first
Clutch system and brake system brake fluid	○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 40000km/24 months Whichever comes first

Maintenance time Maintenance Items	First maintenance 5000km/6 months (subject to the purchase invoice), whichever comes first	Regular maintenance 7500km/6 months, whichever comes first	Additional maintenance
Transfer case oil	○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 60000km/36 months (whichever comes first) Check every 10000km (replace if necessary)
Brake lining	○(Replace if necessary)	○(Replace if necessary)	—
Front and rear axle assembly gear oil	—	—	Replace every 40000km/24 months (Whichever comes first)
Drive shaft spline grease	○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	—
Front/rear stabilizer bar bushings	—	—	Check every 20000km/12 months (replace if necessary) (whichever comes first)
Stabilizer bar column cushion	—	—	Check every 20000km/12 months (replace if necessary) (whichever comes first)
Reasonable replacement cycle of fuel (gas) hose	—	—	No replacement, with the life of the vehicle

Note: ○ Inspection ● Replace — No instructions

Class A Maintenance Specifications (4G20T13 Gasoline Models)

Maintenance time Maintenance Items	First maintenance 5000km/6 months (subject to the purchase invoice), whichever comes first	Regular maintenance 10000km/12 months, whichever comes first	Additional maintenance
Engine oil	•	•	Replace every 10000km/12 months Whichever comes first
Engine oil filter	•	•	Replace every 10000km/12 months Whichever comes first
Engine accessory driving belt	○(Replace if necessary)	○(Replace if necessary)	—
Throttle body and idle valve	—	—	Check throttle body and idle bypass airway for sludge every 20000km/12 months (whichever comes first) and clean if necessary
Power steering fluid	○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 60000km/36 months Whichever comes first
Manual transmission oil	•	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 40000km/24 months Whichever comes first
Automatic transmission oil	Maintenance-free	Maintenance-free	Maintenance-free
Sparking plug	—	—	Replacement at 25000km for the first maintenance and every 30000km thereafter
Air filter element	○(clean if necessary)	•	Replace every 20000km/12 months Whichever comes first
A/C filter element	○(clean if necessary)	○(Replace if necessary)	Replace every 20000km/12 months (whichever comes first) Check every 10000km (replace if necessary)
Fuel Filter	—	—	Replace every 40000km/24 months Whichever comes first
Engine coolant	○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 75000km/48 months Whichever comes first

Maintenance time Maintenance Items	First maintenance 5000km/6 months (subject to the purchase invoice), whichever comes first	Regular maintenance 10000km/12 months, whichever comes first	Additional maintenance
Water pump belt	—	—	Replace every 75000km/36 months Whichever comes first
Clutch system and brake system brake fluid	○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 40000km/24 months Whichever comes first
Transfer case oil	○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 50000km/24 months Whichever comes first
Brake lining	○(Replace if necessary)	○(Replace if necessary)	—
Front and rear axle assembly gear oil	—	—	Replace every 40000km/24 months (Whichever comes first)
Drive shaft spline grease	○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	—
Front/rear stabilizer bar bushings	—	—	Check every 20000km/12 months (replace if necessary) (whichever comes first)
Stabilizer bar column cushion	—	—	Check every 20000km/12 months (replace if necessary) (whichever comes first)
Reasonable replacement cycle of fuel (gas) hose	—	—	No replacement, with the life of the vehicle

Note: ○ Inspection ● Replace — No instructions

Class A Maintenance Specifications (B237R Gasoline Models)

Maintenance Items \ Maintenance time	First maintenance 5000km/6 months (subject to the purchase invoice), whichever comes first	Regular maintenance 7500km/6 months, whichever comes first	Additional maintenance
Engine oil	•	•	Replace every 7500km/6 months Whichever comes first
Engine oil filter	•	•	Replace every 7500km/6 months Whichever comes first
Engine accessory driving belt	○(Replace if necessary)	○(Replace if necessary)	—
Throttle body and idle valve	—	—	Check throttle body and idle bypass airway for sludge every 20000km/12 months (whichever comes first) and clean if necessary
Power steering fluid	○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 60000km/36 months Whichever comes first
Manual transmission oil	•	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 40000km/24 months Whichever comes first
Automatic transmission oil	Maintenance-free	Maintenance-free	Maintenance-free
Sparking plug	—	○(adjust if necessary)	Replace every 40000km
Air filter element	○(clean if necessary)	○(clean if necessary)	Replace every 20000km/12 months Whichever comes first
A/C filter element	○(clean if necessary)	○(Replace if necessary)	Replace every 20000km/12 months (whichever comes first) Check every 7500km (replace if necessary)
Fuel Filter	—	—	Replace every 40000km/24 months Whichever comes first
Engine coolant	○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 40000km/24 months Whichever comes first
Clutch system and brake system brake fluid	○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 40000km/24 months Whichever comes first

Maintenance Items \ Maintenance time	First maintenance 5000km/6 months (subject to the purchase invoice), whichever comes first	Regular maintenance 7500km/6 months, whichever comes first	Additional maintenance
Differential pressure sensor and connecting hose for exhaust gas recirculation system	○(clean if necessary)	○(clean if necessary)	Check for carbon deposits every 30,000km (replace if necessary), and clean the carbon deposits in the two connecting hoses of the differential pressure sensor.
Exhaust gas recirculation cooler	—	—	Clean the exhaust gas recirculation cooler air passages every 30,000km (replace if necessary). Please refer to the after-sales manual for specific operation specifications.
Transfer case oil	○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 60000km/36 months (whichever comes first) Check every 10000km (replace if necessary)
Brake lining	○(Replace if necessary)	○(Replace if necessary)	—
Front and rear axle assembly gear oil	—	—	Replace every 40000km/24 months (Whichever comes first)
Drive shaft spline grease	○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	—
Front/rear stabilizer bar bushings	—	—	Check every 20000km/12 months (replace if necessary) (whichever comes first)
Stabilizer bar column cushion	—	—	Check every 20000km/12 months (replace if necessary) (whichever comes first)
Reasonable replacement cycle of fuel (gas) hose	—	—	No replacement, with the life of the vehicle

Note: ○ Inspection ● Replace — No instructions

Class A Maintenance Specifications (HY4C20B Gasoline Models)

Maintenance Items \ Maintenance time	First maintenance 5000km/6 months (subject to the purchase invoice), whichever comes first	Regular maintenance 7500km/6 months, whichever comes first	Additional maintenance
Engine oil	•	•	Replace every 7500km/6 months Whichever comes first
Oil pan oil drain plug washer	•	•	Replace every 7500km/6 months Whichever comes first
Oil filter	•	•	Replace every 7500km/6 months Whichever comes first
Throttle	—	—	The first cleaning interval is 20000km/18 months (whichever comes first) thereafter every 22500km/18 months (replace if necessary)
Intercooling system pipeline	—	—	The first cleaning interval is 20,000km/18 months, and (which- ever comes first) every 22,500km/18 months thereafter
Sparking plug	—	—	The first replacement interval is 20000km/18 months (whichever comes first) thereafter every 22500km/18 months
Engine accessory driving belt	○(Replace if necessary)	○(Replace if necessary)	Add inspection items for each maintenance (change with cracks and serious edge wear); every 10,000km thereafter Check for replacement
Air filter element	○(clean if necessary)	○(clean if necessary)	Replace every 20000km/12 months Whichever comes first
A/C filter element	○(clean if necessary)	○(clean if necessary)	Replace every 20000km/12 months (whichever comes first) Check every 7500km (replace if neces- sary)
Fuel Filter	—	—	Replace every 30000km/24 months Whichever comes first

Maintenance Items	Maintenance time First maintenance 5000km/6 months (subject to the purchase invoice), whichever comes first	Regular maintenance 7500km/6 months, whichever comes first	Additional maintenance
Engine coolant	○	—	The first replacement interval is 27500km/24 months (whichever comes first) Replace every 30000km/24 months thereafter
Automatic transmission oil	Maintenance-free	Maintenance-free	Maintenance-free
Clutch system and brake system brake fluid	○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 40000km/24 months Whichever comes first
Transfer case oil	○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 50000km/24 months (whichever comes first) Check every 10000km (replace if necessary)
Brake lining	○(Replace if necessary)	○(Replace if necessary)	—
Front and rear axle assembly gear oil	—	—	Replace every 40000km/24 months (Whichever comes first)
Drive shaft spline grease	○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	—
Front/rear stabilizer bar bushings	—	—	Check every 20000km/12 months (replace if necessary) (whichever comes first)
Stabilizer bar column cushion	—	—	Check every 20000km/12 months (replace if necessary) (whichever comes first)
Reasonable replacement cycle of fuel (gas) hose	—	—	No replacement, with the life of the vehicle

Note: ○ Inspection ● Replace — No instructions

Class A Maintenance Specifications (diesel models)

Maintenance Items	Maintenance time	First maintenance 5000km/6 months (subject to the purchase invoice), whichever comes first	Regular maintenance 10000km/6 months, whichever comes first	Additional maintenance
Engine oil		•	•	Replace every 10000km/6 months (whichever comes first)
Engine oil filter		•	•	Replace every 10000km/6 months (whichever comes first)
Engine accessory driving belt		○(Replace if necessary)	○(Replace if necessary)	—
Power steering fluid		○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 60000km/36 months Whichever comes first
Manual transmission oil		•	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 40000km/24 months Whichever comes first
Air filter element		○(clean if necessary)	○(clean if necessary)	Replace every 20000km/12 months Whichever comes first
A/C filter element		○(clean if necessary)	○(Replace if necessary)	Replace every 20000km/12 months (whichever comes first) Check every 7500km (replace if necessary)
Fuel filter		—	—	Replace every 20000km/12 months Whichever comes first
Engine coolant		○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 40000km/24 months Whichever comes first
Clutch system and brake system brake fluid		○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 40000km/24 months Whichever comes first
Transfer case oil (diesel engine)		○	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 50000km/24 months (whichever comes first) Check every 10000km (replace if necessary)
Brake lining		○(Replace if necessary)	○(Replace if necessary)	—
Front and rear axle assembly gear oil		—	—	Replace every 40000km/24 months Whichever comes first

Maintenance Items \ Maintenance time	First maintenance 5000km/6 months (subject to the purchase invoice), whichever comes first	Regular maintenance 10000km/6 months, whichever comes first	Additional maintenance
Drive shaft spline grease	○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	—
Front/rear stabilizer bar bushings	—	—	Check every 20000km/12 months (replace if necessary) (whichever comes first)
Stabilizer bar column cushion	—	—	Check every 20000km/12 months (replace if necessary) (whichever comes first)
Reasonable replacement cycle of fuel (gas) hose	—	—	No replacement, with the life of the vehicle

Note: ○ Inspection ● Replace — No instructions

Class B Maintenance Specifications

Maintenance time Maintenance Items	The first maintenance interval is 2000km (subject to the purchase invoice)	Regular maintenance 5000km/3 months, whichever comes first	Additional maintenance
Engine oil	•	•	Replace every 5000km/3 months Whichever comes first
Engine oil filter	•	•	Replace every 5000km/3 months Whichever comes first
Engine accessory driving belt	○(Replace if necessary)	○(Replace if necessary)	Check whether the belt needs to be replaced during each maintenance inspection
Oil pan oil drain plug washer	•	•	Replace every 5000km/3 months (whichever comes first)
Throttle body and idle valve	—	—	Check throttle body and idle bypass airway for sludge every 10000km/6 months (whichever comes first) and clean if necessary
Power steering fluid	○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 20000km/12 months Whichever comes first
Manual transmission oil	•	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 20000km/12 months Whichever comes first
Automatic transmission oil	Maintenance-free	Maintenance-free	Maintenance-free
Intercooling system pipeline (HY4C20B)	—	—	The first cleaning interval is 12000km/9 months, and (whichever comes first) every 15000km/9 months thereafter

Maintenance time Maintenance Items	The first maintenance interval is 2000km (subject to the purchase invoice)	Regular maintenance 5000km/3 months, whichever comes first	Additional maintenance
Sparkling plug	—	—	Check and adjust every 10000km/6 months Whichever comes first Replace and adjust every 40000km (B201R/B231R) Replacement at 25000km for the first maintenance and every 30000km thereafter (4G20TI3) The first replacement interval is 20000km/18 months (whichever comes first), and every 22500km/18 months thereafter (HY-4C20B)
Air filter element	○(clean if necessary)	○(clean if necessary)	Replace every 10000km/6 months (whichever comes first) Sand and dust areas: clean or replace the filter element every 1000km/3 months (HY4C20B)
A/C filter element	○(clean if necessary)	○(Replace if necessary)	Replace every 10000km/12 months Whichever comes first
Fuel Filter	—	—	Replace every 20000km/12 months Whichever comes first
Engine coolant	○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 20000km/12 months Whichever comes first
Differential pressure sensor and connecting hose for exhaust gas recirculation system (B237R Model)	○(clean if necessary)	○(clean if necessary)	Check for carbon deposits every 15000km (replace if necessary), and clean the carbon deposits in the two connecting hoses of the differential pressure sensor.
Exhaust gas recirculation cooler (B237R Model)	—	—	Clean the exhaust gas recirculation cooler air passages every 15000km (replace if necessary). Please refer to the after-sales manual for specific operation specifications.
Engine water pump belt (4G20TI3 gasoline model)	—	—	Replace every 75000km/36 months Whichever comes first

Maintenance time Maintenance Items	The first maintenance interval is 2000km (subject to the purchase invoice)	Regular maintenance 5000km/3 months, whichever comes first	Additional maintenance
Clutch system and brake system brake fluid	○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 40000km/24 months Whichever comes first
Transfer case oil	—	○ (refill if necessary)	From 15000km/9 months (subject to the purchase invoice) Whichever comes first Replace every 20000km/12 months after replacement (whichever comes first)
Brake lining	○(Replace if necessary)	○(Replace if necessary)	—
Front and rear axle assembly gear oil	—	—	Check every 10000km (add if necessary) Replace every 20000km/12 months (whichever comes first)
Drive shaft spline grease	○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	—
Front/rear stabilizer bar bushings	—	—	Check every 20000km/12 months (replace if necessary) (whichever comes first)
Stabilizer bar column cushion	—	—	Check every 10000km/6 months (replace if necessary) (whichever comes first)
Reasonable replacement cycle of fuel (gas) hose	—	—	No replacement, with the life of the vehicle

Note: ○ Inspection ● Replace — No instructions